This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world’s books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that’s often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book’s long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

**Usage guidelines**

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ **Make non-commercial use of the files** We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ **Refrain from automated querying** Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google’s system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ **Maintain attribution** The Google “watermark” you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ **Keep it legal** Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can’t offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book’s appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

**About Google Book Search**

Google’s mission is to organize the world’s information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world’s books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at [http://books.google.com/](http://books.google.com/)
THE

SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST

[47]
HENRY FROWDE, M.A.
PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

LONDON, EDINBURGH AND NEW YORK
### Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets Adopted for the Translations of the Sacred Books of the East

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONSONANTS</th>
<th>Missionary Alphabet</th>
<th>Sanskrit</th>
<th>Zend</th>
<th>Pahlevi</th>
<th>Persian</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>Hebrew</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I Class</td>
<td>II Class</td>
<td>III Class</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Gutturales.**

1 Tenuis  
2 " aspirata  
3 Media  
4 " aspirata  
5 Gutturo-labialis  
6 Nasalis  
7 Spiritus asper  
8 " lenis  
9 " asper faucalis  
10 " lenis faucalis  
11 " asper fricatus  
12 " lenis fricatus  

**Gutturales modificatae (palatales, &c.)**

13 Tenuis  
14 " aspirata  
15 Media  
16 " aspirata  
17 " Nasalis  

|                     |         |        |        |         |        |        |        |         |
### Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alphabet</th>
<th>I Class.</th>
<th>II Class.</th>
<th>III Class.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrew</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arabic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persian</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pehlevi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zend</td>
<td>init.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanskrit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Missionary Alphabet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I Class.</th>
<th>II Class.</th>
<th>III Class.</th>
<th>18 Semivocals</th>
<th>20 Spiritus asper lenis</th>
<th>21 asper asibilatus</th>
<th>22 lenis asibilatus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Consonants (continued)

<p>| 23 Tenuis | 24 aspirata | 25 asibilata | 26 Metlia | 27 nasalis | 28 Senivocals | 29 mollis 1 | 30 mollis 2 | 31 Spiritus asper lenis | 32 asper 2 | 33 lenis | 34 asper 1 | 35 mors 1 | 36 mors 2 | 37 asper 1 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dentales modificatae</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(linguales, &amp;c.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38 Tenuis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39 &quot; aspirata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 Media</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41 &quot; aspirata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42 Nasalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43 Semivocalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44 &quot; fricata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 &quot; diacritica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46 Spiritus asper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47 &quot; lenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labiales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48 Tenuis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49 &quot; aspirata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 Media</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 &quot; aspirata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52 Tenuissaíma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53 Nasalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54 Semivocalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55 &quot; aspirata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56 Spiritus asper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57 &quot; lenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58 Anusvāra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59 Visarga</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>t</th>
<th>th</th>
<th>d</th>
<th>dh</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FOR THE SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST.
## Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE

SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST

TRANSLATED

BY VARIOUS ORIENTAL SCHOLARS

AND EDITED BY

F. MAX MÜLLER

VOL. XLVII

Oxford
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS
1897

[All rights reserved]
CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION .................................................. ix
Abbreviations used in this volume ............................. xlviii

MARVELS OF ZOROASTRIANISM.

DíNKARD, BOOK VII.

CHAP.
1. Descent of the glorious destiny .............................. 3
2. Parentage of Zarâtût .......................................... 17
3. His birth, childhood, and youth till his conference ...... 35
4. His missions to the Karaps, and Vîstâsp's conversion .... 50
5. Events in the last thirty-five years of his life .......... 73
6. Further events till the death of Vîstâsp ................. 77
7. " " till end of Sâsânian monarchy .......................... 82
8. " " till end of Zarâtût's millennium ...................... 94
9. Aûshêdar's millennium ..................................... 107
10. Aûshêdar-mâh's millennium ............................... 112
11. Sôshâns and the renovation ................................ 116

DíNKARD, BOOK V.

1. Kaî-Loharâsp at Jerusalem, and descent of the religion .... 119
2. Parentage, birth, and life of Zarâtût. Future apostles .... 122
3. Events after Vîstâsp's conversion and in later times .... 126
4. Descent of the Irânians. The tribe having a Gyêmårâ .... 127

SELECTIONS OF ZÀD-SPARAM.

12. Two old legends of Spendarmand and of the hero Srfêtô .... 133
13. Parentage of Zarâtût ......................................... 138
14. Demons try to injure him before and at his birth .......... 140
15. Five Karap brothers opposed to Zarâtût and his four brothers ........................................ 143
16. One Karap tries to kill Zarâtût five times ................ 144
CONTENTS.

CHAP. PAGE
17. Another foretells his glorious destiny . . . 147
18. His father disagrees with him . . . 148
19. And he disagrees with his father and the chief Karap . 149
20. Legends indicative of his good disposition . . . 151
21. His going to confer with Attharmazd . . . 154
22. His conferences with the archangels . . . 159
23. Dates of conversions, births, and deaths . . . 163
24. Five dispositions of priests and ten admonitions . . . 167

INDEX . . . . . . . . . . . 171
ERRATUM . . . . . . . . . . . 182

Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets adopted for the Translations of the Sacred Books of the East . . . 183
INTRODUCTION.

1. In the summary account of the Spend Nask, given in the eighth book of the Dinkard, chapter XIV, it is stated in § 4 (see S. B. E., vol. xxxvii, p. 32) that many marvels, owing to Zarathustra, are published therein, 'just as there are some which, collected and selected, are noticed by the Dinkard manuscript.' This statement evidently refers to the seventh book of the Dinkard, which contains the legendary history of Zarathustra and his religion, related as a series of marvels extending from the creation to the resurrection of mankind. A much briefer account of some of the same details occurs at the beginning of the fifth book of the Dinkard, and appears to have been abridged from a compilation which was either derived partially from a foreign source, or prepared for the use of foreign proselytes. A third compilation of similar legends is found among the Selections of Zad-sparman. And a careful translation of these three Pahlavi Texts constitutes the Marvels of Zoroastrianism contained in this volume.

2. As the extent of Dk. VII is about 16,000 Pahlavi words (without allowing for one folio lost), it probably contains about four-fifths of the details included in the Spend Nask, the Pahlavi version of which has been estimated, in S. B. E., vol. xxxvii, p. 469, to extend to 20,500 words. It says very little about Zarathustra's conferences with the sacred beings (mentioned in Dk. VIII, xiv, 5, 6), and gives no description of the other world and the way thither (as reported ibid. 8). But it probably contains many verbatim extracts from other parts of the Pahlavi version of the Spend Nask, which appear, however, to have been previously collected in the Exposition of the Good Religion, an older MS. than the Dinkard, which is quoted as an authority in Dk. VII, i, 2.
3. This seventh book commences with a detailed statement of the descent of the glorious ruling dynasty from the primeval man Gāyōmarā, through his descendants, the Pēsdādian and Kayānian rulers, to Kač-Vīstāsp. Among the individuals, rarely mentioned elsewhere, are the sacred being Hadish (the protector of homesteads in the Visperad), Vāgegered the brother of king Hōshāng, Pātakhrōbō king of the Arabs, and Aōshnar the chancellor of Kač-Ūs. Zaratūst and the three millennial apostles are also mentioned, but the contents of this first chapter are probably derived from the Kitradād Nask (see Dk. VII, xiii, 20) and from Yt. XIX, 25–93.

4. Chapter II begins the legendary history of Zaratūst with the descent of his glory, from the presence of Aūharmasd to the house in which Zaratūst's mother was about to be born; and, alarmed at her radiance, the Kavīgs and Karaps, or ruling priests of the district, oblige her father to send her away to another valley, where Pōru-shāspō resided, to whom she was afterwards married; and several legends are related, in which both the archangels and archdemons are active agents, which lead on to the birth of Zaratūst, thirty years before the end of the ninth millennium of the universe, and his complete genealogy is given.

5. Chapter III begins with his laughing at birth, and describes the ill-will of the Karaps, or priests of those times, and their many attempts to destroy him during his childhood, till he openly defied them at the age of seven. At the end of the ninth millennium, when he was thirty years old, as he was bringing Hōm-water out of the fourth effluent of the Dāṭṭī river, he met the archangel Vohūmanō who had come to invite him to a conference with Aūharmasd, about which no details are given.

6. Chapter IV, however, proceeds to mention that, in two years, he returned from his first conference, by order of Aūharmasd, to preach his religion to the Kīgs and Karaps in the presence of their ruler, Aūrvāltā-dang the Tūr. They seem to have listened attentively till he advocated Khvētūkdās, when they demanded his death, and
were supported by the Tûr's brother; but the Tûr's son, who presided, remonstrated with them, and Aûrvâltâ-dang himself protected him, but refused to be converted. Zarâtûst was afterwards sent to demand slaves and horses from Vêdvoûr, a rich Karap, who refused them arrogantly; he also went to Parshad-gau in Sagastân and cured his bull with Hôm-water, whereupon Parshad-gau joined him in worship, but not in public. Zarâtûst repulsed the demons as in Vd. XIX, 1–4; he is then tempted by a Karap in the form of Spendarmaad, whom he also repulses. And he is finally sent to the court of Vistâsp, where he is relentlessly opposed by the Kïgs and Karaps who obtained his imprisonment, during which he is saved from starvation by a miracle; then some of the sacred beings arrive to assist him, and Vistâsp is at last converted, twelve years after the coming of the religion when Zarâtûst went to his first conference with Aûharmaad.

7. Chapter V refers to the marvels of the last thirty-five years of Zarâtûst's life, after Vistâsp's conversion, but says nothing about his own death, except that he departed to the best existence at the age of seventy-seven. It mentions the establishment of ordeals of thirty-three kinds, the victory of Vistâsp over Argâsp the Khyôn, the useful works and advice of Zarâtûst, the compilation of the Avesta, and the birth of Pêshyôtan, the immortal ruler of Kangdes.

8. Chapter VI continues this account of marvels till the death of Vistâsp, which occurred forty-three years later. The legends related are about the presentation of a heavenly chariot to Vistâsp by the soul of an old hero Sritô who had been killed about 350 years before; and regarding the coming of two high-priests from the southern regions of the earth, ten years after the departure of Zarâtûst, to enquire about the religion.

9. Chapter VII relates the marvels occurring after the death of Vistâsp until the end of the sovereignty of Irân; mentioning king Vohûmanô who was a grandson of Vistâsp, the high-priest Sênôv who lived throughout the second century of the religion, the devastator Alexander the Great, the four successive high-priests who restore ortho-
doxy in the fifth and sixth centuries of the religion, the apostate Rashn-rēsh of about the same period, king Artakhshatar the founder of the Šasānian dynasty, his chancellor Tanvasar, Ātūpād-i Māraspendān and his son surnamed Avarethrabāu, with an anonymous arch-apostate of their time, and then king Khūsrū Anōshērvān. Finally, it condemns the proceedings of the devastators in later times, whose names are not mentioned.

10. Chapter VIII deals with the ninth and tenth centuries of the religion, which bring the millennium of Zaratūst to a close. After a bitter lamentation over the anarchy in religion and government—in which parts of §§ 34 and 36 are taken from the Varstmānsar commentary on Yas. XXXII in Dk. IX, xxxii, 17, 20—it refers to the arrival of Kitrō-mēhonō, 'him of the racial home,' a title of Pēshyōtanō, son of Vistāsp, and immortal ruler of Kangdez, who arrives with 150 disciples to restore the religion and destroy the wicked, including the Turkish demons, the Arabs, and the ecclesiastical Shēdāspō¹ (Theodosius?). In the thirtieth year before the end of this tenth millennium Aushēdar, the Developer of Righteousness, is born, and confers with the archangels at the end of the millennium, when the sun stands still for ten days and nights.

11. Chapter IX describes the eleventh millennium, that of Aushēdar, who produces much prosperity and progress which continue until the fifth century. Then the wizard Mahrkūs appears for seven years, and produces awful winters in four of them, in which most of mankind and animals perish, till he is himself destroyed by the Dāhmān Āsfīn. Afterwards, Yim's enclosure is opened to replenish the earth with animals and men who then begin to subsist more upon the milk of cattle, which is plentiful; and Ashavaḥistō interferes to diminish the slaughter of cattle. At the end of the fifth century two-thirds of the Irānians have become righteous, and in the thirtieth year before the end of this eleventh millennium Aushēdar-māh, the Developer

¹ This name can be read Shēdāsfas in Byt. III.
of Worship, is born, and confers with the archangels at the end of the millennium, when the sun stands still for twenty days and nights.

12. Chapter X describes the twelfth millennium, that of Aūshēdar-māh, during which mankind continue to improve, are better supplied, and have fewer wants, while deaths occur only through old age and the executioner. During the last fifty-three years, they leave off eating meat and subsist upon vegetables and milk, for which latter they substitute water for the last three years. But the old tyrant Dahāk breaks loose, and Kerēsaspō has to be roused to smite him. In the thirtieth year before the end of this twelfth millennium Sōshāns, the Triumphant Benefiter, is born; Kāi-Khūsrō and his companions afterwards arrive to assist him, and the sun stands still for thirty days and nights.

13. Chapter XI describes how Sōshāns and his assistants destroy all the evil remaining in the world, during the course of fifty-seven years, while mankind subsist for seventeen years on vegetables, thirty years on water, and ten years on spiritual food. And, at the end of these fifty-seven years, Aharman and the fiend are annihilated, and the renovation for the future existence occurs.

14. Several of the details described in Dk. VII are briefly mentioned in Dk. V, i–iv, where they are introduced by a statement of the siege of Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar (Bâkht-Narštī) assisted by Kāi-Lōharāsp, father of Vistāsp. Excepting this account of the siege, in which the Jews are evidently called ‘a congregation or tribe’ (ram), and some remarks about the same ‘tribe’ at the end of Chapter IV, all the other details which are mentioned have reference only to Irānians; but they are said to be the sayings of Ātūr-farnbag as to the MS. which that tribe call really their Gyēmarā (Chaps. I, 2, 3; IV, 8), as the name can be most plausibly read. Most of the strictly Irānian details have manifestly been derived from the same sources as were consulted by the writer of Dk. VII, that is, from the Pahlavi versions of the Spend and Kītradād Nasks. It would probably be hazardous to suppose that the Jewish compilers of the Gemara could have had access to these
sources, and it might be preferable to assume that Ātūr-
farñbag was himself compiling a record of Zoroastrian
traditions for the use of some converts from Judaism, to
take the place of the Gemara of their former faith.
15. The Zaratūst-nâmak of Zâd-spāram is contained in
the latter half (Zs. XII–XXIII) of the first series of his
Selections, the former half of which, being a paraphrase of
the first half of the Bundahis, has been translated in S. B. E.,
vol. v, pp. 155–186. In Chapter XII Zâd-spāram relates two
of the earliest legends referring to Māzda-worship, which he
had found in old MSS. The first of these describes the
appearance of the archangel Spandarmad, wearing a golden
sacred girdle, at the court of king Mânūšēkhar, 428¹ years
before the coming of the religion to Zaratūst when he went
to his conference with the sacred beings. The other is the
legend of the warrior Sûtô, the seventh brother, who was
sent by Kal-Üs to kill the frontier-settling ox which
threatened him, 300 years before the coming of the religion,
with future execration by Zaratūst.
16. Chapter XIII refers to the descent of Zaratūst’s
glory upon his mother at her birth, and the combination
of his spiritual and worldly natures; also detailing his
genealogy. Chapter XIV describes the attempts of the
demons to destroy him before and at his birth, when
Vohûmanô entered his reasoning powers and made him
laugh with delight and utter one form of the Ahunavair
formula. Chapter XV is about the five Karap brothers,
with their first cousins the Aûsikhshes, all descended from
the demon of Wrath and a sister of king Mânûšēkhar; also
about the four brothers of Zaratūst who seem to be
unmentioned elsewhere.
17. Chapter XVI details the attempts of one of the
Karaps to destroy Zaratūst during his infancy, and the
means by which he is preserved; it also explains who Râgh
and Nódar were. In Chapter XVII one of the Karaps
foretells the future success of Zaratūst. In Chapter XVIII

¹ The MSS. have 528, but this would be twenty-eight years before the
accession of Mânûšēkhar, see the synopsis in § 55.
his father hears him accused of folly, and takes him to a Karap to be cured. In Chapter XIX the chief Karap comes to the house of Zaratüst's father, and is invited to consecrate the food set before him; but Zaratüst objects and a quarrel ensues, which so much disturbs the Karap that he leaves the house, and drops dead from his horse on the road home. In Chapter XX instances are given of Zaratüst's righteous desires, his compassionate assistance of people fording a river, his liberal disposition, his abandoning worldly desires, his pity for dogs, his wish for a good-looking wife, and his acceptance of progress even from the wicked, during his youth.

18. Chapter XXI relates that, at thirty years of age, on his way to the festival of spring, he saw in a vision all mankind following Mèdyûmāh, his first cousin, into his presence. He then went on to the bank of the Dàðith, and crossed its four channels, when he met Vohûmanô who led him to the assembly of the archangels, where he received instruction from Aûharmasd and saw the omniscient wisdom; the archangels also subjected him to various ordeals.

19. Chapter XXII refers to his conferences with the seven archangels, each at a different place, and extending over ten years. In Chapter XXIII, Mèdyûmāh is converted at the end of these ten years. The next two years are spent on the conversion of Vistâsp, in which Zaratüst is assisted by some of the sacred beings, and the narrative ends by giving the dates of several other conversions, births, and deaths. But after its 300th year the religion is disturbed and the monarchy contested; referring, no doubt, to the effects of Alexander's conquest of Persia.

20. These three narratives appear to be the only connected statements of the Zoroastrian legend that remain extant in Pahlavi, and all three seem to be chiefly derived from the Sâsânian Pahlavi version of the Spend Nask, with some probable additions from the similar version of the Kîtradâd Nask, as may be gathered from the summary accounts of the contents of these Nasks given in Dk. VIII, xiii, 20–xiv, 15, and translated in S. B. E., vol. xxxvii, pp. 31–34. There are, however, allusions to other legends
regarding Zaratûst to be found scattered about in Pahlavi literature, to which we shall return after mentioning the manuscript authorities for the texts translated in this volume.

21. The chief existing authority for the Pahlavi text of the Dinkard, Books III–IX, and the only independent one for Book VII, is the MS. B in Bombay, which has been fully described in S. B. E., vol. xxxvii, pp. xxxiii–xxxvii; it will therefore be sufficient here to give a short statement of the information which was there detailed at full length. This MS., written in 1659, was an unbound quarto volume of 392 folios when it was brought from Irân to Surat in 1783; after which time 70 folios became detached from various parts of the MS., but nearly all these had been discovered more than twenty years ago.

22. The writer of the MS. not only recorded the date of his own work, but also copied two previous colophons of his predecessors, with dates corresponding to A.D. 1516 and 1020, and it appears that there had been an intermediate copy about 1355. The MS. of 1020 had been copied at Bakdâd, possibly from the original MS. of the last editor of the Dinkard, which must have been completed about A.D. 900.

23. For the text of Dk.V we have a second authority, independent of B, in the MS. K43 at Kopenhagen (see S. B. E., vol. xxxvii, pp. xxxvii–viii), written shortly after 1594 and also descended from the MS. of 1020.

24. The Selections of Zâd-spam are found in some of the old MSS., which also contain the Dâdistân-i Dînîk (see S. B. E., vol. xviii, pp. xv–xvii). Of the two MSS. used for the text of Zâd-spam's Zaratûst-nâmak, K35 was brought from Irân to Kopenhagen in 1843. It has lost many folios, both at the beginning and end; but, before it was so mutilated, a copy (BK) of it was made, which is now in Bombay and contains a copy of its colophon, the date of which corresponds to A.D. 1592. For the text of Zs. xxii, 4–xxiv, 19, which has been lost from K35, the translator is indebted to this old copy. The other MS. authority T, belonging to Ervad Tehmuras in Bombay
INTRODUCTION.

(a copy of which has been used), is dated two generations earlier.

25. Regarding the period of Zâd-sparam's career we are well informed by the date of the third Epistle of Mânûskîhar, corresponding to A.D. 881, at which time Zâd-sparam was probably in the prime of life; but his Selections were certainly compiled as late as A.D. 900, or about the same time as the completion of the Dinkard. So that the Pahlavi texts, from which these three narratives of the Zoroastrian legends have been translated, were no doubt all written about A.D. 900, and the information they contain was nearly all derived from the Pahlavi versions of two of the Nasks.

26. We have reason to believe that the Pahlavi versions of Avesta texts were completed in the fourth century and revised in the sixth, after the downfall of the heretic Mazdak. This may not only be clearly inferred from the traditional account of the compilation and restorations of the Avesta and Zand, preserved in Dk. IV, 21–36, and translated in S. B. E., vol. xxxvii, pp. 412–418; but is also in accordance with the actual condition of the Pahlavi versions of the liturgical Avesta texts. With the exception of a few interpolated passages, the whole of these Pahlavi versions might have been written, or revised, in the time of king Shahpûhar II (A.D. 309–379). And the exceptional passages mention no persons or events of a later date than the reign of king Khûsrô I (A.D. 531–578); being merely references to such persons as Mazdak, the heretic, and certain commentators who lived about that time.

27. If we examine the Zoroastrian legends, translated in this volume, we shall also find it difficult to discover a passage that clearly alludes to any historical personage of later date than Khûsrô I, who is named in Dk. V, iii, 3; VII, vii, 26, although the compiler of the Dinkard had the traditions of 250 years of Arab rule to draw upon for facts, if he had been disposed to continue the statements of the Pahlavi Spend Nask down to his own time. No doubt, these traditions may have intensified his denunciations of
the devastators in Dk. VII, vii, 29–38; viii, 4–9, but, like most Pahlavi writers, he is careful not to mention Muhammadanism. Dk. VII, vii, 33, 34 seem to refer to some particular individual of this later time; but the references to Kaisar and Khâkân, the Turkish demons with dishevelled hair, the Arab, and Shēdāspō (Theodosius?) of Arûm, may all have been taken from a Pahlavi version revised in the time of Khûsrû I.

28. That the original Pahlavi version was translated from an Avesta text, though many Pahlavi commentaries were intermingled, appears certain. Apart from the numerous quotations from revelation (dēnō), which may be safely assumed to have had an Avesta original, there are many passages interspersed with glosses, such as the Pahlavi translators habitually used, as well as numerous sentences beginning with a verb, an Avesta peculiarity which generally disappears in an English translation. Regarding the age of this Avesta text it would be hazardous to speculate without further information than we yet possess.

29. The principal details connected with the Zoroastrian legends which have been noticed in other Pahlavi and Pâzand texts, with references to the passages where they occur, are as follows:—

Summary account of Z. and Zoroastrianism, from the creation to the resurrection, in Dk. VIII, xiv, 1–15.
The abode of Z.'s father, when Z. was born, was on the bank of the Dârega river (Bd. XX, 32; XXIV, 15).
150 demons were prevented from destroying Z., before his birth, by the presence of a fire in his father's house (Sls. X, 4; XII, 11; Sd. XVI, 3).
Detailed account of the birth of Z. in Dk. IX, xxiv, 1–18.
When Z. first saw the archangels, he thought they were archdemons (Ep. I, x, 9).
Omniscient wisdom temporarily conferred upon Z., and what he then saw (Dk. IX, viii, 1–6; Byt. I, 1–5; II, 5–22).
He saw the soul of Davâns tormented in hell, excepting one foot (AV. XXXII, 1–6; Sls. XII, 29; Sd. IV, 3–11).
INTRODUCTION.

He also saw a mortal with children and an immortal without any, and preferred the former (Dd. XXXVII, 43).
And he beheld the terrible condition of Keresasp's soul (Dk. IX, xv, 1-4).
Advice of Aūharmasd to Zaratust (Sd. XXV, 6-9; LXXXI, 2-16).
The demon Envy (Aresh) converses with Z. in Dk. IX, xxxi, 6-11.
Aharman tempts Z. with the promise of 1000 years dominion, in Mkh. LVII, 24-29.
About Maīdok-māh, in Dk. IX, xliiv, 19.
Z. coming to preach to king Vistasp, in Sg. X, 64-68.
Archangels assist Z. in converting Vistasp, also the war with Argasp, in Dk. VIII, xi, 2-4.
The war of the religion with Argasp mentioned in Bd. XII, 33.
The families of Zaratust, Hvōv, and Vistasp mentioned in Dk. VIII, xxix, 25.
About Frashōstar and Garmasp in Dk. VIII, xxxviii, 68; IX, xlii, 8, 9; xliiv, 17, 18.
About Kaī-Vistasp, Frashōstar, Porūkast, Garmasp, and Hūtūs in Dk. IX, xlv, 3-5.
Brād-rūkhsh, or Brādrō-rašh the Tūr, mentioned as destroying the righteous man, in Dd. LXXII, 8; Sd. IX, 5; Dk. VIII, xxxv, 13; IX, x, 3.
The last millenniums mentioned in Dk. IX, xxxix, 18; xli, 6-8.
Events in the last two millenniums. in Byt. II, 22-III, 62.
The resurrection described in Bd. XXX.

30. Beyond the frequent occurrence of the names of the chief actors in the traditions, there are not many references to the Zoroastrian legends in the extant Avesta. This is owing to the fact that three-fourths of the Avesta texts, including the Nasks specially devoted to these legends, have been lost. The chief references to them that still survive in the Avesta are as follows:—

The passing on of the kingly glory from ruler to ruler, from Haoshyang,ha to Kava-Haosrava, from Zarahtustra to Kava-Vistāspa and the Saoshyant, in Yt. XIX, 25-90.
The terror of the demons on hearing of the birth of Z., in Vd. XIX, 43-47.
Z. mentioned as son of Pourushaspa in Yt. V, 18.
Verethraghna gives Z. strength, health, vigour, and keenness of sight (Yt. XI V, 33).
References to Z.'s conference with Ahura Mazda, and his rejection of the demons, in Yas. XII, 5, 6.
The demons attempt to destroy Z., and to tempt him, but are repelled by recitations, in Vd. XIX, 1-10.
Commentary on the Ahunavair, in Yas. XIX.
Z. converses with Haoma, in Yas. IX, 1-16.
Fate of the soul after death revealed to Z., in Vd. XIX, 26-34.
Z. is taught various spells, in Yt. XIV, 34-38.
He prays that he may convert the queen Hutaosa, in Yt. IX, 26; XVII, 46.
References to the battle with Aregad-aspa, in Yt. V, 109, 113, 116, 117; IX, 30; XVII, 50, 51.
Z.'s reply to Frashaostra regarding the ritual, in Yas. LXXI, 1-11.
There are also other references to Kava-Vistāspa, Frashaostra, Gāmāspa, Pouruṅista, Maidyōmau, the Haēkādaspas, Spitasmas, and Saoshyants. And the Fravashis of all the righteous persons receive homage in Yt. XIII. Of the unbelievers, the Karapans and Kavis are mentioned several times in the Gāthis and Yasts, including the Hōm Yast; and the Usikhsh once in the Gāthas.

31. So far as these references in the Avesta extend, they agree with the Pahlavi versions of the legends, and occasionally state some further particulars. We may, therefore, safely conclude that these Pahlavi versions present a fairly complete view of the Zoroastrian legends current in Sāsānian times. But we have another means of testing this conclusion more fully in the Persian Zartust-nāmah, translated by Eastwick in the Appendix to The Parsi Religion, as contained in the Zand-Avasta, by John Wilson, D. D. (Bombay : 1843).

32. This Zartust-nāmah contains 1570 Persian couplets, composed by Zartust Bahrām Pasādū, apparently at the ancient city of Raī, and finished on August 12, 1278. But Eastwick's English translation was made from a good MS. of this poem, written by Dastūr Barzū Qiyāmu-d-din (=Kâmdin) in 1636, belonging to the Wilson Collection and now in the library of Lord Crawford at Wigan. Zartust Bahrām relates how a priest of Raī, named Kā-Kāūs, son of Kai-Khusrō, showed him an old Pahlavi MS.
narrating the history of Zartust, and offered to interpret it, if he would undertake to paraphrase it, in Persian verse, for the information of others.

33. After mentioning Z.'s grandfather and father, descended from king Frêdûn, a frightful dream of his mother is related, in which she sees herself attacked by wild beasts eager for the destruction of her son, who drives them away. She relates her dream to an astrologer, who prognosticates a wonderful career for the unborn child; but this dream is an addition to the Pahlavi texts.

34. The child is born, and laughs at birth, exciting admiration among the women and dismay among the magicians. Dûrânsarûn, their chief, comes to see the child, and tries to kill him with a dagger; but his hand is withered, and the magicians carry off the child, who is exposed to death from fire, oxen, horses, and wolves, but all in vain, as his mother brings him home safe on each occasion. Another magician, named Bartarûsh, then foretells that Z. cannot be destroyed, and will establish a new religion; and he repeats this to the child's father, naming Gustâsp as his future protector. This narrative corresponds with Dk. VII, iii, 2–31; but then follows the addition that he was confided to the care of an old man, named Barzin-karûn, till he completed his seventh year.

35. Then Dûrânsarûn and Bartarûsh went together to see him, and tried their magic arts upon him in vain (ibid. 32, 33). Afterwards, when Z. was sick, Bartarûsh supplied him with filthy drugs, but he threw them on the ground, which seems to be another version of Zs. XVIII, 5, 6. Then follows a paraphrase of Dk. VII, iii, 34–48, and Zs. XX, 4, 5; XXI, 1–20, 23–27, with some additional remarks about worship and the Avesta being taught to Z. The conferences with the six archangels are more detailed than in Zs. XXII, and more ritualistic in their tendency.

36. When Z. returns to the earth, he is met by the demons and magicians, who oppose him, but are killed or dispersed by the utterance of an Avesta text; in which account we have an extreme condensation of Dk. VII, iv, 36–46, 57–62. He then goes to the court of king Gustâsp,
where he is hospitably received by the king, surrounded by his princes and wise men. With the latter Z. enters into argument, and overcomes them all successively. This is repeated, till all the learned of the realm are vanquished in argument, in the course of three successive days.

37. Then Z. produces the Avesta and Zand, and reads a chapter; but the king hesitates to accept it, until he learns more about it; and Z. retires to his lodgings. In the meantime, the wise men form a conspiracy to ruin Z., by secreting in his lodgings, with the connivance of his doorkeeper, many of the impure things used by sorcerers. The next day, while the king and Z. are examining the Avesta, the wise men denounce Z. as a sorcerer; his lodgings are searched, and the impurities are brought to the king, who becomes angry and commits Z. to prison.

38. Now the king had a magnificent black horse, and when Z. had been a week in prison, this horse fell sick, and was found with its four feet drawn up to its belly. When the king was informed, he summoned his wise men, but they could suggest no remedy; so the king and all his people remained fasting all day and lamenting, and the jailer forgot to take any food to Z. till the evening, when he told Z. about the state of the black horse.

39. Z. requested the jailer to inform the king that he could cure the horse; and the king, on hearing this the next day, releases Z., who undertakes to restore the horse’s limbs to their natural state, on receiving four solemn promises, one for the cure of each leg. Three of these promises are that the king, his son Isfendyār (= Spend-dād), and the queen, should each undertake to accept his religion and never forsake it; and the fourth promise is that the false accusation of sorcery, made by the wise men, should be investigated.

40. After each promise Z. prays vehemently, and each limb is restored to use. While, on the confession of Z.’s doorkeeper, the wise men are convicted of fraudulent deceit, and are sent to execution. The Persian version is here a highly embellished paraphrase of Dk. VII, iv, 64–70, especially in the horse episode.
41. King Gustâsp next asks Z. to pray for information as to the king's future position in the other world, also that he may become invulnerable, omniscient as to worldly affairs, and immortal; but Z. tells him that he must be satisfied with the first wish for himself, and the remaining three for other persons. The next day, while the king is sitting in court with Z. present, horsemen arrive, who are the archangels Bahman and Ardabahist, with the spirits of the Khûrdâd and Gusâsp fires. They are sent to testify the truth of Z.'s mission, and to urge the king to accept the religion; this he does, and they then depart; when Z. informs the king that his four wishes will be granted, as he will soon see. For some of these details see Dk. VII, iv, 74–82.

42. Zartust then performs the Darun ceremony, having provided wine, perfume, milk, and a pomegranate. After reciting prayers from the Avesta, he gives the wine to the king to drink, who then falls into a trance and sees his own future position in heaven, and those of others. His son Peshôtan receives the milk which makes him immortal. The perfume, or incense, is given to Gâmâsp who obtains knowledge of all events till the resurrection. And Isfendyâr, the warlike son of Gustâsp, eats one grain of the pomegranate and becomes invulnerable. The Pahlavi versions are silent about the king's four wishes and their fulfilment, except such hints as may be conveyed in Dk. VII, iv, 84–86. Afterwards, Z. reads the Avesta to the king and comments upon it; concluding with praises of the creator.

43. To this narrative Zartust Bahrâm adds a further episode of Z. asking for immortality, at the time when he went with Bahman to confer with the creator. His request is refused, but the creator gives him a drop of liquid to drink, like honey, and he sees everything in both worlds, as in a vision. When he wakes up, he relates what he saw in heaven and hell; and also describes a tree with seven branches of gold, silver, copper, brass, lead, steel, and mixed iron, respectively, overshadowing the world. The creator explains that these seven branches represent seven
powerful personages who arise in successive ages of the world. The golden branch is Z. himself, the silver is Gūstāsp, the copper is an Aškānīan king, the brass is Ardāshir the Sāsānian, the lead is king Bahrām (Gōr), the steel is Nōshārvān who destroys the heretic Mazdak, and the mixed iron is the malicious monarch who upsets the true faith. Then follow many details of the lamentable evils which then occur; and when the Hāzārahs\(^1\) appear, the condition of Irān becomes still worse, as described in Byt. II, III, until the arrival of king Bahrām the Hamāvand from India, and Peshōtan from Kangdiz, who restore the Irānian monarchy and religion.

44. This additional narrative is evidently a paraphrase of the Pahlavi Bahman Yāst, translated in S. B. E., vol. v, pp. 191–235; and that Pahlavi text appears to be merely an enlarged edition of Fargard VII of the Sūzkar Nāsk, of which a short summary is given in Dk. IX, viii.

45. From the foregoing epitome of the Persian Zartustnāmah, it will be evident that its author’s information was a combination of the statements still surviving in Dk. VII and Zs. XII–XXIII, so far as they suited his fancy and convenience. Many statements are omitted, others either condensed, or greatly elaborated; but very few novelties can be detected, excepting such as are clearly due to the writer’s own imagination. Whether any small residuum of these novelties can be attributed to other sources than the Persian writer’s fancy, must remain doubtful until some older authority for such details is discovered.

46. With regard to Z.’s vision of heaven and hell, which is mentioned in Zartust Bahrām’s final episode, his immediate informant was certainly Byt. II, 11–13; but the original authority was the Spend Nāsk, as summarized in Dk. VIII, xiv, 7, 8, although Dk. VII omits this incident, and Zs. XXI, 21, 22 merely mentions the bodily appearance of the omniscient wisdom, without referring to Z.’s vision. The details of the conferences with the six archangels,

---

\(^1\) Those specially belonging to the latter millenniums, probably meaning the people who were expected to make most of the last two centuries intolerably wicked.
which are summarized in Dk. VIII, xiv, 9, as having existed in the Spend Nask, are also omitted in Dk. VII, though briefly stated in Zs. XXII.

47. It is worthy of notice that Z. was first sent to offer his religion to the Kings and Karaps and their sovereign, Aūrvāłatā-dang the Tūr (see Dk. VII, iv, 2–20), who seem to have received his doctrines favourably, excepting his advocacy of Khvētūk-das, which led to their rejection of his proposal. He was next sent to the Karap Vēdvōist (ibid. 21–28), whom Aūharmasd had hitherto befriended; but this Karap was rejected for illiberality and arrogance. Z. then went to Parshad-tōrā in Sagāstān (ibid. 31–35), taking some Hōm-water with him, to cure an infirm bull belonging to this chieftain, as soon as the latter had accepted the religion in public; the chieftain assented to the religion, though only privately, but this was sufficient to obtain the cure of his bull. It was only after these three trials that the conversion of king Vistasp was attempted.

48. There is some difficulty in understanding the exact difference between the primeval religion and that taught by Zaratūst. When Dk. VII, i, 9–11 speaks of Aūharmasd talking with Masyē and Masyādī; or Hadish tells them of Aūharmasd, the archangels, and the Ahunavair (ibid. 12, 13); or the sacred beings are said to have taught them the primitive arts (ibid. 14); or we are told of the existence of demons in the times of Hōshāng and Tākhmūrup (ibid. 18, 19); or of Ashavahistō in the time of king Pātakhsrōbdō (ibid. 34); it may be urged that the mention of these beings in connection with the men of those times is no proof that their existence was known then. Because it only shows that the old writers, being satisfied that these beings existed in their own time and were immortal, only logically assumed that they must have existed in former times. The really weak point in their argument being the assumption of the existence of such beings in their own time.

49. Safer conclusions may be formed by noticing the

---

1 For the meaning of this term, as defined by the texts which use it, see S. B. E., vol. xviii, pp. 389–430.
dogmas that Zaratūst most strongly advocates and reprobates. When he goes to his first conference (Dk. VII, iii, 56–62) he goes in search of righteousness. When he went to Aūrvālītā-dang, as mentioned above, he advocated the praise of righteousness, scorn of the demons, and the observance of ceremonies; but it was only his scorn of the demons, which took the form of Khvêtûk-das, that the Karaps really rejected. In Dk. VII, iv, 14, he says, ‘worldly righteousness is the whole worship of the demons, and the end of the Masda-worship of Z.’ Though the Hôm plant was sacred before Z.’s birth (ibid. ii, 22–47), the Hôm-water (ibid. iv, 29–35) seems to have been a distinctive token of Z.’s religion; also chanting the Ahunavair (ibid. iv, 38, 41, 42, 56, 61) and the Avesta in general (ibid. 63). The perverted religion and demonizing of the Kīgs and Karaps appear to have been the worst faults he had to find with them (ibid. 64, 67). And the archangels tell Vistāsp that the world requires the good religion which proceeds through Z.’s recitation, so he should chant the Ahunavair and Ashem-voхû, and not worship the demons (ibid. 79, 80). Again, when Dūrāsrôb and Brâdrôk-rêsh partake of food with Pôrûshâspô and Zaratûst (ibid. iii, 34, 38), the latter does not object to the form of worship proposed, but to the person selected to conduct it; and he then proclaims his own reverence for the righteous and the poor.

50. From these statements we may conclude that the old writers, who have handed down these legends from ancient times, were of opinion that Zaratûst was not so much the founder of a totally new religion, as he was a reformer who retained as much of the prior religion as was not seriously objectionable. While strongly insisting upon the necessity of reverencing all good spirits, he strictly prohibited all propitiation of evil spirits. His law was to resist and destroy all that is evil and injurious to man, and to respect and honour all that is good and beneficial to him. According to the legends, he seems to have found little gross idolatry, in the form of image-worship, to reprobate. From the times of the idol-worship encouraged by Dahâk in Bâpêl (Dk. VII, iv, 72), and of the destruction of the
celebrated idol-temple on the shore of Lake Kêkast by Kal-Khûsrôî (ibid. i, 39; Mkh. ii, 95), we find nothing in the legends about this form of idolatry, till 'the oppressiveness of infidelity and idol-worship,' shortly after the downfall of the Sásânians, is lamented (Dk. VII, viii, 6). Demon-worship (ibid. iii, 35; iv, 30; vii, 17, 36, 37; viii, 7, 34), although a term sometimes applied to idolatry, seems to be often used in its literal sense of 'worship of evil spirits,' one form of which is described by Zaratûst (ibid. iv, 47–53).

51. Another interesting study, for which these Zoroastrian legends supply materials, is the traditional chronology which they contain; and how far it will be found, upon examination, to harmonize with the system stated in Bd. XXXIV, or to explain the manifest inaccuracies of that system. The matter is rather complicated, but the Zoroastrian system can be connected with the European system of chronology with some degree of probability.

52. The epoch of Zoroastrian chronology is 'the coming of the religion,' but it has long been doubtful whether this event was the birth of Zaratûst, or his going to conference with the sacred beings, or the acceptance of the religion by Vistásp. Any doubt, however, as to the meaning of the phrase, has now been removed by the statement in Dk. VII, viii, 51, that the first century of the religion is that from the time when Zaratûst came forth to his conference, which event happened when he was thirty years old (ibid. iii, 51, 60, 62). It is also stated, in Bd. XXXIV, 7, that Vistásp reigned thirty years before the coming of the religion, that is, before Zaratûst went to his conference. From these data it is evident that the traditional Zoroastrian chronology makes the birth of Zaratûst coincide with the accession of Vistásp.

53. The nearest date to these events, which is well defined in both the Zoroastrian and European systems of chronology, is that of the death of Alexander, near midsummer in B.C. 323, which Bd. XXXIV, 7, 8, places 272 years after the coming of the religion, that is, after the thirtieth year of Vistásp's reign. And if this were the first
year of the religion, the death of Alexander must have occurred in its 273rd year, according to the Bundahis.

54. But this has to be reconciled with the statement in Zs. XXIII, 12, that, after its 300th year, 'the religion is disturbed and the monarchy is contested;' which statement is expressed more definitely by AV. I, 2-6, when it asserts that the religion remained in purity for 300 years, but then Alexander came to Irân and destroyed the monarchy. If these statements be accepted literally, they imply that Alexander invaded Irân either in the 300th year of the religion, or shortly after that date, but certainly not before it. We cannot place Alexander's invasion of Irân itself at a later date than the battle of Gaugamela (B.C. 331); and if this were the 300th year of the religion, the death of Alexander (B.C. 323) must have occurred in its 308th, instead of its 273rd year, and the coming of the religion would have to be put back thirty-five years. This may be done with some plausibility by assuming an omission of thirty-five years between the reigns of Hûmâï and Dârâï, where the Bundahis passes from traditional to historical personages. Alexander's invasion must also have been a good and sufficient reason for the dissolution of the hundred-discipledom, or priestly college, established by Sênô, which lasted only till the 300th year, as Zs. XXIII, 11 informs us.

55. If we now adopt the abbreviations A.R. for 'anno religionis' and B.R. for 'before the religion,' we are prepared to compile the following synopsis of Zoroastrian Chronology according to the millennial system of the Bundahis, extended to the end of time, but dealing only with traditional matters, combined with the European dates of the same events, deduced from the synchronism of A.R. 300 with B.C. 331, as stated above in § 54:—

B. R. 9000, B. C. 9630. Beginning of the first millennium of Time; and formation of the Fravashis, or primary ideas of the good creations, which remain insensible and motionless for 3000 years (Bd. I, 8; XXXIV, 1).

" 6000, B. C. 6630. Beginning of the fourth millennium, when the spiritual body of Zaratûst is framed together, and remains 3000 years with the archangels (Dk. VII, ii, 15, 16), while
the primeval man and ox exist undisturbed in the world, because the evil spirit is confounded and powerless (Bd. I, 20, 22; III, 1, 3, 5; XXXIV, 1).

B. R. 3000, b. c. 3630. Beginning of the seventh millennium, when the evil spirit rushes into the creation on new-year’s day, destroys the primeval ox, and distresses Gāyōmar, the primeval man (Bd. I, 20; III, 10-20, 24-27; XXXIV, 2). Z. appears to remain with the archangels for 2969 years longer.

" 2970, b. c. 3600. Gāyōmar, passes away (Bd. III, 21-23; XXXIV, 2).

" 2930, b. c. 3560. Masyē and Masyāōıt had grown up (Bd. XV, 2; XXXIV, 3).

" 2787, b. c. 3417. Accession of Hōshāng (Bd. XXXIV, 3).

" 2747, b. c. 3377. Accession of Tākhmōrup (ibid. 4).

" 2717, b. c. 3347. Accession of Yim (ibid.).


" 1000, b. c. 1630. Beginning of the ninth millennium. Accession of Frēdūn (ibid. 5, 6).

" 500, b. c. 1130. Accession of Mānūskīhar (ibid. 6).

" 428, b. c. 1058. Spandarmad comes to Mānūskīhar at the time of Frāsiyā’s irrigation works (Zs. XII, 3-6). The MSS. have b. r. 528, but to bring this date into the reign of Mānūskīhar would be inconsistent with the millennial arrangement; while to assume a clerical error of one century is a probable explanation, as it makes the date more consistent with the allusion to Frāsiyā’s, whose irrigation works, mentioned in Bd. XX, 34; XXI, 6, must have been carried out in the latter part of Mānūskīhar’s reign.

" 380, b. c. 1010. Accession of Aūzōbō (Bd. XXXIV, 6).

" 375, b. c. 1005. Accession of Kaī-Kqābād (ibid. 6, 7).

" 360, b. c. 990. Accession of Kaī-Ūs (ibid. 7).

" 300, b. c. 930. Zarāštist first mentioned by the ox that Srītō killed (Zs. XII, 7-20).

" 210, b. c. 840. Accession of Kaī-Khūsrōt (Bd. XXXIV, 7).

" 150, b. c. 780. Accession of Kaī-Loharāsp (ibid.).

" 45, b. c. 675. The Glory descends from heaven at the birth of Dūkdaḵ (Zs. XIII, 1).

" 30, b. c. 660. Accession of Kaī-Vistāsp (Bd. XXXIV, 7). Vohūmanō and Ashavahistō descend into the world with a stem of Hōm (Dk. VII, ii, 24). Zarāštist is born (ibid. v 1).
B. R. 23, B. C. 653. Z. is seven years old when two Karaps visit his father, and Dûrâsrôbô dies (Dk. VII, iii, 32, 34, 45).

15, B. C. 645. Z. is fifteen years old when he and his four brothers ask for their shares of the family property (Zs. XX, 1).

10, B. C. 640. Z. leaves home at the age of twenty (ibid. 7).

A. R. I, B. C. 630. Beginning of the tenth millennium. Z. goes forth to his conference with the sacred beings on the 45th day of the 31st year of Vîstâsp's reign (Dk. VII, iii, 51–62; viii, 51; Zs. XXI, 1–4).

3, B. C. 628. Z. returns from his first conference in two years, and preaches to Aûrvâîtâ-dang and the Karaps without success (Dk. VII, iv, 2–20).

11, B. C. 620. After his seventh conference, in the tenth year he goes to Vîstâsp; Mêdyômâh is also converted (ibid. 1, 65; Zs. XXI, 3; XXIII, 1, 2, 8).

13, B. C. 618. Twelve years after Z. went to conference, Vîstâsp accepts the religion, though hindered for two years by the Karaps (Dk. VII, v, 1; Zs. XXIII, 5, 7).

20, B. C. 611. A Kâvîg, son of Kûndah, is converted (Zs. XXIII, 8).

30, B. C. 601. Defeat of Argâsp and his Khyons (ibid.).

40, B. C. 591. Vohûnêm is born (ibid.). About this time the Avesta is written by Gâmâsp from the teaching of Z. (Dk. IV, 21; V, iii, 4; VII, v, 11).

48, B. C. 583. Z. passes away, or is killed, aged seventy-seven years and forty days, on the 41st day of the year (Dk. V, iii, 2; VII, v, 1; Zs. XXIII, 9).

58, B. C. 573. Arrival of the religion is known in all regions (Dk. VII, vi, 12).

63, B. C. 568. Frashôstar passes away (Zs. XXIII, 10).

64, B. C. 567. Gâmâsp passes away (ibid.).

73, B. C. 558. Hangâûrush, son of Gâmâsp, passes away (ibid.).

80, B. C. 551. Asmôk-khanvatô passes away, and Akht the wizard is killed (ibid.).

91, B. C. 540. Accession of Vohûman, son of Spend-dâd (Bd. XXXIV, 7, 8).

100, B. C. 531. Sênô is born (Dk. VII, vii, 6).

200, B. C. 431. Sênô passes away (ibid.; Zs. XXIII, 11).

203, B. C. 428. Accession of Hûmâf (Bd. XXXIV, 8).

[Here ends the fragment of the old millennial system preserved in the Bundahâs which omits thirty-five years in
this place, as explained in § 54, with the effect of postponing the end of the millennium. It then proceeds to finish the chronology in its own fashion; mentioning only three historical names, which are here added; the thirty-five omitted years being also inserted.]

A. R. 268, B. C. 363. Accession of Dârâf (ibid.).

280, B. C. 351. Accession of Dârâf, descendant of Dârâf (ibid.).

294, B. C. 337. Accession of Alexander (ibid.).

300, B. C. 331. Invasion by Alexander. Sênô’s hundred-discipledom ends, the religion is disturbed, and the monarchy contested (Zs. XXIII, 11, 12; AV. I, 2–6).

308, B. C. 323. Death of Alexander (Bd. XXXIV, 8).

400, B. C. 231. Benightedness arises (Dk. VII, vii, 9).

440–560, B. C. 191–71. Orthodoxy is still upheld by four successive high-priests (Dk. VII, vii, 8–10).

800–950, A. D. 170–320. The ninth and tenth centuries are represented as very evil and miserable (ibid. viii, 2–45, 61).

971, A. D. 341. Aûshêdar is born (ibid. 55–57).

1001, A. D. 371. Beginning of the eleventh millennium, when the sun stands still for ten days, and Aûshêdar is thirty years old and confers with the sacred beings (ibid. 58–60).

1400–1500, A. D. 770–870. In this century the wizard Mahrkâs produces seven awful winters successively, in which most of mankind and animals perish, including himself (ibid. ix, 3).

1971, A. D. 1341. Aûshêdar-mâh is born (ibid. 18–20).

2001, A. D. 1371. Beginning of the twelfth millennium, when the sun stands still for twenty days, and Aûshêdar-mâh is thirty years old and confers with the sacred beings (ibid. 21–23).

2971, A. D. 2341. Sôshâns is born (ibid. x, 15–18).

3001, A. D. 2371. Beginning of the preparation for the Renovation, when the sun stands still for thirty days, and Sôshâns is thirty years old (ibid. 19); but another passage (ibid. xi, 2) implies that this is the date of his birth.

3028, A. D. 2398. The renovation of the universe occurs at the end of the fifty-seventh year of Sôshâns (ibid. 4, 7).

1 He became king of Macedon B. C. 336, and of Persia in 331.

2 The erroneous dates in the Bundahîr chronology (see § 57) alter this period to B. C. 156–36.
56. We must suppose that the millennial chronology, which the Bundahis discontinues in the middle of the tenth millennium, was originally completed to the end of Time, as attempted in this synopsis, in accordance with the statements in Byt. and Dk. But the allusions to future events and denunciations of coming evils were, no doubt, of a mythological or general character, such as those still surviving in Dk. VII, vii, 29–32; viii, 40, 41, 44–46, 48–60; ix–xi. Whenever we meet with seemingly prophetic descriptions and denunciations, which clearly allude to historical events, such as those in Dk. VII, vii, 3–28; viii, 2, 10, 23, 32–36, 42, 43, 47, 61, they must, of course, be treated as interpolations of a later date than the events themselves. And there are several passages that may belong to either class.

57. It has been already shown, in § 54, that the death of Alexander, which the Bundahis places in A.R. 273, must have occurred in A.R. 308 according to other traditional records. If this error of thirty-five years stood alone, it might be considered accidental; but when we find that the Bundahis supplies only 284 years for the Askâniás, to fill up the whole interval of 548 years between Alexander and Ardashîr, son of Pâpak, we must conclude that these two errors were intended for the purpose which they both fulfil, that of postponing the end of the tenth millennium. On the other hand, the Sâsâniás who ruled for 425 years, are allowed 460 years in the Bundahis, which just counterbalances the thirty-five years omitted after the time of Hûmât. This third error may be considered unintentional, as it probably arose from counting the year of each succession twice over, first in the reign of the deceased king, and again in that of his successor.

58. The extent to which the Bundahis chronology is distorted, by these three errors, will be better understood on inspection of the following tabular statement than from any description of the results, merely observing that the year of the religion (A.R.) is given according to Bundahis dates in the first column, and according to real dates in the second. Several intermediate events have been inserted,
for the sake of illustration, and each of their Bundahis dates includes its proper proportion of the errors¹:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bd. date.</th>
<th>Real date.</th>
<th>Real date.</th>
<th>Bd. date.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. R.</td>
<td>B. C.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>365.</td>
<td>331.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>273.</td>
<td>343.</td>
<td>343.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.</td>
<td>400.</td>
<td>231.</td>
<td>275.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.</td>
<td>553.</td>
<td>78.</td>
<td>196.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>528.</td>
<td>800.</td>
<td>A. D. 170.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>557.</td>
<td>856.</td>
<td></td>
<td>39.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>625.</td>
<td>900.</td>
<td></td>
<td>10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>647.</td>
<td>939.</td>
<td></td>
<td>52.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>713.</td>
<td>1000.</td>
<td></td>
<td>118.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>786.</td>
<td>1068.</td>
<td>438.</td>
<td>191.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800.</td>
<td>1081.</td>
<td>451.</td>
<td>205.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>841.</td>
<td>1118.</td>
<td>488.</td>
<td>246.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>884.</td>
<td>1158.</td>
<td>528.</td>
<td>289.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>887.</td>
<td>1161.</td>
<td>531.</td>
<td>292.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900.</td>
<td>1173.</td>
<td>543.</td>
<td>305.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>951.</td>
<td>1220.</td>
<td>590.</td>
<td>356.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000.</td>
<td>1265.</td>
<td>635.</td>
<td>405.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1017.</td>
<td>1281.</td>
<td>651.</td>
<td>422.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

59. The object of preparing this statement has been to ascertain the reason for the intentional errors in the Bundahis chronology, and the probable period at which they were introduced. It has been mentioned, in § 57, that the effect of both the errors, which are not accidental, has been to postpone the end of the tenth millennium, but they also postpone the dates of some other events which are mentioned in the Zoroastrian legends.

60. Thus, we are told in Dk. VII, vii, 9, that benightedness arises after A. R. 400, which is postponed by the errors from B. C. 231 to 78, but both of these times seem to have been equally unpertitious to the Zoroastrians. Then we learn (ibid. 10, 11) that in the fifth and sixth centuries, say A. R. 440–560, orthodoxy is still upheld by four successive high-priests. This period is postponed by the errors from B. C. 191–71 to 156–36 (see p. xxxi, n. 2), and Zoroastrianism was probably flourishing the whole time. So far, no reason for the alterations can be discovered, as the vague description of events, supplied by the old writer, appears to be

¹ The basis of calculation is the real date of each event and real century, but the Bd. date of each Bd. century. The only Bd. data are 284 years from the death of Alexander to the accession of Ardashir, and 460 years from the latter to the death of *Yazdakard* III, as stated in § 57.
just as applicable to the original periods as to the altered ones.

61. We are further informed (Dk. VII, viii, 2-45) that much evil and misery occur in the ninth and tenth centuries (A.R. 800-1000), at all events until the birth of Aushēdar (Ibid. 55-57) in A.R. 971; and such events as war, invasion, fall of monarchy, oppression, persecution, infidelity, and apostasy are mentioned. Aushēdar confers with the archangels in A.R. 1001 (Ibid. 58-60), and the evils afterwards pass away till A.R. 1400-1500 (Ibid. ix, 3), when frightful winters occur. The evil period A.R. 800-971 was originally A.D. 170-341, or from the middle of the reign of Vologeses III to the middle of that of Shāhpūhar II. But the Bundahis postpones this period to A.D. 451-608, or from the time of the Armenian revolt in the reign of Yazdakart II, to that of the first total defeat of a Persian army by the Arabs near Dhū-Qār in the reign of Khūsrū II. The evil times were probably expected to continue till the end of the millennium, or later, as in the case of Zaratūst himself; for Aushēdar does not go to his conference till A.R. 1001, and might not be expected to begin to preach till A.R. 1011. These dates, originally A.D. 371-381, comprising the remainder of the reign of Shāhpūhar II, would be altered by Bd. to A.D. 636-645, a period which includes the last two great battles with the Arabs, that decided the downfall of the Sāsānian dynasty, though king Yazdakart III lived some six years longer as a fugitive.

62. It is hardly possible that king Ardashir (A.D. 226-241) and his chancellor Tanvasar, when collecting and revising their sacred books, would have compiled the original traditional system of chronology, however general might have been the terms in which the evils were described by the records they possessed, because it would have been a voluntary confession that they had no power to remedy

---

1 The authorities consulted, for Persian historical facts and dates, have been Nöldeke, *Aufsätze zur persischen Geschichte*; and A. von Gutschmid, *Geschichte Irans und seiner Nachbarländer von Alexander dem Großen bis zum Untergang der Arsaciden*: edited by Nöldeke.
the evils of their own time. But if they found the system in an ancient document, they might have been quite willing to admit that evils existed, owing to their enemies, which would have become much worse if they had not been mitigated by their own exertions. In fact, an old document prophesying evil which actually occurred at the time specified, could be used as evidence of the truth of their religion, and would therefore be carefully preserved. And it is quite certain that, if they had altered the chronology of an old document which foretold the time of the downfall of the monarchy, they could not have correctly guessed that time before the downfall occurred. For these reasons we must conclude that the original system of chronology, handed down by the Bundahis, was neither compiled nor altered in the time of Ardashir.

63. For the long reign of Shahpūhar II (A.D. 309–379) the original tradition predicted not only a continuation of evil times, but also the birth and education of a new apostle, Aûshêdar, for the next millennium, who was expected to put an end to evil for about four centuries. His birth was to take place in A. D. 341, and his conference was to commence in 371. These dates are so well defined that, if we could discover any important religious teacher to whom they could refer, we might be justified in believing that the original chronology was compiled in his time. Unfortunately, we know very little of the internal history of Persia during this reign; there was war with the Romans in 337–350 and 358–363, and on the eastern frontiers in the intervening period; also a persecution of the Christians, beginning about 339; all of which fairly represent the predicted evils.

64. Regarding the priesthood and religious history of the reign, we have only the traditions handed down in Pahlavi texts to guide us. In these we are told that Āṭūrpād, son of Māraspend (Dk. VII, vii, 19), was born in the steel period (Dk. IX, viii, 4), and lived in the reign of king Shahpūhar II, son of Aûharmsd (AV. p. 145 n), being high-priest over the religion (Dd. XXXVII, 36). He also collected and preserved the Nasks (Dk. VIII, i, 22),
and, after he had proved his orthodoxy by ordeal (Sg. X, 70, 71), the king proclaimed his intention of not allowing any more heterodoxy (Dk. IV, 27\textsuperscript{1}). In his old age he obtained a son, after devout prayer, and named him Zara-tušt (Pandnāmak, 1); but this son also bore the Avesta title of Āvarethrābu (Dk. VII, vii, 20, 21; VIII, xiii, 18), who is called the son of Rāštare-vaghent in Yt. XIII, 106, showing that this latter Avesta title was adopted by Āturpād himself. Finally, we meet with another Āturpād, son of Zaratušt, described in Peshotan’s Dk. III, cxxxvii, 2, as high-priest in the reign of Yaṣdakard I (A. D. 399–420), son of Shahpuhar, and also mentioned in Pahl. Yas. p. 120, ll. 14, 15 Sp. (translated in Dk. VIII, i, 7 n).

65. We have here, evidently, three successive high-priests, father, son, and grandson, and all celebrated men. The father had been employed in collecting and revising, or probably translating, some of the sacred books, and then, after a religious discussion, submitted himself to the ordeal of melted metal, as a test of his orthodoxy. The king was convinced, and his proclamation meant persecution of the heterodox, such as was commenced about A. D. 339, as regards the Christians. So that we may safely assume that Āturpād’s ordeal took place shortly before this date, and probably shortly after 337, when the Roman war commenced. As we must also certainly assume that the original chronology could not have come into existence at a much later date than 341, when so remarkable an event as the birth of a new apostle was fixed by it to occur, we have to consider who this apostle could have been; and whether it may not have been intended to identify him with Āturpād’s own son.

66. In the first place, is such a suspicion consistent with known dates? To represent Aushèdar, according to the original chronology, the son must have been born A. D. 341 (§ 63); and we may suppose that the time of Aushèdar’s conference (371) would represent the time of Āturpād’s

---

\textsuperscript{1} See S. B. E., vol. xxxvii, p. 415.
death, when his son succeeded him in the high-priesthood. If Āṭūrpād were aged eighty-one at his death, he would have been fifty-one at the birth of his son, or approaching old age; and he would have been born in 290, or nineteen years before the king. His grandson may have been born in 365, when his father Zaratūst was twenty-four, and may have succeeded that father in the high-priesthood about 400, the second year of king Yasikard I. As all these dates are reasonably consistent with the few facts that are known, there seems to be no impossibility in the hypothesis that the original chronology of Aūshēdar's birth may have had some connection with the date of the birth of Āṭūrpād's son. The dates assumed, with regard to these three high-priests, which may be slightly varied, are as follows:—

Āṭūrpād, born 290, high-priest 320, died 371.
Zaratūst, " 341, " 371, " 400.
Āṭūrpād, " 365, " 400, " 420, or later.

67. On the other hand, we must recollect that the time of the birth of Aūshēdar was not an isolated date which could be varied at pleasure, to suit any circumstances that might arise; but it was intimately connected with the dates of birth of three other apostles, which were each placed at the same distance from the ends of three other millenniums. It would perhaps be more difficult to suit a new millennial system of chronology, to the accidental year of a particular child's birth, than to have the child born in a particular year of an old system already existing. And, if so, it may be safer to assume that Āṭūrpād, knowing the year of the expected birth, took measures to secure the fulfilment of the prophecy, so far as the birth was concerned. If the child did not turn out so capable of regenerating the world as had been expected, that was a matter for posterity to explain. Under such circumstances of merely seeming fulfilment of a single particular, fraudulently obtained, the original prediction might be of any age.

68. It does not appear that the priestly councillors assembled by Khûsrô I (Byt. I, 7), made any alteration in
the original chronology, although they slightly revised the Pahlavi Vendidad. In fact, the priests, who must have been long expecting the end of Zaratûst's millennium, were probably looking forward for the approaching downfall of the Sásânian monarchy, which might readily be understood, as the surest sign of the termination of this period, from such statements as those in Dk. VII, viii, 1, 2. At any rate, the alterations in the chronology, for the purpose of postponing the end of the tenth millennium till A.D. 635, would not have been made till some time after the termination of the monarchy in 651, but probably long before the compilation of the Bundahis about 900. The effects of these alterations upon the dates of the evil ninth and tenth centuries, and upon those of the birth, conference, and preaching of Aûshéârâr, have been already stated in § 61. And their object has evidently been to adapt the old predictions as much as possible to real events; for which purpose also, the predictions themselves have probably been often made more definite than they were originally.

69. It follows, from the foregoing investigation, that the original chronology must have existed A.D. 341, and, in fact, we have found no sufficient reason for supposing that it was compiled as late as Sásânian times. While the alterations, we find in the Bundahis, could have hardly been made till after 651.

70. Regarding the age in which Zaratûst lived, the dates stated in the synopsis of traditional chronology (§ 55), are B.C. 660–583, while the reign of Vistâsp, which extends to the fabulous length of 120 years, or 660–540, evidently represents a short dynasty, including Hystaspes and his next four forefathers, if we accept the traditional identification of Vistâsp with the father of Darius I. But the names of those four forefathers, which are known on the unimpeachable authority of the Behistûn inscription of Darius himself, render it almost impossible to accept this traditional identification, as they differ totally from those of the forefathers of Vistâsp in the Avesta. The two dynasties are as follows:—
INTRODUCTION.

Behistūn: Hakhāmanis  Avesta: Kavi Kavāta
Kaispis  Kava Usa
Ariyārāmna  Kava Husrava
Arshāma  Auvadaspā
Vistāspa  Kava Vistāspa

Unless it can be shown that these two series of names have the same meaning in two different languages, there seems little chance of proving the identity of the two dynasties. We may, however, quote the instances of the high-priest Ātūrpdā=Ātare-pāta and his son Zaratūst=Zarathustra being called Rāstare-vaghert and Avarthrabau, respectively, in the Avesta (see § 64); but these latter names seem more like titles than translations.

71. The date of Zoroaster and his religion has formerly been fully discussed by Windischmann and others, and the question has been lately re-examined by Williams Jackson. He divides the ancient statements, that have been made on the subject, into three classes: those which declare that Zaratūst lived before B.C. 6000, those which associate his name with Ninus and Semiramis, and the native tradition which, as we have seen, places his life in the period B.C. 660–583. Singularly enough, the oldest writers, those who lived only two to four centuries after the traditional period of the lifetime of Zaratūst, are those who report that he lived some 6000 years before that period. Pliny the Elder (Nat. Hist. XXX, 2) quotes Eudoxus (B.C. 368) as stating that Zaratūst existed 6000 years before the death of Plato, that is, B.C. 6347, which is also confirmed by Aristotle. And he quotes Hermippus (about B.C. 250) as placing him 5000 years before the Trojan war, that is, B.C. 6184. A third mode of describing this period

---

1 These were the reigning sovereigns, but the last two are descended from a collateral branch, and their actual pedigree is as follows:—Kavi Kavāta, Kavi Aipivanghu, Kavi Pisanangh, Manu, Uzava, Auvadaspā, Kava Vistāspa (Bd. XXXI, 28, 29).
seems to have been used by Xanthus of Lydia (B.C. 500–450) who stated that Zaratušt lived 6000 years before Xerxes, as quoted by Diogenes Laertius, that is, B.C. 6485.

72. Three or four other classical writers mention similar statements, and Jackson points out that these extravagant dates are probably owing to the European writers misunderstanding Persian statements with reference to the pre-existence of Zaratušt’s Fravashi. It will, in fact, be seen from the synopsis (§ 55) that the traditional account is that the spiritual body of Zaratušt was framed together as early as the beginning of the fourth millennium, which occurred B.C. 6630, and this may be accepted as a close approximation to the three dates, B.C. 6347, 6184, and 6485, indicated by the ancient writers, considering that their statements are made in even thousands of years.

73. Pliny also mentions, on the authority of other writers who are not named, that another Zoroaster, a Proconnesian, lived a little before the time of Osthanes who accompanied Xerxes to Greece (B.C. 480). And, so far as time is concerned, this Zoroaster might have been the traditional Zaratušt who died 103 years before this journey of Osthanes.

74. The old statements about Zoroaster or Oxyartes, the Magian king of Bactria in the time of Ninus and Semiramis, can hardly refer to the traditional Zaratušt who is never represented as a king, although the supreme Zarathustra of the Avesta was apparently a ruling priest. The time in which this Bactrian lived is also very uncertain, for though Semiramis has recently been placed about B.C. 800, her position in Albiruni’s tables is certainly 1200 years earlier.

75. It seems, therefore, that the ancient statements, regarding the date of Zaratušt, reported by Pliny and corroborated by a few other classical writers, can be fully explained from the traditional system of chronology used in Pahlavi texts, by identifying the classical Zoroaster of the seventh millennium B.C. with the traditional Zaratušt

---

1 There are some doubts as to the correctness of these dates.
in his ante-natal spiritual state, after he had ceased to be a mere Fravashi, or primary idea, and had become an intelligent, moving, and personal existence, but still a spirit. While the later Zoroaster of Pliny, who flourished before the fifth century B.C., must have lived about the same time as the same traditional Zaratûst after he came into the worldly existence, and may reasonably be identified with him, although Pliny had little information to give about him.

76. It will be noticed that this explanation depends entirely upon the peculiarly artificial system of the traditional chronology, in which the whole of time is assumed to consist of twelve millenniums devoted to different purposes; and if this particular system had not been in use at the time the statements, quoted by Pliny and Diogenes Laertius, were made, those statements could not have been explained as referring to the same individual. But if they do not refer to the same individual, we have only the options of rejecting all the statements, or believing an impossible date to be literally correct; neither of which decisions would be altogether satisfactory to a judicious mind. The only reasonable conclusion seems to be that the chronology based upon the twelve millenniums was in use in the fifth century B.C., about which time the earliest quoted statement seems to have been made.

77. It will also be observed that this millennial chronology is inextricably associated with the idea of the primeval existence of all good creations in the state of Fravashis. These are described as spiritual existences who remained three millenniums unthinking, unmoving, and intangible (Bd. I, 8); and the next three millenniums they still remained undisturbed by evil, mankind being represented, for that period, by Gâyômard in the world (Bd. XXXIV, 1) and by the spiritual form of Zaratûst in heaven (Dk. VII, ii, 15), while the animals were symbolized by the primeval ox for the same period. Six millenniums, which are half the duration of time, were thus appropriated to Fravashis, spiritual and embodied, probably before the birth of Plato, if we may rely upon classical statements; and it must have
been before this date that the series of millenniums was arranged for all future history, till Time was expected to merge once more into Eternity at the renovation of the universe.

78. As we have seen that Zoroastrian tradition is very consistent in fixing the date of Zaratůst's activity about the end of the seventh century B.C., it may be asked, why have Avesta scholars so strongly insisted upon its greater antiquity? They may have had several reasons, but three, at least, were important. First, they had the classical statements which, as we have seen (§ 71), generally placed Zaratůst as far back as the seventh millennium B.C., on the testimony of persons who lived from two to four centuries after the traditional date of Zaratůst's death. No one, of course, could believe in the literal accuracy of the number of millenniums, which referred, as we have seen, to an imaginary period of spiritual existence, but this number was considered merely as an exaggeration which might be reduced to any amount that seemed reasonable. At the same time, this evidence for antiquity was quite sufficient, in the second place, to discredit the traditional date, of which these old authorities seemed ignorant, though it was a period then comparatively recent. And, if this discredit had not been sufficient to shake the faith of Avesta scholars in the traditional date of Zaratůst, they still had a third reason for their scepticism, when they discovered that the language of the Avesta was not merely a sister of Sanskrit, but that a large portion of it was sister to the oldest Sanskrit with which they were acquainted, and which appeared to them certainly older than the time of Gautama Buddha, who lived about one generation later than the traditional Zaratůst.

79. How far Avesta scholars were justified in their conclusions must be left for future ages to determine; at present we have no really historical information about the origin of Zoroastrianism, and must still consider it as decidedly prehistoric; though, it may be admitted that the Parsi calendar, as used in Persia, so far agrees with tradition, that it still bears witness to its own original institution in
INTRODUCTION.

the reign of Darius Hystaspes, as will be seen from the following details.

80. The Parsi year consists of twelve months, each consisting of thirty days, with five additional days added at the end of the year, and the total number of 365 days never varies, so that, whenever a leap-year occurs in our calendar, the beginning of the Parsi year retreats one day in the Christian calendar. In this manner, the total number of days which the beginning of the Parsi year has retreated, since the institution of their calendar, records the number of leap-years which would have occurred in the same period of Christian years, if the regular leap-years had existed the whole time; and four times the number of leap-years would be the total number of years. But as leap-years have not been used the whole time, we have to calculate from astronomical data.

81. In the first place, we want to know at what season the Parsi year originally began, and we learn this from Bd. XXV, 7, 20, where we are told that the winter of the rectified year ends with the five extra days, and the spring begins with the first month; which means that the rectified year begins with the vernal equinox. We also have to observe that, retreating at the rate of one day every four years, the beginning of the year retreats all round the year in 1460 years; and we know from general history that the period, with which we have to deal, is much more than 1460 years and less than 2920. Then we have to ascertain the exact length of the tropical year, which astronomers say is 365.2422 days, with an infinitesimal decrement, quite inappreciable in the period we have in view.

82. We may calculate back from any vernal equinox which occurs not too far from noon, say that of March 22, 1865, when the beginning of the Parsi year, according to Persian reckoning, had retreated to August 24, 1864, or 210 days, in addition to a previous retreat of a whole year of 365 days, or altogether 575 days since the establishment of the calendar. So that the difference between the Parsi year of 365 days and the correct tropical year of 365.2422 days had then accumulated to a total of 575 days. Divid-
ing the accumulated error of 575 days by the annual increment of 0.2422 of a day, we obtain a quotient of 2374 years, including A.D. 1865, as the time in which this error had accumulated, and this carries us back to B.C. 510 as an approximate date of the establishment of the Parsi calendar, with the first day of the year coinciding with the vernal equinox.

83. This date is, however, liable to some modifications for errors of observation on the part of the ancient astronomers, one of which errors, being constantly in one direction, must be taken into account. These old observers were not aware of the effect of refraction, which always makes the night seem somewhat shorter than it is in reality; and this would lead them to antedate the vernal equinox by rather more than a day; so that they would observe an apparent equinox in B.C. 505 on the same day in the Parsi year as that on which the real equinox occurred in B.C. 510. The most probable date of the establishment of the Parsi calendar is therefore B.C. 505, with a margin of four to eight years in either direction for accidental errors of observation.

84. A few years before this period we know, from the cuneiform inscriptions of Behistūn, that Darius Hystaspes used an older calendar, when recording his early victories over insurgents, which consolidated his empire. It was a time when he was introducing many reforms in the government, and, being a believer in Aoramazdā, his most influential advisers would probably be Zoroastrian priests. If they thought it necessary to reform the old calendar, the adoption of strictly Zoroastrian names for the new months and days in the Parsi calendar would be fully explained.

85. But, besides this ordinary civil calendar, in which new-year’s day was constantly retreating, the Persians had a rectified calendar for religious purposes, which intercalated an extra month from time to time, for the purpose of bringing new-year’s day forward again to the vernal equinox, and restoring the festivals to their proper seasons. It is this calendar which is used in Bd. XXV, and its days
and months are distinguished by the epithet \( \text{vehíkakig} \) (veh + \( i + ak + ig \)), 'belonging to what is really good,' or \( \text{vehíkak} \), 'belonging to the really good,' which, in this connection, may be best expressed by the word 'rectified.'

86. This intercalation is described by Albrūnī in various passages\(^1\) which inform us that, after the new-year's day had retreated more than a month from the vernal equinox, the king would order the priests to arrange for the solemn proclamation of an extra month to be intercalated, between the last month of the year and the five extra days, by merely moving those five days from the end of the twelfth month to the end of the first month of the next year. The effect of this was to put an extra month into the earlier year which, beginning with the first month, would also end with the first month augmented by the five extra days as the usual termination of the year. All following years would begin with the second month, and end with the first month and the five extra days, until the second intercalation, when a year of thirteen months and five days would be again obtained, by merely moving the five extra days to the end of the second month which would thus become the last month of the year, while the third month would begin the year until the third intercalation. By these means, any number of intercalations could be made without any additional month being named, and the position of the five extra days always indicated the end of the rectified year, and that the rectified first month, which followed them, was to become the last month of the preceding year at the next rectification, or intercalation.

87. If the Parsi calendar, as used in Persia, were established B.C. 505, as we have calculated, it ought to have been rectified by an intercalation of one month about each of the following years:—B.C. 381, 257, 133, 10, A.D. 115, 239, 363, 487, 610. Albrūnī (p. 121), however, has recorded only one intercalation of two months in the time of Yasdakard I (A.D. 399-420), son of Shahpūhar, when the

\(^1\) Sachau's Albrūnī's Chronology of Ancient Nations, pp. 12, 13, 38, 53-56, 121, 184, 185, 230, 221.
five extra days were removed to the end of the original eighth month 
Ābān, where they remained until Albrūnī's own time (Alb. p. 56), about A.D. 1000. The reason for intercalating two months at once, was because the time for the seventh intercalation (A.D. 363) was already long past; so the eighth was added three or four score years in advance, being due in 487.

88. All that Albrūnī says about this double intercalation is quite in accordance with the original establishment of the calendar by Darius Hystaspes, and would render any date more than thirty-seven years later than his reign impossible. With regard to the earlier intercalations (which must have occurred to account for the movement of the five extra days) that of A.D. 115 was neither in the reign of Vologeses I, nor in that of Vologeses III, one of whom must have been the Askānian renovator of the Avesta. That of A.D. 239, if carried out punctually, would have been at the extreme end of the reign of Ardashīr; but the intercalations seem to have been usually delayed, as in the case of that of 363 which was delayed for thirty to fifty years, although it ought to have been carried out under the direction of one of those ultra-orthodox high-priests, Ātūrpād son of Māraspend, or his son Zaratūst, in the reign of Shahpūhar II.

89. It is worthy of notice that the names of both the days and months, which have come down to us in this calendar of Darius, include the names of the six Amesha-spentas, which, according to Darmesteter's hypothesis, were not invented till the time of Vologeses I, in the first century A.D. We have positive evidence that the calendar of twelve months of thirty days each, with five extra days to complete the year, must have been established in the time of Darius. This fact being recorded mechanically by the extent of the retreat of the Persian Parsis' new-year's day down to the present time, and by the number of months intercalated in their religious calendar down to the fifth

---

1 If the calendar had been established thirty-eight years after the death of Darius, the seventh intercalation would not have been due till one year after the death of Yazdakard I.
INTRODUCTION.

century A.D., being known from the position of the five extra days in the rectified calendar. We have no evidence of any change of names having been made in this calendar at any time; and only positive and indisputable evidence could be admitted, because reformers of calendars are hardly ever satisfied with mere change of names, and the calendar itself is a permanent witness that no alteration can have been made in any other particular, since the time of Darius.

90. Darmesteter's theory of a late origin for the Avesta having been mentioned, it may be allowable to add, that the likelihood of this theory does not increase upon closer examination. It is a brilliant hypothesis, very carefully prepared to meet ordinary criticism; but it does not appear to convince Avesta scholars in general, for want of sufficient evidence, as it is very necessary to distinguish carefully between possibilities and probabilities; the former being not admissible as evidence, unless corroborated by positive facts. Its chief use has been in checking the tendency to exaggerate the age of the Avesta, but it seems itself to be an exaggeration in the opposite direction, a returning swing of the ever-restless pendulum of judgment. On the other hand, the traditional age of the religion cannot be fairly considered as exaggerated, for the chief difficulty in accepting it as sufficiently old, is that the nearer our researches penetrate to that time the less real light we obtain.

E. W. WEST.

April, 1897.
ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THIS VOLUME.

A. D. for Anno Domini; Alb. for Albiruni's Chronology of Ancient Nations, translated by Sachau; A. R. for Anno Religionis; Ar. for Arabic; AV. for the Book of Ardashir; Av. for Avesta; B for Bombay MS. of Dinkard, brought from Iran in 1783; B. C. for Before Christ; Bd. for Bundahis (S. B. E. v, 1-151), and Band (volume); Beh. for Behistun inscription; BK for an old copy of K35, made when this MS. was more complete than it is now; B. R. for Before the Religion; Byt. for Bahman Yast (S. B. E. v, 189-235); Chald. for Chaldee; Chap. for chapter; Chaps. for chapters; Dd. for Dastan-i Dinik (S. B. E. xviii, 1-276); Dk. for Dinkard (S. B. E. xxxvii, 1-397, 406-418, and this volume); ed. for editor or edition; Ep. for Epistles of Manušētha (S. B. E. xviii, 277-366); Etudes iran. for Études iraniennes; Farh. Oim for Farhang-i Oim-aevak; gen. for genitive case; Gesch. der Sas. for Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sassaniden; Gf. for the Tale of Göšt-i Fryánd; Heb. for Hebrew; Ibid. for ibidem; Ind. vers. for Indian version; J. for Jāmāsp's old MS.; K for University Library at Kopenhagen; L for India Office Library at London; l. for line; ll. for lines; Mkh. for Mainyō-i Khirad (S. B. E. xxiv, 1-113); MS. for manuscript; MSS. for manuscripts; n. for footnote; nom. for nominative case; p. for page; Pahl. for Pahlavi; Pers. for Persian; pp. for pages; Pt. for Peshotan's old MS.; S. B. E. for Sacred Books of the East; Sd. for Sad-dar (S. B. E. xxiv, 253-361); SG. for Sikand-gumānīk Vigār (S. B. E. xxiv, 115-251); Sls. for Shāyast-lā-shāyast (S. B. E. v, 237-406); Sp. for Spiegel's edition; T for Tehmurā's MS. of Dd., Zs., &c.; Vd. for Vendidad, ed. Geldner; Vig. for Vigirkiard-ī Dinik; Visp. for Visperad, ed. Geldner; Vol. for volume; Westerg. Frag. for Westergaard's Fragments; Yas. for Yasna, ed. Geldner; Yt. for Yast, ed. Geldner; YZ. for Geiger's Yâtkâr-i Zarîrân; Z. for Zarâtust; Zs. for Selections of Zâd-sparam, first series.
MARVELS OF ZOROASTRIANISM

AS STATED IN

THE SEVENTH AND FIFTH BOOKS

OF THE

DÎNKARD

AND IN THE

SELECTIONS OF ZÂD-SPARAM

CHAPTERS XII-XXIV.
OBSERVATIONS.

1. For all divisions into chapters and sections the translator is chiefly responsible, as the stops found in the manuscripts are not used systematically.

2. Italics are used for any English words which are not expressed, or fully understood, in the original text, but are added to complete the sense of the translation.

3. Italics occurring in Oriental words, or names, represent certain peculiar Oriental letters (see the ‘Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets’ at the end of this volume), or certain abbreviated modes of writing Pahlavi letters. Italic a, d, b, d, e, t, h, i, l, kh, l, p, r, sh, u, v, zd indicate no change of pronunciation; but g should be sounded like j, hv like wh, k like ch in ‘church,’ s like sh, and Avesta z like French j.

4. In the translation words in parentheses are merely explanatory of those that precede them, and often translate Pahlavi glosses in the original text.

5. For the meaning of the abbreviations, used in the notes, see the explanatory list after the Introduction.

6. The manuscripts used for the Dīnkard are:

B (written A.D. 1659), the only independent authority for Book VII; it was brought from Irān to Surat in 1783, and one folio, at the end of Chap. iv, appears to be missing.

K 43 (written A.D. 1594 and later), No. 43 in the University Library at Kopenhagen, which contains another independent authority for Book V in its later portion.

7. The manuscripts used for the Selections of Zād-spāram are:

K 35 (probably written A.D. 1572), No. 35 in the same library, which was brought from Irān by Prof. Westergaard in 1843, along with No. 43.

T, a copy of a MS. about fifty years older, belonging to Ervad Tehmurās Dinshawji Ankalesaria of Bombay.
MARVELS OF ZOROASTRIANISM.

DÍNKARD.—BOOK VII.

CHAPTER I.

1. For the gratification of the creator Aūharmazd, even through the complete superiority of the Mazda-worshipping religion, adorned by omniscience, in the world.

2. The seventh book is about the marvellousness of the greatest reminder of the Mazda-worshipping religion, Zarátust⁴ of the Šptámas; also of the mindfulness of that illustrious one by Aūharmazd, and of his religion, arisen through the word of Aūharmazd, being blessed among those of the region of king Vistāsp; from the Exposition of the Good Religion⁵.

3. But, before that, there is purposely written whatever was the progress of the character and effect of the good religion and its first acceptor in the spiritual and worldly existences; and, after that,

---

¹ Nearly always spelt Zaratûkhsh in the MS., the counterpart of the Persian form Zaratuhsht or Zaraduhsht.
² This Nikêšô-i Vêh-dênô was evidently the name of an older book, from which the Dinkard quotes much of its information on religious matters.
the prophets, apostles, and upholders in the period as far as Zaratúst, whose guardian spirit is revered, and their religion, which is this, due to the utterance and splendour with which they have been blessed with prophecy among mankind.

4. According to the Mazda-worshipping religion and the Exposition of the Good Religion, it is the nature of Aūharmazd's disposition and his knowledge as to the complete attainment of the first creature, the archangel Vohúmanô, and the first progress spiritually among the archangels and the other sacred beings of the spiritual and worldly existences, and materially in Gâyômard, the first man, through concurrent and complete acceptance from the creator Aūharmazd, and the needful atonement in his own period through meditation, and the smiting thereby of the fiend of that period and the opposition thereof, by thinking of the creator's teaching, that constitute the whole of that first utterance of the religion of Aūharmazd.

5. According to the declaration of the good religion about the production of existence, which is the praise of him who was the causer of existence and creator, the beneficent spirit, the first craving among mankind was this, that 'we be happy and be the creation of Aūharmazd;' and the last, as regards the preservation of a remedy for mankind, is this, that 'the best is this, that the formation of lives be perfect now, though rendered sickly by him; and the spiritual existences of mankind be so now, though the destroyer has come to the creatures.'

6. For

---

1 This preliminary matter occupies the whole of Chap. I.

2 The Yâihâ-ahû-vairyô, or most sacred religious formula of the Parsis.
human beings of the lineage of Gâyômard this is the one thing good, when they shall perform their duty and good works; and one's work is to smite one's own opposing fiend; an instance presentable to any of the lineage, that it is important for every one of you to smite his own opposing fiend, is the freedom from molestation which occurs thereby, and the non-contamination of the creatures by the destroyer; and it is that effect which the creator of creation has produced for it.

7. And this, too, is declared by the good religion, that through a true-spoken statement Gâyômard attained to the good spiritual lordship¹ of the archangels (that is, he was fit for the supreme heaven²). 8. And after Gâyômard, at various periods until the ever-favouring³ Zaratûst of the Septâmas, whose guardian spirit is reveredence; much also was his acquaintance with knowledge, and his work was the preservation of the mankind of that time in which he came into notice; moreover he became requisite for conference with the creator; and because of their superior carrying on of destiny⁴, by command of the

---

¹ Reading hû-ahûh, Av. hvanghevi. This section is one of the numerous quotations from the Pahlavi version of a lost Avesta text. When we are furnished with a complete Pahl.-Av. vocabulary, it will be possible to recover much of the original Avesta of such quotations, with some degree of certainty.

² Pahl. garôdmânfig. Such glosses and comments, inserted by the Pahlavi translator, are always marked as parenthetical.

³ Pahl. hamâî-bâhâr; it might be read hamâî-bîdâr, ‘ever vigilant.’

⁴ Reading vakshsh (= Pers. bakhsh), which is usually expressed by its Zvâris equivalent gadd (traditionally gâdmân), and this means both ‘destiny’ and ‘the star, or glory, of destiny’ (Av. hvarenô, Pers. khura). Here the first letter of vakshsh is omitted, and this error converts the word into khayâ, the Zvâris of gân, ‘life.’
creator, it is declared in the good religion, that the combined titles of prophet (vakhshivar), acceptor, and promoter are enumerated of them.

9. As Gâyômard passed away, it came to Masyê and Masyâol, the second of worldly beings who were the progeny of Gâyômard the first; and it is declared, by the word of Aûharmazd, that he spoke to them, when they had been produced by him, thus: 'You are the men I produce, you are the parents of the parents of all embodied existence; and so do you men not worship the demons, for the possession of complete mindfulness is the best thing produced by me for you, so that you may fully observe duty and ordinances with complete mindfulness.' 10. And the bountifulness of Aûharmazd was extolled by them, and they went on with their own duty; they also performed the will of the creator, enjoyed the advantage of the many duties of the world, and practised next-of-kin marriage for procreation, union, and the complete progress of the creations in the world, which are the best good works of mankind. 11. The creator showed them the sowing of corn, as declared in the words of Aûharmazd thus: 'This is thine, O Masyê! which is an ox; thine, too, is this corn; and thine those other appliances; henceforth thou shouldst know them well.'

This must have also occurred twice in a previous copy of the MS. in § 28, where the word is written gân, 'life,' in the MS. B. In S. B. E., vol. xxxvii, Dk. VIII, xiii, 20, vakhsh has been erroneously translated 'word.'

1 The glorious destiny. §§ 9 and 10 have been previously translated in S. B. E., vol. xviii, pp. 411, 412.

2 Literally 'man and woman' who grew up as plants from the earth fertilized by Gâyômard, the prototype of the human race; see Bkd. XV, 1–5.
CHAPTER I, 9–14.

12. This, too, is declared by the good religion, that Aûharmazd spoke to Hadish, one of the sacred beings thoroughly worthy through righteousness, thus: ‘O Hadish, who art thoroughly worthy through righteousness! thou shouldst proceed to Masyê and Masyâôl, thou shouldst procure thy corn and bread from Masyê and Masyâôl, and shouldst bless theirs thus: “This corn comes up owing to you, and, as it came unto you from Aûharmazd and the archangels, may the corn extend from you unto your descendants without disturbance from the demons”; and two Ahunavairs are to be recited for the staying away of the demon and fiend.’ 13. And Hadish, the thoroughly worthy through righteousness, went to Masyê and Masyâôl, and he procured his corn and bread from Masyê and Masyâôl, and it was given by them; he also blessed them thus: ‘May this corn come up from you, as from the archangels! as it came unto you from Aûharmazd and the archangels, may it extend from you unto your descendants, without disturbance from the demons;’ and two Ahunavairs were recited by him, for the staying away of the demon and fiend.

14. And, owing to the explanation of the sacred beings, Masyê and Masyâôl attained also to the manufacture of clothing, the tending of sheep, house-building, and primitive carpentry, the agriculture and husbandry of the ancients, and the memory of their original state; and these proceeded from them through their lineage, presenting an example and

1 Mentioned in Visp. i, 9: ii, xi: ix, 5, and recognized as a spirit in Pahl. Visp. i, 31 (Sp.). The spirit who assists the husbandman, see Études irân. ii, 201.

3 The MS. has ‘his,’ as in § 13, by mistake.

3 Two of the sacred Yathâ-ahû-vairyô formulas.
spreading in the world, to artificers among the plenitude of artificers.

15. And after that, the destiny to be carried on came to Sâmak, whose son, and the descent of their collateral descendants was on to each region and each quarter of the world, to that extent which the creator chose for that region and quarter; and thereby there was a completion of the progress and spreading of mankind into the various regions and quarters.

16. At another time it came to Vâêgered and Hôshâng of the early law (pês-dâd), for providing in the world the law of husbandry, or cultivation of the world, and of sovereignty or protection of the world. 17. And through their companionship and united force, given by religion, the sovereignty and cultivation of the world were prepared through progress and a succession of provisions of Aûharmazd's creatures, as well as the religion appointed by Aûharmazd. 18. And through that glory of destiny (gâdâ) two-thirds of the demons of Mâzanô and the seven evil-instructed ones of Aêshm were destroyed by Hôshâng.

19. After that it came to Tâkhmôrup the well-armed, and through that glory the demon and evil mankind, the wizard and witch, were smitten by him; idolatry was also cast out by him, and he propagated in his time the reverence and service of the creator; the evil spirit, converted into the shape of a horse, was also carrying him for thirty winters.

1 See Bd. XV, 24–26.
2 Grandsons of Sâmak, see Bd. XV, 28, and Sachau's Albirûnf's Chronology of Ancient Nations, pp. 206, 212.
3 The idolators of Mâzandarân. See Yt. XIX, 26.
4 Called 'seven powers' in Bd. XXVIII, 15.
5 See Bd. XXXI, 2, and Yt. XIX, 28, 29.
20. And it came, at another time, for the conference with Aûharmazd, to Yim the splendid, the son of Vivangaha; and owing to his accepting the four classes of the religion, which are priesthood, warriorship, husbandry, and artisanship, there are the four classes which are priesthood, warriorship, husbandry, and artisanship, and thereby the world was improved, extended, and developed; he also rendered even the creatures, in a measure, immortal, undecaying, hungerless, thirstless, plentiful, and fully-settled. 21. And in the good religion it is declared, by the word of the creator Aûharmazd to Yim, thus: 'Then do thou widen my world! (that is, make up its measure more), then do thou extend my world! (that is, make it up larger), and then thou shouldst accept from me the protection, nourishment, and chieftainship of the world; and do thou effect such watchfulness over it, that no one shall be able to occasion the wounding or injury of another.'

22. And this was accepted and done by Yim, as Aûharmazd commanded him; and through the same glory he widened the earth three-thirds larger than that which it was theretofore. 23. And, in that realm of his, the cattle and men of the realm were made immortal by him, and the other creations, water, vegetation, and the various foods, imperishable. 24. And this, too, is declared by the good religion, that the world was made by him like the supreme heaven in pleasantness; also the enclosure made by Yim, constructed by him according to all the commands of the creator, about guarding the creatures from perishing through the winter of

---

1 See Bd. XXXI, 3-5, and Yt. XIX, 31-33. 2 In Vd. II, 4. 3 As detailed in Vd. II, 22-31, 40, 41.
Mahrkūs, and likewise many other wonders are reported by the good religion.

25. And it came, at another time, by command of the creator, to Frēdūn the Âspīgân\(^1\) when he was in the pregnant womb, owing to the share of husbandry in the avocations of the religion, through allotment from the glory of Yim, and through its triumphant splendour. 26. And Frēdūn, through that triumphant splendour, became a responder to Dahâk\(^2\) from the pregnant womb, and that degraded fiend was averted and paralysed by him; having come to nine years of age, he proceeded about his destruction, and through that victory Dahâk was smitten by him\(^3\), the creatures were saved and relieved thereby, those of Māzandar and Māda were smitten, their ravage and mischief were removed from the region of Khvantras, and the region of Khvantras was preserved for his three sons. 27. And owing to his husbandry, which is the third avocation of the religion, pestilence and disease were disturbed by the medical treatment even of pestilence itself, and he exhibited to mankind also many other wonders produced and useful occupation for the world.

28. And, in the life-time of Frēdūn, the same destiny came to Atrîk\(^4\), son of Frēdūn, owing to introduction by the creator, and was diffused in him, and he practised humility; the life\(^5\) which is perfect is brought through a prayer from his father Frēdūn,

\(^1\) See Bd. XXXI, 7, 8, and Yt. XIII, 131; XIX, 36.
\(^2\) The Arab usurper, or usurping dynasty, that conquered Yim in his old age; see Bd. XXXI, 5, 6.
\(^3\) See Yt. XIX, 37.
\(^4\) See Bd. XXXI, 9, 10.
\(^5\) Probably 'destiny'; the initial letter of vakhsh, 'destiny,' has been omitted, and this blunder converts the word into khayā, 'life.'
and that life came to him from the creator through the blessing of Frēdūn.

29. And it came, through his mother, to a descendant of Frēdūn and descendant of Aīrlk; it proceeded with the angel Nēryōsang to Mānūšēhar, and its entire progress was in the lineage of Aīrlk. 30. And it came to Mānūšēhar, the monarch of Irān, and through it many wonder-wrought actions were performed by him; he smote Salm and Tūg in revenge for Aīrlk, he was a responder to the superfluities of foreign countries, he arranged the realm of Irān, improved and fertilised the land of Irān, and made the country of Irān victorious over foreigners.

31. At another time it came to Aūzōbō, son of Tūmāsp, a descendant of Mānūšēhar the monarch of Irān; and, through that destiny and glory combined, the new-born came to mature activity and the proportions of a man during childhood, through agriculture; he disclosed his lamenting mother to the countries of Irān, he marched on to the destruction of foreigners, to drive out and make them outcast from the land of Irān; he also defeated the village-terrifier of the country of Irān, the wizard who frightened his father and fellow-immortals, Frangrāšiyāk of Tūr; and he developed and ferti-

---

1 See note 5 on preceding page.
2 Here spelt Nēresang and Mānūsēr. The former is the usual spiritual messenger of Aūharmazd; and for the lineage of the latter see Bd. XXXI, 9–14. It appears that the glorious destiny was preserved by the angel Nēryōsang for some generations, and he conveyed it to the grandfather of Mānūšēhar (see Chap. II, 70).
3 The three sons of Frēdūn, among whom he divided his dominions, with the usual result of triumvirates.
4 See Bd. XXXI, 23; XXXIV, 6.
5 See Yt. XIX, 56–64, 77, 82, 93, and Bd. XXXI, 14, 15, 18, 21, 22, 35; XXXIV, 6; where the Av. form Frangrasyan is further
lised the country of Irân, and increased the many streams and cultivated lands in the country of Irân.

32. At another time it came to Kerêşâspô the Sâmân, owing to the share of warriorship which is the second avocation of the religion, through allotment from the glory of Yim; and, through it, the serpent Srôbôvar which was swallowing horses and swallowing men, the golden-heeled demon Ganda-repô, and much other production of adversity by the demon and the fiend—the murderess of the creatures—were destroyed by him.

33. At another time it came to Kat-Kobâd, the progenitor of the Kayâns; through it he arranged the realm of Irân, he united the sovereignty with himself in the Kayân race, and he thereby occasioned much splendour and actions of advantage to the creatures.

34. And it came to Pâtakhsrôbô, son of Aîryêfshvâ, son of Tâz, who was king of the Arabs, through the mindfulness of the archangel Ashavahistô, and his enquiry about it from its own tribe—for the demon of greediness (âzô), with one similarly corrupted into Frâslyâv, as it is also hereafter in Chap. II, 68; Zs. XII, 3.

1 A famous hero whose exploits, like those of Hercules, have given birth to many legends; see S. B. E., vol. xviii, pp. 369–382.
3 Compare § 25.
5 See Yt. XIX, 71; Bd. XXXI, 24, 25, 28; XXXIV, 7.
4 Or Pâtâsrôbô, spelt Pâtsrôbô in Pahl. Vd. XX, 4 (Sp.).
5 Or Aîryêfshnîg; evidently the same as Virâfsang in Bd. XXXI, 6, which is spelt Avirafshanîg and Âirafshanîg in two MSS. of the Irânian Bundahîs. Hence we may conclude that Pâtakhsrôbô was a brother of Zâînîgâv, and a great-uncle of Dahâk; but how his daughters could have been married to the three sons of Frêdân, as stated in the Kitradâd Nask (see Dk. VIII, xiii, 9), is a chronological difficulty that throws doubt upon this identification.
6 The people of the primitive faith, who are supposed to have
destined, had rushed for the destruction of him who was very gentle to that tribe—as he had a full inclination for the ascendency of the portion whose guidance to the lofty priestly master was owing to the archangel Ashavahistô, just as the fish image of that other portion was for falling into the river; and it is declared that he came to the ceremonial of Zaratûst.

35. At another time it came to Kal-Arsh and his brothers, the descendants of Kobâd; through it they have been all-experienced and powerful, heedful and performing wonders; and the eldest brother of them, Kal-Üs, seized upon the sovereignty of the seven regions, and became very illustrious and full of glory. 36. At the same time it came to Aôshnar who became fully sagacious (pûr-zîr), owing to the glory of Yim, when he was in his mother's womb, and many wonders were taught by him to his mother, through speaking from the mother's womb; also at his birth he vanquished the maleficent spirit by uttering answers to the questions of the deadly Frûtîh the demon-worshipper. 37. He also attained to the chancellorship (farmâdârîh) of Kal-Üs, and became administrator (ráyînîdâr) in his realm of the seven regions; the frontier speech (vîmand-gôbîsnîh) was also explained and taught by him,

already practised most of the duties upheld by Zarathustra before his appearance as a reformer.

1 Indicating that the Arab subjects of the king had revolted, because he favoured those of the primitive faith who, no doubt, gained further favour by putting down the rebellion.

2 Or it may be 'fish priest,' as karapô, 'a heathen priest,' and kerpô, 'shape, image,' are written alike in Pahlavi letters.

3 See Yt. XIX, 71; Bd. XXXI, 25.

4 See Yt. XIII, 131; Dd. XLVIII, 33.
and much other learning of advantage to mankind
who are unaffected by the utterance of replies of
a foreigner; he also advised the Irânian country
with the best-instructed counsel.

38. And its coming to Kal-Slyâvakhsh the
illustrious, through the wondrous-formed Kangdez
being held by him for the retention of protection for
the much splendour and suitable glory of the religion,
from which the restoration of time, the re-arrange-
ment of the realm of Irân, and the reunion of power
and triumph with the religion of Aûharmazd are
manifest.

39. It came to Kal-Khûsrût, son of Slyâvakhsh,
and through it he smote and vanquished Frangrå-
styák of Tur, the wizard, and his fellow-miscreation
Kêrsêvazd of those of Vâk-gir, and many other
very evil devastators of the world; he also joined in
the destruction of that idol-temple which was on the
shore of Lake Kêkast, and demolished that fiendish-
ness which was awful. 40. On account of the
desirableness of means for the renovation of the
universe, he is also on a throne (nâmûkô), which is
assuredly selected by that destiny, at a secret place
where there is an immortal preserver for his body
until the renovation, through the will of the creator.

41. And it came from him, after Zarâtûtst of the
Spîtâmas came to the conference of the creator

---

1 See Yt. XIX, 71, 77; Bd. XXXI, 25; Byt. III, 25, 26.
2 See Yt. XIX, 74, 77, 93; Bd. XXXI, 25.
3 See § 31.
4 Brother of Frangråstyák, see Yt. XIX, 77; Bd. XXXI, 15.
5 Reading Vâk-giragânô, probably the inhabitants of the
Bakýr mountain, mentioned in Bd. XII, 2, 20 as a stronghold
of Frâsiyåv (= Frangråstyák).
6 See Bd. XVII, 7; Mkh. II, 95.
Aûharmazd, and accepted from the omniscient creator Aûharmazd unmixed freedom from pollution, the comprehensive and also recited acquaintance with the knowledge and work of priesthood, warrior-ship, husbandry, and artisanship, and the separate portions of the Mazda-worshipping revelation (dēnō) brought to king Kat-Vistāsp by command of the creator, illuminated by the great splendour in that supreme sovereign of the sacred beings, and propagated by the learned of the region, in the regions which are seven, through the good eloquence which is owing to the succession of creatures until the renovation of the universe. 42. And through its production by those who will be his sons, Aûshēdar, Aûshēdar-mâh, and Sôshâns¹, the renovation in the existence of the creatures of Aûharmazd is immortal; and a more remindful statement of its splendour, glory, and marvellousness is a statement that is written and found below².

43. And there have also been others before Zarātûst, the prophet (vakhsh var) of desired fame in the Mazda-worshipping religion; for it is declared that, at times, some came from the spiritual beings to him who was more of a leader, and mankind have become as captivated by the solicitation and interrogation of that affair, as now by the solicitation and interrogation of the religion; the necessity for that period is not now necessary, because all mankind

¹ The Pahlavi transcripts of the Avesta names, Ukhshyad-ereta, Ukhshyad-nemangh, and Saoshyâs, of the three apostles expected to revive and renovate the Parsi religion in successive millenniums. According to the imperfect chronology of the Bundahis, the millennium of Aushêdar-mâh has now nearly one-fourth elapsed.
² See Chap. XI, 7–11.
are made acquainted with the religion, and Zaratûst of the Spîtâmâs, whose guardian spirit is righteous, is to be reverenced.

44. Now, that which is declared in the world is written, about the splendour, glory, and marvellousness of the prophet of the Mazda-worshipping religion, the best of creations, whose guardian spirit is reverenced, Zaratûst of the Spîtâmâs; and ten chapters are published here, as to the information from the Avesta, and in benediction of the religion of Aûharmazd.

45. That of it which is before the birth of that glorious one from his mother in the present world.

46. That of it which is from the birth of that illustrious one onwards, till his coming to a conference with Aûharmazd.

47. That of it which is from the conference onwards, till his pre-eminence over prophecy in the world, and the acceptance of the religion by the exalted Kal-Vistâsp.

48. That of it which is onwards from that, till the departure (vîkhêzô) of that pure soul to the existence which is best.

49. That of it which is also successively after that, in the reign of the obedient king Kal-Vistâsp.

50. That of it which is after that, until the collapse (angâvisnô) of the sovereignty of Irân.

51. That of it which is also after that, until the end of the millennium of Zaratûst and the arrival of Aûshêdar.

52. That of it which is also after that, until the end of the millennium of Aûshêdar and the arrival of Aûshêdar-mâh.

---

1 Then follow the headings of these ten Chapters (II to XI).
53. That of it which is also after that, until the end of the millennium of Aûshédar-mâh and the arrival of Sôshâns.

54. And that of it from the arrival of the Triumphant Benefiter, until the wonder of the renovation and future existence; a statement of them each separately.

CHAPTER II.

1. About the marvellousness of the manifestations before the birth of that most auspicious of offsprings from his mother.

2. One marvel is this which is declared, that the creator passed on that glory of Zaratûst through the material existences of the creatures to Zaratûst; when the command arose from Aûhar-mazd, the coming of that glory from the spiritual existence to the worldly, and to the material substance (mâdiyâtô) of Zaratûst, is manifested as a great wonder to the multitude (val kâbedânô).

3. Just as revelation mentions it thus: 'Thereupon, when Aûhar-mazd had produced the material (dahîsnô) of Zaratûst, the glory then, in the

---

1 The MS. has patas for pes.
2 The contents of this chapter are thus mentioned in the summary of the Spend Nask (Dk. VIII, xiv, i in S.B.E., vol. xxxvii, p. 31):—'The Spend contains particulars about the origin and combination of the material existence, guardian spirit, and soul (or glory) of Zaratûst; how the creation of each one occurred in the spiritual existence, and in what mode it was produced for the worldly existence; how their connection with the parents arose, the coming of the parents together, the combination in the mother, and the birth from the mother; and whatever is on the same subject.'
3 The writer uses two Arabic words: mâdiyâtô-i 'halqô.'
presence of Aûharmazd, fled on towards the material of Zarathûst, on to that germ; from that germ it fled on, on to the light which is endless; from the light which is endless it fled on, on to that of the sun; from that of the sun it fled on, on to the moon; from that moon it fled on, on to those stars; from those stars it fled on, on to the fire which was in the house of Zôís; and from that fire it fled on, on to the wife of Frâhîmrvânâ-zôîs, when she brought forth that girl who became the mother of Zarathûst.'

4. Of that splendour, escaped at the same time into the earth and into the sky, the father-in-law's ignorance is declared, so that it is said by those in the village of the more instructed and invoking Zôís, as to the self-combustion which burns the fire, that fuel is not necessary for its use. 5. Then they went on to the governor (kê'dô), and he explained to them concerning that same (that is, he spoke to them) thus: 'The full glory of embodied existence

---

1 Perplexed by the repetitions, some copyist has evidently omitted this phrase by mistake.
2 Pahl. anagar, a transcript of Av. anaghra which is always translated by Pahl. asar, 'endless.' The 'endless light' is the abode of Aûharmazd, see Bd. I, 2.
3 Written in Pâzand.
4 Also written in Pâzand. In Bd. XXXII, 10, it is stated that 'the name of the father of the mother of Zarathûst was Frâhîmravâ' (or Fereâhîmrvânâ in the Irânian version); but very little reliance can be placed on such Pâzand readings of names originally written in Pahlavi.
5 Here written in Pahlavi letters which can also be read Zandîth. In the text, the two preceding adjectives, farâhkhtar va-khûn, might be read Farâkht-rûvânân as the beginning of the name. But, as it stands, the text implies that Zôîs, the father-in-law of his son Frâhîm-rvânâ's wife, was the master of the house, which is the usual oriental arrangement.
is the glory of life apart from the body, so that all diligence devoid of this is only movement.'

6. And it is declared that the demons, on account of their defeat by that glory in maintaining\(^1\) adversity for the girl, were bringing on to that district three armaments (hēnō), winter, the demon of pestilence, and oppressive enemies; and a suspicion was cast by them into the minds of those of the district, that this harm happened to the district owing to the witchcraft of this girl; so that those of the district quarreled dreadfully with the parents, as to the witchcraft of antagonism in the girl, and about putting her out from that district.

7. And the father of that girl spoke even these words to those of the district, with much reason, about the unjust assertion of witchcraft relative to the girl, that is: 'When this girl was brought forth among those of mine, her whole destiny (vakhsō) was afterwards set forth by that manifest radiance of fire, where it brought out radiance from all over her in the dark night. 8. When this girl sits in the interior of the house, wherein there is no fire, and in the chamber (sarlā) of fire they increase its intensity (būrso), it is lighter there, where and when this girl sits, than there where they increase the intensity of the fire; one is dazzled by the radiance from her body, and that of a wizard would not have been so glorious.'

9. Even then, owing to the influence (sārtinīsno) of the demons, and the Kavīg and Karap\(^2\) of the

---

\(^1\) Reading dārīh, but it may be gārīh for kārīh, 'producing.'

\(^2\) The Karaps were apparently idolatrous priests, especially those before the conversion of Vīstāsp by Zarathūst; one being called 'a wizard' in Chap. III, 5, 42–44, another 'unsanctified' in IV, 24,
district, they did not become satisfied; so the father ordered the girl to go to Padtragaērapō, the father of a family in the country (matā) of the Spītāmas, in the district (rūdāstāk) of Alāk; and the girl obeyed the command of her father. 10. That disturbance which the demons caused, with evil intention, for the expatriation of that girl, the sacred beings assiduously made the reason for the coming of the girl for marriage to Pūrūshāspō, the father of Zaratūst, through her father sending the girl to the dwelling of Padtragataraśpō, the father of Pūrūshāspō.

11. One marvel is this which is declared, that when that girl, in going to that family, stood on the loftiest place in the country of the Spītāmas, and it is surveyed by her, a great wonder is manifested to the girl, just as revelation mentions: 'It is their

a third is 'deadly' in IV, 67, and a demon himself is a Karap in IV, 61, and has Karaps under his control in II, 45. The following Karaps are named in the time of Zaratūst:—Dūrāsrōbō mentioned in Chap. III, 4–41; Brādrōk-rēsh in III, 20–34, who is called a Tūrānian in III, 28; Vaēdvōist in IV, 21–24; and Zāk in IV, 67. Some others are named by other writers. The Kavīgs, Kais, or Kīgs are mentioned with the Karaps in Chaps. II, 9; III, 50; IV, 2, 6, 14, 64, 67; VIII, 26, 40, as equally objectionable, but their avocation as officials is not defined. Both classes seem to have held official rank, but whether their titles were tribal or official is uncertain. The Avesta calls them Karapan and Kavi; the latter word being also the royal title of the Kayān dynasty, of which Vistāsp was a member. Compare Zs. XV, 1–4; XXIII, 8.

1 So also in §§ 13, 70. In Bd. XXXII, I, 2, the two old MSS. of the Irānian Bundahīs have Padtarāsp thrice and Pīrārāsp once; K 20 has Spītarasp and Paitiresp; K 20 b has Padirtarašpō and Paitirispō; and M 6 has Padirtarāsp and Paitiresp. Zs. XIII, 6, has Purtarāspō.

2 One of the marvellous manifestations mentioned in § 1.

3 Probably we should read: ’It is the voice of those sacred beings’ who are mentioned in § 10. As the word yas ān, ’sacred beings,’ is exactly similar, in Pahlavi, to shān (in vaśdān, ’their’
voice is carried away to her from them; "do thou proceed to that village which is theirs; it is very depressed in height and very wide in breadth, in which he who is living and the cattle mostly walk together; besides, for thy assistance that village is divinely fashioned and compassionate." 12. Thereupon that damsel stopped, and also fully observed that their recital seems to be for the conveyance of this statement, that my action should be such as was ordered me by my father also. 13. Then that damsel thoroughly washed her hands, and proceeded from them to that village which was Padîragtarâspô's, and the glory came to Pôrûshâspô, the son of Padîragtarâspô.

14. One marvel is this which is declared, that the creator Arûharmazd passed on the guardian spirit (fravâhâr) of Zaratûst, to the parents of Zaratûst, through (le-kâdöân) Hôm 1, by a marvel produced by cultivation. 15. Again, too, revelation says that, when the separation (burînö) of the third millennium occurred, at the end of the 3,000 years of spiritual existence without a destroyer, (after the creatures were in spiritual existence, and before the arrival of the fiend); then the archangels framed Zaratûst together, and they seated the guardian spirit within, having a mouth, having a tongue, and the proclaimer of the celestial mansions.

or 'those'), a copyist would be liable to the blunder of leaving out the final word in writing valdshân yasadân. Or the original writer himself may not have quoted enough of the text he was reading, to make his meaning clear.

1 A sacred and mythical tree, described in Bd. XVIII, 1–3, and often personified as a sacred being. It is now represented, in Parsi ceremonies, by twigs of a particular plant brought from Persia.
16. Then the three millenniums of Zaratúst were the number manifest to them through observation by the eye, and it seemed that he became just like an archangel through bodily contact with (ham-kerpith) the archangels. 17. And when the separation of the third millennium occurred, after the framing of Zaratúst together, and before the conveying of Zaratúst down to the worldly state, at the end of the 3,000 years of worldly existence with a destroyer, then Aûharmazd argued with Vohûmanô and Ashavahistô thus: 'Is his mother beheld by you, so that we may produce Zaratúst?'

18. And Ashavahistô spoke in reply thus: 'Thou art aware even of that, O propitious one! about the Zaratúst we shall produce, and thou and we have produced, thou knowest, O Aûharmazd! and to us who are the other archangels do thou announce the place, because its appearance thou knowest, thou propitious spirit Aûharmazd!'

19. Then Aûharmazd argued with Vohûmanô and the reminding by Ardavahistô, Shatraver, Spendarmad, Khûrdad, and Amûrdad, saying:

---

1 Meaning the period of Zaratúst's existence merely as a guardian spirit, the first period of the destroyer (§ 17) who then remained powerless in confusion (see Bd. I, 22).

2 Or 'sheltering with' (ham-karftih).

3 The personifications of the Avesta phrases for 'good thought' and 'perfect rectitude,' who are two of the seven that hold a superior position among sacred beings, somewhat similar to that of archangels. When a Parsi speaks of Aûharmazd as the first of the Ameshaspendes, or archangels, he does not put him on an equality with the rest, any more than we put a commander-in-chief on an equality with his troops when we call him a good soldier.

4 Another pronunciation of Ashavahistô.

5 These last four archangels are personifications of the Avesta
CHAPTER II, 16–24.

'The conveying of Zaratūst down does not seem to be for me, because, having a mouth and having a tongue, he will be a proclaimer to the world of embodied beings. 20. If we convey Zaratūst down on to the world of embodied beings, having a mouth and having a tongue, as a proclaimer of the celestial mansion, this is evident: they will say, concerning the origin of him who is my righteous man, that we frame him together with the water, with the land, with the plants, and with the animals. 21. Therefore we will carry off there, to the village of Pûrūshāspō, him whom they will call Zaratūst of good lineage of both natures, both of Nēryōsang who is of the archangels, and of Yim who is of mankind.'

22. Then the archangels framed together a stem of Hōm the height of a man, excellent in colour, and juicy where fresh; also to carry off the guardian spirit of Zaratūst to that stem of theirs, the archangels made it go forth thither from that endless light, and gave it up there also to the instinctive intellect (āsnō vīr). 23. Likewise their carrying off was manifest around, and a wall was openly displayed round them, but a restless one; the Hōm was constantly provided with a mouth, where it was suitable, and sap constantly oozed from the Hōm where it was moist.

24. And when thirty years of the 3,000 years of phrases for 'desirable dominion, bountiful devotion, completeness or health, and immortality.'

1 That is, as an inferior and irresponsible being.
2 Here spelt Nērōsang; see Chaps. I, 29; II, 70; and Zs. XIII, 6, for this angel's influence on the royal race.
3 The MS. has 330 years, but the time intended is evidently that shortly before the birth of Zaratūst, and this third 3,000 years
well-disturbed worldly existence remained, Vohûmanô and Ashavahistô then associated their pre-eminence together, and turned off into the embodied existence; there they came up to where two birds had settled in quest of progeny, and seven years before the serpents devoured the inexperienced progeny. 25. For their own designs, Vohûmanô and Ashavahistô went on, and those birds consulted them thus: 'We have to offer homage, and our want is that Hôm.'

26. The circumstances of those associated together in pre-eminence and the request of these for that Hôm were a double marvel; Vohûmanô seized one of those birds by both legs, and the other by one; he also brought them that Hôm, and gave it up to them there, on that tree within their nest. 27. And they uncovered above the serpents, that have gone up to the progeny of the birds; then that guardian spirit of Zaratûst started up, and the serpents on the tree rushed also from them away towards the demons; but that guardian spirit of Zaratûst smote them on the jaws, and the serpents fell down and expired, which events have also occurred among them till now, having been requisite as regards a depriver of life (gân-gîr) and any one of that species. 28. And that Hôm was connected with that tree; and on the summit of that tree, there

ended either when Vîstâspô accepted the religion, in Zaratûst's forty-second year, or when Zaratûst received the religion in his thirtieth year, but this earlier date is the more likely.

1 This word, hû-aîbigadîg, is written in Pahlavi precisely like an-aîbigadîg, 'without a destroyer,' though its meaning is the reverse, which is an unexpected cause of perplexity to a cursory reader.
where the nest of the birds was, it grew constantly fresh and golden-coloured. 1.

29. After the coming of her who bore Zarâtûst, to Pûrûshâspô for marriage, Vohûmanô and Arda-vahistô, thus associated together in their pre-eminence, came up there to Pûrûshâspô in the cattle-pasture of the Spîtâmas, and their thoughts were confined to that Hôm brought by them. 30. Then Pûrûshâspô walked forth, with spiritual desire, up to the water of the Dâlt 2, because the requirement of the spirits is the spiritual knowledge 3 that spirits are ever-beneficial; and that Hôm was also seen by him, when it had grown on that tree, on the inside of the nest. 31. Then Pûrûshâspô thought thus: 'It is for me, really (mâdâm-īk-âm) to proceed and, even as there is no reaching by me up to that Hôm, that tree must be cut down, for apart from that, O Hôm of Aûharmazd! thou seemest fresh, so that the benefit of something from thee will be advantageous.'

32. Then Pûrûshâspô walked on and washed their clothes acquiescently (pâtâstg), and here a great wonder was manifest to Pûrûshâspô. 33. About this it says that, all the while that Pûrûshâspô washed their clothes, Vohûmanô then proceeded from the uppermost third of the tree unto the middle of it, whereon it was the desire of Pûrû-

1 Or it may be ‘verdant.’

2 Av. Dâitya, a mythic river in Afrân-vâg (Bd. XX, 13); a favourite place for religious rites, see Yt. V, 17, 104, 112; IX, 25, 29; XVII, 45, 49, 61. Or it may be merely mâyâ-ī shêd, ‘brilliant water.’

3 Reading mâînôg-dânînîh, but the MS. has mâînôg dênô-dânînîh which might be translated ‘spiritual knowledge of religion,’ though the latter Pahlavi word is unusual.
shāspō to be conveyed. 34. Then Pūrushāspō, having washed the clothes, walked up to it and, thereupon gathering up the whole of that Hōm, all of it was then also appropriated by him through assistance like that of that archangel, just as what thou offerest for the food-sustenance of a friend's son of two years or three years of age; and it seemed to him that archangel's joyful payment.

35. Carrying off their Hōm, Pūrushāspō spoke of it to his noble (mas) wife thus: 'So thou, O Dūk-dāub! shouldst keep their Hōm in custody, all the while that their Hōm fulfils duty and routine.'

36. One marvel is this which is declared, that the coming of the nature (gōhar) of the body of Zaratūst, through water and vegetation, to the bodies of his parents, is manifested as a great wonder of the creator to the multitude. 37. As revelation mentions it thus: 'Thereupon, when Aūharmaēzd had produced the material (dahisnō) of Zaratūst, the nature of his body then, in the presence of Aūharmaēzd, fled on towards the material of Zaratūst.'

38. About Khūrdad and Mūrdad² bringing the cloud-water down in a compassionate manner ever anew, drop by drop, and completely warm, for the delight of sheep and men, and—with as much seed as the roving of two rampant bulls would thereby cast upon the plants which have grown, all of every species—they are casting it upon those other plants at that time, even upon the dry ones; and the

¹ Compare § 3.
² These two archangels have special charge of water and vegetation (see Sls. XV, 25-29), and here they are represented as acting in a manner usually ascribed to Tistar, the Dog-star.
nature of Zaratûst came from that water to those plants.

39. One marvel is this which is declared, that, in order that the nature of Zaratûst shall come unto his parents, after the mounting of the archangels Pôrûshâspô drives six white cows, with yellow ears, up to those plants. 40. And here is manifested a great wonder, such as revelation mentions thus: Two of those cows, unimpregnated, had become full of milk, and the nature of Zaratûst came from the plants to those cows, and is mingled with the cows' milk; it is owing thereto that Pôrûshâspô drove those cows back. 41. And Pôrûshâspô spoke to Dûkdûb thus: 'O Dûkdûb! in two of those cows, which are unimpregnated and have not calved, milk has appeared; do thou milk those cows, which are the splendour and glory of the cows and of any embodied existence whatever.' 42. And Dûkdûb arose and, taking that pail of hers which had a fourfold capacity, she also milked from them the milk which was in them, and a great part of what they gave up to her she had to throw away; and the nature of Zaratûst was in that milk.

43. One marvel is this which is manifested in the struggle of the adversary for concealing and spoiling that milk, just as revelation mentions thus: Thereupon, at that time, the demons formed themselves into an assembly, and the demon of demons growled thus: 'You demons become quite unobservant: that food is really supplied fresh, so that the formation is settled which will extend as far as to that

---

1 Reading akhar instead of adên, 'then.'

2 In some places the singular number is used, in others the plural.
man who will be the righteous Zaratūst; which of you will undertake his destruction, all the while that he exists for mankind, so as to make him more contemptibly impotent?’ 44. Kêshmak¹, astute in evil, growled thus: ‘I will undertake his destruction.’ 45. Astute in evil, he rushed away with thrice fifty of the demons who are Karaps of Kêshmak; and that village was partly uprooted and partly destroyed² by him, fellow-workers were ruined, and the number of fellow-eaters of broken victuals, attending the great, was not broken up, among whom was he that had repelled his authority.

46. It is declared that, afterwards, Pôrûshâspô asked again for that Hôm from Dûkďâûb, and he pounded it, and with that cows' milk³, into which the nature of the body of Zaratūst had come, he here mingled the guardian spirit of Zaratūst, and the nature of the body came at once into union with it.

47. One marvel is this which is declared, that Pôrûshâspô and Dûkďâûb drank up that Hôm and milk, when they were mingled together and announced to Aûharmaezd; and here occurred a combination of the glory, guardian spirit, and bodily nature of Zaratūst into a manchild. 48. And a great wonder is manifested to both of them, through that which revelation mentions thus: Thereupon, both have embraced the first time⁴ with desire

¹ The whirlwind demon; see Bd. XXVIII, 24. Compare Chap. IV, 61.
² The usual effects of a hurricane.
³ The mingling of milk with pounded Hôm still constitutes part of the Parsi ceremonial; see Haug’s Essays, 3rd ed., p. 405.
⁴ Pahl. ‘koľâ 2 lâlâ fratûm vaptiûdîh havand.’
CHAPTER II, 44–53.

for a son, and the demons shouted out unto them, in the villainous speech of sinfulness, thus: ‘Why shouldst thou act like this, vile¹ Pôrûshâspô?’ whereupon they started up like people who are ashamed. 49. A second time they have embraced, and the demons shouted out unto them, in villainous speech; whereupon they started up like people who are ashamed. 50. A third time they have embraced thus, with desire for a son; and the demons shouted out unto them, in villainous speech; whereupon they started up like people who are ashamed. 51. And they spoke with one another about it, and continued at this duty, and accomplished it², saying: ‘We will not so stop without accomplishing something, not even though both Râk and Nôdar should arrive here together.’ 52. Then that manchild who was the righteous Zaratûst became complete, and here below there came together the nature of the body, the guardian spirit, and the glory of Zaratûst in the womb of his mother.

53. One marvel is this which is declared, that, after the combination of Zaratûst in the womb of his mother, the demons strove anew wonderfully

¹ Reading anâg, but it may be intended for hanâ=aê, ‘O.’
² Pahl. ‘aôshân madam hâr saûtô, aêghshânô pavan akôsh frâz vaôdûntô.’
³ Evidently an old proverb, implying a fixed determination whatever catastrophe may happen, even if one’s ancestors of the eleventh or twelfth generation shall appear. Nôdar (Av. Naotara) was a son of King Mânûšîhîar (Bd. XXXI, 13, 23), and Râk was a nephew of Nôdar (Bd. XXXI, 31), doubtless the same as Ragan (Bd. XXXII, 1; XXXIII, 3) which seems to be a Pâzand mis-reading of Atriôkô, or Èriôkô, see Zs. XVI, 11–13, and compare the genealogies in Chap. II, 70 and Zs. XIII, 6. The proverb is used again in Chap. III, 19, and the names are mentioned in III, 39.
to cause the death of Zaratûst in his mother's womb, and she who bore him was rendered sickly by them through the sharpest of sharp and afflictive pain, until she wished to ask the wizard physicians for a desirable remedy. 54. And here is manifested a great wonder, just as revelation says: 'It is then a voice of theirs is carried away there to her from the higher region, from Aûharmazd and from the archangels, thus: "Thou damsel who goest! do not proceed thither, because anything of theirs is destruction through wizard medical treatment; for healthfulness wash thy hands thoroughly, and those hands shall take firewood, and upon it thou shalt offer meat for the sake of the infant, thou shalt offer up cows' butter to the fire for his sake; thou shalt likewise heat it at the fire for his sake, and shalt quaff (pâlmêš) it off at the proper time for his sake, and thou wilt become well."' 55. Then at once that damsel washed her hands thoroughly, and she did just as she had heard, and became well 1.

56. One marvel is this which is manifested to the multitude when three days remained to his coming 2 forth; in the manner of the sun, at the approach of its uprising, when its first advancing twilight is diffused, his body is then announced as revelation says: 'It is then when in those last three nights during which Zaratûst was in the womb, where he still subsisted three days till afterwards born, that the village of Pûrûshâspô became all luminous. 57. Then spoke the horse-owners and cattle-owners of the Spitâmas, in running away, thus: "It is requisite to be forgiven 3; the village of Pûrûshâspô, on which

---

1 Compare Zs. XIV, 2–5.  
2 Literally 'going.'  
3 Apparently an appeal for mercy.
that fire\(^1\) is in every crevice, is disturbed by confusion\(^2\)." 58. Then, on running together again, they said: "It is not fully forgiven for the village of Pûrûshâspô; fire is on it in every crevice and it is disturbed by confusion; unto him is born, at his house, a brilliant manchild."

59. This, too, is one of the wonders, when the report of the marvellousness of the birth of that manchild and of his great glory, is due to statements of Yim and also others, brilliant in carrying on the destiny which had entered them from the sacred beings. 60. Wherein Yim spoke to the demons thus: 'Here below the pure and righteous Zarâtûst will be born, who will produce for you who are demons that absence of intercession which is prepared for you (that is, he will produce for you a thoroughly-harassed actual inactivity, an absence of intercession so that you are not able to pray on your own account, and no one prays for you).'

61. It is declared that the report about the birth of Zarâtûst, and concerning his prophesying, is explained (avazandt-hastô) only by the illustrious, such as Yim and Frêdûn and many learned people; but the sacred beings are also heard through the tongues of the animals scattered in the world, in order that even that witness shall arise as regards his prophesying. 62. Just like that which is declared, that in the reign of Kat-ûs there was an ox, and a splendour had come to his body from the sacred beings; and whenever a dispute as to the frontier arose between Irân and Tûrân, that ox was brought, and the boundary between Irân and Tûrân

\(^1\) Assuming that nîrûm stands for nîrû, a variant of nûrû.
\(^2\) Or 'terrified with fear.'
was truly shown by him. 63. And because, when an Irânian had to seek a decision as to a Tûrânian in a dispute and lies occurred, the Tûrânians were constantly convicted through the showing of the boundary by the ox, and happened to be defeated by the Irânians—and besides that, their envy also arose as to Kat-Ús, even of his ownership—therefore, on account of his possession of that wonder, the Tûrânians proceeded about the smiting and destruction of that ox, and through their sorcery and witchcraft the mind of Kat-Ús was disturbed about that ox, and he went to a warrior, whose name was Srltô ¹, and ordered him to kill that ox; so that man came to smite the ox. 64. And here is manifested a wonder of importance by that ox, such as revelation mentions thus: 'To him spoke the ox, in grave words, thus: 'Thou shouldst not murder me, O Srltô! thou seventh ² of those of this race; you will atone for this malice when Zaratûst, the most desirous of righteousness among the existences, arrives and proclaims thy bad action in revelation; and the distress in thy soul becomes such as is declared by that passage where it says: 'As death occurs to him, that of Vadak ³ and the like occurs.'''

65. It is declared that that man, when this wonder was thus seen by him proceeding from the ox, did not kill it, but went back to Kat-Ús and told him what he had seen. 66. Kat-Ús then still, on account of the amazing deceitfulness of the demons and wizards, ordered the same man to smite that ox;

¹ This legend is also told, with further details, in Zs. XII, 7–25.
² Compare Zs. XII, 10.
³ The mother of Dahâk, who first committed adultery in an aggravated form (see Dd. LXXII, 5; LXXVIII. 2).
and that man proceeded also again to the ox, and though it was carrying on still much of that talk, he did not lend an ear to it, but killed it.

67. Regarding the sole-created ox, too, it is declared that, on meeting its destruction by the evil spirit, it bellowed thus: 'Though thou thinkest it as to us, O evil spirit, astute in evil! that thou art in every way a winner by destruction, it is not to our destruction thou art even then an attainer in every way (that is, it is not possible for thee so to annihilate that we shall not arise again); even now I proclaim that that man, Zaratûst of the Spûtâmas, will arrive in that last revolution, who will produce distress for the demons, the assistants of the demon, and also the wicked who are bipeds.'

68. Likewise the marvellousness of Zaratûst's defeat of the demons, owing to his glory and by means of his sagacity, even before he had come into the world by birth; when Frâslyâv the wizard is amazingly distressed through seeking that glory of his by desire of the demons, just as revelation mentions thus: 'Thereupon Frâslyâv, the very powerful Tûrânian, rushed away, O Zaratûst of the Spûtâmas! to the wide-formed ocean a first, a second, and a third time; and he wished to obtain that glory which is specially for those of the countries of Irân, for the born and the unborn, and which is for the righteous one; but he did not attain to that glory.'

1 Pahl. tûrâ-î aēvak-dâdō, the primeval ox, from whom the animals and plants have all descended (see Bd. III, 14, 17, 18; IV, 1–5; X, 1; XIV, 1–3; XXVII, 2).
2 The same person as Frangrâslyâk of Chaps. I, 31, 39; II, 69; XI, 3.
3 In Yt. XIX, 56–62; V, 42.

[47]
69. And this, too, is mentioned, that to all the seven regions the villain Frangrášlyák rushed away, and the glory of Zaratúst was sought by him.

70. Here is an enumeration of the worthy lineage of Zaratúst:—Zaratúst was son of Pórúsháspó, son of Padirágtaráspó, of Urugadhasp*, of Haékadaspó*, of Khákhshnuš*, of Paétrasp*, of Aregadharsn*, of Hardhar*, of Spítám, of Vaédist*, of Náyázem*, of Aтриk*, of Dúrásróbó, of Mánúškíhar monarch of Irán, of Mánúš-khúrnar, of Mánúš-khúrnák whom Néórósang implanted in Vizak*, daughter of Air-yak*, son of Thritak*, of Bitak*, of Frazúšak*, of Zúšak*, of Fragúzak*, of Gúzak*, daughter of Aтриk, son of Frédún monarch of Khvániras, son of Pûr-tórá the Áspítgán, of Névak-tórá the Áspítgán, of Sóg-tórá the Áspítgán, of Bór-tórá the Áspítgán, of Kardár-tórá the Áspítgán, of Styah-tórá the Áspítgán, of Spétó-tórá the Áspítgán, of Gésar-tórá the Áspítgán, of Ramak-tórá the Áspítgán, of Vanófrávis the Áspítgán, of Yím monarch of the seven

1 See Yt. XIX, 82.
2 Compare the genealogy in Zs. XIII, 6; Bd. XXXII, 1, and that quoted there from the Vigfrórkard-i Dênig. The names marked here with an asterisk are written in Pázand, or partly so.
3 Ayazem, of Ragan, in Bd. The latter name is Ragîn in Vg., but Érîštö in Zs. XVI, 13.
4 This wants confirmation, but varzíd bén can hardly be a name as assumed in Vg., where it is altered to Varzíd-dén.
5 The g is of the old form like s.
6 The G is omitted, but see Bd. XXXI, 14.
7 Or Kútál-tórá; this generation is omitted both in the Vigfrókard and Bundahis.
8 This generation is interlined in the MS. of the Dínkard. The Bundahis, XXXI, 7, also omits Névak-tórá; and the Vigfrókard omits Bór-tórá, Styah-tórá, Spétó-tórá, and Ramak-tórá. The termination tórá is merely the Žváris equivalent of gau. In Iránian MSS. the Pahlavi ñ and ù are practically written alike in most cases.
regions, son of Vitvanga, of Ayang, had*, of Anang, had*, son of Hôshâng the Pêsdâdiân monarch of the seven regions, son of Fravâk, of Styâmak, of Masyâ, of Gâyômard the first man.

Chapter III.

1. About the marvellousness which is manifested after the birth of that most auspicious of offsprings from his mother, till his coming to a conference with Aûharmazd ¹.

2. One marvel is this which is declared, that on being born he laughed outright; the seven midwives (dayah) ², who sat around him, were quite frightened thereby; and those terrified ones spoke thus: ‘What was this, on account of grandeur or contempt? when, like the worthy man whose pleasure is due to activity, the man’s child so laughs at the birth owing to him.’ 3. Pôrûshâspô also spoke thus: ‘Bring out this manchild to the sheepskin clothing which is soft; the affair was owing to thee, owing to the virtue of thee who art Dûkdûb, that the advent of glory and coming of radiance to this manchild was openly seen when he laughed outright at his birth.’

4. One marvel is this which is declared, that Pôrûshâspô afterwards went to a Karap, Dûrâsrôbô by name, who was the most renowned for witchcraft in that district, and informed him of the birth of Zarâtûst and the wonders which were manifested

¹ The contents of this chapter refer chiefly to ‘the rearing of Zarâtûst.’ For the other matters mentioned in Dk. VIII, xiv, 2, see Zs. XIV, 6–12.

² Sls. X, 15 prescribes ‘ten women.’ Zs. XIV, 13 mentions ‘seven wizards (yatûkô).’
therein; he also brought him to the house for the purpose of seeing Zaratuštr. 5. That wizard, owing to the coming on of vexation at that glory in Zaratuštr, desired with evil intention a really mischievous deceit (shēdō), to compress with his paws (gōv) the tender head of that full-glorious child, to cause his death. 6. And here is manifested a great wonder to the multitude, just as revelation mentions it thus: 'Thereupon the paws of that deadly one (mar) are driven back to behind him (that is, reversed (aũškũn) backwards); nor ever after did that deadly one become again a devourer of meat with his jaws by means of those paws.' 7. That Karap also, besides that, examined the marks and evil specks on Zaratuštr; and Pōrushaspō, in awful alarm as to the dispersion of the emanation of splendour (āp-dihth) from Zaratuštr, hastened (sārīnād) to make Zaratuštr invisible.

8. One marvel is this which is declared, that the Karap Dūrāsrōbō, through witchcraft, cast such fear of Zaratuštr into the mind of Pōrushaspō, and so injured the mind of Pōrushaspō, that, owing only to that very fear as regards himself, he asked the Karap for the death of Zaratuštr. 9. Also about the mode of putting to death for which Pōrushaspō, owing to the distraction (vishōpisnō) by which he becomes helpless, asks Dūrāsrōbō; and that Karap is bringing much firewood together, and to shelter (nipā-yidanō) Zaratuštr amid that firewood, to stir up a fire, and to make it blaze with the wood were the remedy he arranged (vīrāstō); and Pōrushaspō acted accord-

1 Compare Zs. XVI, 1–3.
2 Pahl. madam-mđ, where mđ=ki, 'what? whatever,' is used for -i{k, 'also,' as often happens.
CHAPTER III, 5-12.

ingly. 10. And here is manifested a great wonder to the multitude, just as revelation mentions it thus: ‘Neither was fire among the vegetation on a tree (that is, it does not come on), nor has fire seized upon plants; but on rushed, at dawn¹, that son-loving mother, and she came forth to him intelligently (hûshûmûnd), and seizing him, thereby removed him with her right hand aloft as he sat².’

11. One marvel is this which is declared, that after Pûrushâspō spoke to the Karap Dûrâsrûbô about the fire not burning the child, he asked anew about putting Zarâtûst to death; then to ensconce (nipâyîdanô) Zarâtûst in a narrow path, and desparcht many oxen on that path, so that he may be trampled on by the feet of the oxen at night, were the remedy that Karap proposed (girâyîdô) to Pûrushâspô; and Pûrushâspô acted accordingly. 12. Here also is manifested a wonder of grandeur to the multitude, just as revelation mentions: ‘It was that ox walked on which had become sorrowful (that is, its sorrow was great owing to another ox) and it was aged and walked before that one (before the leading ox), it also hastened before that other (that is, it stood up before Zarâtûst), and he was greatly pitied by it for the whole day, so that it kept away the oxen from him, being the first that walked thither and the last that walked away; on rushed at dawn that son-loving mother, forth to him she came intelli-

¹ Reading pavan aûsh, but it might be pavan hûsh, ‘with sense,’ here and in § 14, where there is nothing to indicate that the child was out all night, but in §§ 12, 18 he is evidently rescued the next morning.

² Pahl. ‘madam pavan aûstakô.’ Compare Zs. XVI, 7.
gently, and seizing him, thereby removed him with her right hand aloft as he sat."  

13. One marvel is this which is declared, that Pōrūshāspō came a second time (Idanō) to that Karap also about the oxen not trampling on Zarātūst, and asked anew about the mode of putting Zarātūst to death; then to ensconce Zarātūst near a drinking-pool (āvkhūr) in the domain (gēhān), and to drive many horses to that drinking-pool, so that he may be trampled on by the hoofs of the horses, were the substituted remedy that Karap proposed; and Pōrūshāspō acted accordingly. 14. And here is manifested a great wonder to the multitude, just as revelation mentions thus: 'That horse walked on which had become fully hoofed (that is, its hoofs were very thick); it is yellow-eared and it walks before that one (before the leading horse), and it hastens before that other (that is, it stood up before Zarātūst), and was the first that walked on thither, and the last that walked away; on rushed at dawn that son-loving mother, forth to him she came intelligently, and seizing him, thereby removed him with her right hand aloft as he sat.'  

15. One marvel is this which is declared, that Pōrūshāspō came again to that Karap, spoke also about the horses, too, not trampling on Zarātūst, and asked anew as to what may be the mode of putting

---

1 Compare Zs. XVI, 5.
2 Possibly 'supplementary' or 'gratuitous.' The word is nīrmatō which, as a noun, means the gratuity or honorarium paid to a priest for acting as a substitute for another. Its etymology is obscure, unless it be an abbreviation of nīrūmandī, 'strength,' used in the legal sense of 'refresher.'
3 Compare Zs. XVI, 6.
Zaratūst to death; then to have Zaratūst carried off into the den (sūrāk) where a wolf's cubs (hūnūskān) are slaughtered, so that when the wolf arrives and sees the slaughtered cubs, she will wrathfully growl and mangle Zaratūst in revenge for those cubs, was the remedy that Karap proposed; and Pūrushāspō acted accordingly. 16. And here is manifested a great wonder to the multitude, just as revelation mentions: 'It is when that wolf came on, several Yūgyāsts¹, towards Zaratūst, the wolf was struck dumb by the assistance of the sacred beings, so that its mouth was down at the cubs, one with the other.'

17. One marvel is this which is declared, that Srōsh² the righteous and Vohūmanō proceeded to him, and a woolly (kūrūsak) sheep was brought by them unto him; the nurses (dāyagān)³ also were terrified, apart from him, the whole night. 18. Then on rushed at dawn that son-loving mother, forwards from the position of that woolly sheep she walked, and she, the mistress of the domain (zan-ī gēhān), spoke thus: 'Thou runnest on violently (ātayūtō) in excess;' for she considered in this way, that 'the wolf is so much better to that son than thou art good to me, when I shall show his bone or blood in thy sight.' 19. Forwards to him has she come

¹ The Yūgyāst is a distance of sixteen Roman miles of a thousand paces each (see Dk. VIII, xx, 19, note). But the writer of the scripture here quoted could have had no idea of the distance he was mentioning.
² A sacred being who personifies 'obedience,' and is a special protector of man, particularly at night.
³ It may also be read dehīgān, 'the country-folk.'
⁴ Or 'she would be.'
⁵ Or 'they show my.'
⁶ This seems to be a bitter reproach addressed to her husband; but the ambiguity of the Pahlavi makes its exact meaning rather uncertain.
intelligently and, seizing him, she thereby removed him, through the grace (dahisnō) of the sacred beings, aloft as he sat; and she, the mistress of the domain, spoke thus: 'I shall not give thee up again, my son, not even though both Râk and Noðar should arrive here together.'

20. And it is declared that, afterwards, the Karap Dûrâsróbô, with a malicious disciple, came to the same district and noticed about the advancement of Zarâtûst; and they saw no means for injuring or putting him to death, but his condition (mindavam) was a marvel as full of vigour as this which is declared, that Brâdrôk-rêsh, the Karap, growled thus:

—21. 'Then I, who am the most far-seeing of the people in that district of ours as to witchcraft, see upon their district that well-directing (that is, he understands good commands) produce of development (that is, the increase which continually becomes more, which has come and which will arrive), with good flocks (that is, he understands to keep good sheep), with good herds (that is, he understands to keep a herd which is better than another's), the well-exerting (that is, he understands to do work which is better than another's), well-fighting (that is, he understands to do battle well), and perfectly liberal (that is, he understands to exercise beneficial liberality) bantling (hûnûskô) of Pôrûshâspô, in the three nights while he was begotten out of

---


2 The Pahlavi version of an Avesta text, here translated, is a fair specimen of the complication produced by appending a gloss to every epithet. It is useful as a combination of translation and lexicon, but it is apt to be perplexing, unless all the glosses are carefully omitted by the reader who can dispense with a lexicon.
his parents. 22. Unto him will Vohûmanô come in the embodied world (that is, Vohûmanô will come unto Zaratûst), and conducting him unto a conference, his good religion will extend into the seven regions of the earth; and so I shall not even let him produce in his mind (that is, he will not know) where and how I shall murder him; and a token of this matter, that one speaks truly, is this, that I state it beforehand, promptly after the full hearing of the statement of the matter, when you heard this statement.'

23. Pûrushâspô advanced, conveyed in a four-in-hand chariot; then, on hearing that statement, and when they had heard that statement, Pûrushâspô started forth, conveyed in that four-in-hand chariot. 24. And Pûrushâspô spoke to Brâdrôk-rêsh, the Karap, thus: 'Brâdrôk-rêsh, thou Karap! whatever men they shall behold, cry out when at birth; even the offspring of that secluded person they behold in death, cry out when at birth; but what was that which they beheld at the birth of my son? 25. When at birth he laughed outright; was that also beheld in thy son, when at birth did he laugh outright? 26. When Vohûmanô comes unto him, into this embodied existence, it is also said by him on his return: "O Pûrushâspô! where is thy servant?" So, O Karap! concerning him who is my son, it is beheld that he was seen sagaciously by thee.'

For restoring the original Avesta, the Pahlavi translation, without the glosses, is usually the best guide.

1 Pahl. 4-ayûgissû râê (Av. kathruyukhta and ratha).
2 This seems to be the meaning of Pahl. ‘zag-tk tanô armêstô-dahîhîn pavan frûs khadîtund margth, amat pavan zerkhûnînsû, barâ behkûnd.’
3 Pahl. ‘Pûrushâspô! aêghat bandakô?’
27. And when Puruśāspō enquired of him thus: 'What was the matter with thee when, through bringing thee unto that son of mine, he was thereby offered; and thou lookedst long up away from him in height, and thou lookedst long down away from him in depth, and thou lookedst long out away from him in different directions?' 28. The Tûrânian, Brādrôk-rēsh the Karap, spoke in reply thus: 'When through bringing me unto that son was thy offering of him, and I looked long up away from him in height, then the radiance and glory out of him kept together up to the sun, and through him I have accompanied them on the boundary of its radiance and glory; so that I saw this, that mankind through speaking to the soul may attain to the firmament of the sun; but this, namely, how the routine (dâdistânō) is in the supreme heaven, was not seen by me. 29. When through bringing me unto that son of thine was thy offering of him, and I looked long down in depth away from thy offering of him, then the radiance and glory out of him kept together unto the sky which is below this earth, and through him to the boundary of its radiance and glory; but this, namely, how the routine is in that sky, was not seen by me. 30. And when through bringing me unto that son of thine was thy offering of him, and I looked long out away from him in different directions, then the radiance and glory from him kept together for adorning this earth, and

---

1 The first five words of § 28 are here inserted in the MS., so as to combine the two sentences in a perplexing manner.
2 The MS. has afat for afam by mistake.
3 Or 'that.'
4 The differences of form in §§ 28–30 are probably due to errors of copyists.
through him I have accompanied them on the boundary of its radiance and glory; so that I saw this, that only from the action of this one the future existence will arise; but the routine of the future existence was not seen by me. 31. This son of thine thinks thus: "I will make a grander material existence than that of any other;" so he will also make thy spiritual one, where thou goest: and this son of thine will remain in the great protection of Vistâsp, not in thine.'

32. One marvel is this which is declared, that when Zaratûst was seven years old, that Dûråsróbô being joined by Brâdrók-rêsh the Karap at the village of Pûrûshâspô, on account of the little previous seeing of Zaratûst by the latter, they saw Zaratûst in that neighbourhood when a hut (kâdakô) was constructed by him with the children; and they sat with evil intention to injure the mind of Zaratûst through witchcraft, and for that reason fear and terror were cast by them upon the children. 33. Here a great wonder became manifest to them, owing to the powerful intellect, cautiousness, and practice of Zaratûst, just as revelation mentions thus: 'When the other children were excessively terrified at their own silliness of speech, Zaratûst did not quite close the eye in his mind as regards them.'

34. One marvel is this which is declared, that when these two Karaps came to the dwelling of Pûrûshâspô, he ordered the preparation of food for their eating; and his prepared food is chewed up (frâz khâyât-âtt), with a gobletful (pûr dûlakô) of mare's milk. 35. He also spoke to Dûråsróbô thus: 'Thou art the most spirit-worshipping'¹ of mankind

¹ Literally 'demon-worshipping;' it is not clear that idolatry is
in our district; do thou worship this of mine.' 36. A great marvel, owing to the sagacity of Zaratûst at a childish age, is just as revelation mentions that Zaratûst spoke thus: 'I worship this, O father! it is not that which it is necessary for me to worship that he should worship.' 37. And Pûrûshåspô spoke thus: 'It is not that of mine thou worshippest, and it is that of mine he should worship.' 38. As many as three times those persons (ga brâân) carried on those assertions; when up stood Zaratûst and spoke concerning them, and he broke forth with that eternal statement\(^1\), namely: 'The righteous I reverence, men or women; the poor I reverence, men or women; not the wicked, men or women; when any one whatever shall join Pûrûshåspô, where he shall be celebrating worship, the worship shall then be suitable to the worshippers, that is, he shall worship that which it is necessary to worship.'

39. One marvel is this which is declared, that afterwards Dûrâsrôbô the Karap shouted to Zaratûst thus: 'Evil was thy reckoning\(^2\) which, owing to the conduct of fate (bâhâr), I, the foremost of the existences embodied in Râk and Nôdâr\(^3\), bring to thee; I am made further worthy where thy fate is carried away from me; now is the joy (parkân) which I convey to him\(^4\) through bringing it on, and this

---

\(^1\) Reading sakhûn-i leyalmin which is written in Pahlavi exactly like dashinô rigelô, 'the right foot.'

\(^2\) Pahl. marakô, possibly for marg, 'death.'

\(^3\) See Chap. II, 51, note.

\(^4\) Probably referring to his companion Brâdrôk-rêsh who, accord-
will occur, so that I may observe he will kill thee with the evil eye in the house.’ 40. And here is a great wonder which became manifest about Zaratùst, in the sagacity of his reply to that deadly one at that childish age, which was just like this which revelation mentions, that Zaratùst spoke thus: ‘Without the joy of a murderer I observe, with propitiousness and complete mindfulness, that it is thee I notice in that house which is thine.'

41. One marvel is that which, after this reply of Zaratùst to Dûrâsrôbô, became manifest in that Karap, just as revelation mentions thus: ‘The deadly one became disabled and stupefied as long as the milking of ten mares in milk whose milker is only one.'

42. One marvel is this which is declared, that when that wizard emerged from that stupefaction, he then shouted again to Zaratùst in the same manner, Zaratùst uttered that same reply, and the deadly one became anew disabled and stupefied as long as the milking of twenty mares full of milk whose milker is only one.

43. One marvel is this which is declared, that again when that wizard emerged from that stupefaction, he then shouted to Zaratùst in the same manner, Zaratùst uttered that same reply, and the deadly one becomes anew disabled and stupefied as long as the milking of thirty mares full of milk whose milker is only one.

44. One marvel is this which is declared, that when that wizard emerged from that stupefaction, he

---

1 Alluding to Dûrâsrôbô’s own fate, see § 45.
then grumbled thus: 'Do ye have the horse driven for us, and turn round the chariot wherein you harness it; for really this smiting one (ganâk) will destroy me through the arrival of the sacred text and through his possession of authority.' So they had the horse driven, and it was harnessed to the chariot by them.

45. And here is manifested a great wonder to the multitude, just as revelation mentions thus: 'When he had proceeded several Yûgyâsts in driving, he stopped in his distress through being terrified, and this occurred which I mention for a warning, his semen was expelled, so that it arose in his skin and burst it, and his loin thereby broke from his thigh; he then died outright, then his progeny, and then the offspring of his progeny.'

46. One marvel is this which is declared that, even before the coming of Zarâtûst to a conference, there is manifested in him a mind which is more capacious than the whole world, and more exalted than every worldly possession, with an understanding whose strength is perfectly selected, an intellect of all-acquiring power, and a sagacity of all-deciding ability; also with the much heedfulness of the kingly glory, and the full desire for righteousness, the efficacious diligence and authority, and even the superiority in mightiness and grandeur of the priestly glory. 47. Also the handsomeness of body and completeness of strength which are in the character of these four classes of his, which are priesthood,

---

1 See § 16 n.
2 Pahl. 'avô pîs yemâlefûnam.'
3 Or 'in his back and broke it,' if we suppose that pôst, 'skin,' stands for pôst, 'back.' Compare the same legend in Zs. XIX, 1–8.
4 With the sacred beings.
warriorship, husbandry, and artisanship; besides a perfect friendship for the sacred beings and the good, and an awful enmity for the demons and the vile. 48. That is the nature by which the habits (dâdôth) of mankind and bipeds, the perfection and completeness of the sacred beings through the creativeness of Aûharmazd, and its own commemoration of them are provided. 49. So that the sacred beings shall bring a report, as to his superiority, from every one of those who are and were and will be, and of his coming for reminding us of Aûharmazd and of the lord-and-mastership (a[hû-va-radîth) of the world, also of the preservation of the creations therein (ayêpô-dahîsnân), from the destroyer, by the tongue of the many-mannered (ka bêd-sarâdakô) sage, the fully-virtuous one of the age producing no harm (avazand-dahîtg) in the world. 50. And the demons on this account, that this is he whom many Kîgs and Karaps have to influence the good to confound and destroy, then also kept their promise and practised friendship.

51. And on the completion of thirty years beyond his birth, the archangel Vohûmanô came on in commemoration of Aûharmazd, when he was bringing his Hôm-water (mayâ-t Hômîgân) from the

---

1 See Chap. II, 9 n.
2 The remaining contents of this and the following chapter are thus summarized in Dk. VIII, xiv, 3, 4:—‘His attainment on maturity, at thirty years of age, to a conference with Aûharmazd; and the occurrence of seven conferences in ten years. Many marvels, owing to him are published therein, just as there are some which, collected and selected, are noticed by the Dinkard manuscript,’ that is, in this seventh book, in which, however, the details of the seven conferences do not occur; but some are mentioned in Zs. XXI, 8–XXII, 13.
3 See Visp. XI, 2.
river Aĕvatâk¹, just as this which revelation mentions thus: 'When Zaratûst came forth to the third effluent (barâ-tagîs sólo), that of the good Dâitàt, he further proceeded through that; and when he marched onwards from that, a man was seen by him, who marched from the southern quarter. 52. That was Vohûmanô, and it seemed to him that Vohûmanô was of early form (so that he is more discerning as to a person) and foreseeing (that is, he was beforehand in everything); it seemed to him that Vohûmanô was as much in height as three men's spears; and it seemed to him, as to Vohûmanô that a glossy twig (arûs ták) was brought by him in his hand, through carrying off which branch the plant was not injured by him; that became the spiritual twig of the religion, and this was indicated by it, that it is necessary to proceed as uninjuriously by the religion. 53. There is some one who says that it became a reminder of the spiritual existence, and this was indicated by it, that it is necessary to proceed as uninjunctiously in the world, so that peace may exist with every one.

54. When he came onward to the fourth effluent, as far as the Aûshán-rûd of the good Dâità (which was the name of it) and he was in it, Zaratûst was bringing the Hôm-water from the middle of it; and on the ascent Zaratûst, bringing his right foot out of the Aûshán-rûd, covered himself with his clothes, and upon that Vohûmanô, advancing, joined him in front.

¹ Literally 'single-flowing.' In Bd. XXIX, 4, 5, it is Nâîvtâk which has been translated as 'navigable' in Bd. XX, 34, and as 'flowing in a channel' in Dk. VIII, xxxvii, 38, 42; IX, xvi, 16.—From § 54 it appears to have been a channel of the good Dâitàt river which flows from Aîrân-vég (see Bd. XX, 13).
55. And that man enquired of him thus: 'Who art thou; from whom of them art thou?' He replied: 'I am Zarathustr of the Spitâmas.'

56. The words of Vohûmanô were: 'O Zarathustr of the Spitâmas! about what is thy foremost distress (that is, for what is thy need when thou becomest quite distressed); about what is thy foremost endeavour; and for what is the tendency of thy desire (lak kâmakô-dahisníth)?' 57. The reply of Zarathustr was thus: 'About righteousness, I consider my foremost distress; about righteousness my foremost endeavour; and for righteousness the tendency of my desire (that is, my need is for that thing, and I am a distressed seeker of righteousness).

58. The words of Vohûmanô were: 'O Zarathustr of the Spitâmas! that which is righteousness is existing (that is, a real thing is, as it were, that which is righteousness), so that whatever is that which is righteousness is thus what is one's own.' 59. And Zarathustr spoke thus: 'That which is righteousness exists, and concerning that I am completely clear and aware; but where and how is that radiance which is that whose arrival is through Vohûmanô.'

60. And Vohûmanô spoke to him thus: 'O Zarathustr of the Spitâmas! deposit this one garment which thou carriest, so that we may confer with him by

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLII, 7 c (Sp.).
2 According to the numbering of the folios in the old Bombay MS., written in 1659, nine folios were here separated from it last century. They contained the text as far as the end of Chap. IV, and the first eight of them were found at Naosâri about twenty years ago and copied. But all Indian copies, written before that time, omit this mislaid text. See S. B. E., vol. xxxvii, pp. xxxvi, xxxvii.

[47] E
whom thou art produced and by whom I am produced, who is the most propitious of spirits, who is the most beneficent of existences, and who is he that I, who am Vohúmanô, am testifying (that is, I am a reminder of him).’

61. Thereupon, Zaratúst thought thus: ‘Good is he who is the creator, who is better than this reminder.’ 62. Then they proceeded in company, Vohúmanô and Zaratúst; Vohúmanô first and Zaratúst after.

Chapter IV.

1. About the marvellousness which is manifested from the first conference onwards till the end of the seventh conference which occurred within the duration of ten years, also his pre-eminence in prophecy in the world, and the acceptance of the religion by the exalted Kai-Vistâsp, as happened after the ten years of conference.

2. In the first two years, one marvel is this which is declared, that when he was back from the first conference, he then, by the first command of the lord and creator Aûharmażd, recited the unique formula (âyínô) in an assemblage (ram) of Kîgs and Karaps, the prophecy of his Mazda-worshipping religion and commemoration of Aûharmażd, as he chanted with a loud voice, and invited mankind to the religion of Aûharmażd. 3. Just as this passage of revelation mentions thus: ‘Thereupon, the thorough inspection for this material existence of those with a sacred girdle, provided with dwellings and provided with cattle, was altogether arranged by Zaratúst.’

4. And when their announcement (nivêdisnô) for
speaking to be heard was issued, then Zaratûst, on becoming exalted, called out unto the embodied world of righteousness to extol righteousness and to scorn the demons. 5. ‘The homage of the Mazda-worship of Zaratûst, and the ceremonial and obeisance for the archangels are the best for you I assert; and of depreciation (ayâzîsnîh) for the demons next-of-kin marriage is really the best intimation, so that, from the information which is given as to the trustworthiness of a good work, the greatest are the most intimate of them, those of father and daughter, son and she who bore him, and brother and sister.’

6. It is declared that, upon those words, innumerable demon-worshipping Khâgs and Karaps have rushed upon Zaratûst and strove for his death, just like this which revelation states:—’It is then a number (mâr) have run away who have sat in the vicinity of Tûr’s progeny (hûzûskô), the arbitrator; and the shame of the brother of Tûr arose, like that of a person whose shame was that they spoke of his next-of-kin marriage so that he might contract it.’

7. This Tûr was Aûrvâítâ-dang the Tûr, the scantly giver, who was like a great sovereign of that

1 From this point §§ 4–8 and 11 have been already translated in S.B.E., vol. xviii, pp. 412, 413, in illustration of the meaning of Khvêtûk-das in Sasanian times and later.

2 Av. staomi ashem; nâismî daēvô (Yas. XI, 19; XII, 1).

3 An opprobrious term for the progeny of evil beings and animals, also used by a Karap when speaking of Zaratûst in Chap. III, 21.

4 As this name has not been found in the extant Avesta, its correct reading is uncertain. In Zs. XX, 8, it can be read Aûrvâitô-dih, in which dih is the Pahl. translation of Av. dang, hu, of which dang is a Pahl. transliteration; and the whole name may mean ‘friendly to the province,’ which seems suitable to this particular ruler. The MS. appears to have dêng.
quarter; many troops and much power were also maintained by him, and the multitude (mar) told him they would seize the great one from him who is little.

8. But the progeny of Aûrvâltâ-dang the Tûr, the scanty giver, spoke thus: 'Should we for that speech destroy him, this great one who mingles together those propitious words for us—where we are thus without doubt as to one thing therein, such as next-of-kin marriage, that it is not necessary to contract it—it would make us ever doubtful whether it might be necessary to contract it.'

9. And Aûrvâltâ-dang the Tûr, the scanty giver, spoke thus: 'Thou shalt not destroy that man whom mine eyes have seen as the most loving-eyed of the whole embodied existence; he will attain strength, for it has not seemed to me, when thou destroyest him on this account, that wisdom has arisen for a long time; so that no rule (âhankō) of wisdom will arise, in this earth, which is so counselling (hangamanig) as this one is (that is, when they destroy a man who is counselling, wisdom will not arise for a long while).'</n
10. Aûrvâltâ-dang the Tûr, the scanty giver to his own people, also spoke thus: 'For me thou art a pure man who is counselling.'

11. And Zarâtûst spoke thus: 'I shall not always be that quiet speaker, by whom that I have mentioned is the most propitious thing to be obtained; and of interfering speaking and managing the temper there is a next-of-kin marriage, and the high-

---

1 Or 'from.'
2 It may be 'parenthetical or ambiguous.'
priest who has contracted it is to perform the ceremonial.'

12. And here the good spiritual lordship and mightiness of glory of Zaratûst, those which are provided for commemoration of the supreme lord and creator Aûharmazd, are manifested as a great wonder to the multitude, and there is rendered visible the great pre-eminence which is in him as a prophet of the creatures, which for the baseness (nânkîth) of the deceitful Agash, the secret-moving and deceiving-natured, is the concealed control of a good disposition. 13. Then idleness, like even the habit of fear and nature of apostasy, is an attractor of every one of the multitude, when it extends to much length: little by little, too, that guide andcombatant becomes a petitioner for greatness, and it is manifest through that compassion (tang-libbemâth) and superior mindfulness of his, and through the glory of that stout champion, there are much fame and treasure.

14. The nobles of Aûrvâltâ-dang the Tûr, the ruler of the land, were angry and clamours for Zaratûst’s death; but he invited the Kîgs and Karaps to the religion of Aûharmazd, just as this passage of revelation states that Zaratûst also spoke thus: ‘Worldly righteousness, O Aûrvâltâ-dang, thou Tûr and scanty giver! is the whole of the worship of the demons and the termination of the Mazda-worship of Zaratûst.’ 15. And Aûrvâltâ-dang the Tûr, the scanty giver, spoke thus: ‘O Zaratûst of the Spîtâmas! thou shalt not attract me to this evil in which thou really art.’

1 Or, perhaps, ‘celebrated.’
2 The demon of the evil eye (see Bd. XXVIII, 33); Av. Aghashì, Vd. XX, 3, 7, 9.
16. Zaratūst also spoke thus: ‘Aûharmazd enquired of me thus: “O Zaratūst! when thou hast come away to us, among the spiritual lords, who of the people in thy material existence was the protector of the powerful men who are warriors, that was most seeking benefit, most seeking cattle, most extensively associating, most fully-supplying (that is, he gives out most things), and most hospitable’ (that is, one saw the door of a prince’s (khidîvô) treasury)?’ I replied to him thus: “Aûrvâltâ-dang the Tûr, the scanty giver.”’

17. ‘And he spoke in reply to me thus: “Him, O Zaratūst! thou shalt attract, first of the men who are warriors, to thinking about, speaking about, and acting about this religion which is Aûharmazd’s and Zaratūst’s. 18. If you attract him, O Zaratūst! and he believes in it and also gives currency to this religion of thine, and sits before thee in discipleship, this that one calls discipleship of thine he shall undertake, and the religion he hears fully he shall propagate (rûbâk vaô'dûnyên); he is also ever after, O Zaratūst! the first of the men who are warriors, the one most seeking benefit, most seeking cattle, most extensively associating, and most hospitable of those who have yet been born and who will henceforth be born. 19. And if you do not attract him, O Zaratūst! and he does not believe in it, nor gives currency to this religion of thine, nor hears it, nor even sits before thee, nor would sit before thee, so that it is obvious to me that he is not attracted, thou shalt speak unto him thus, O Zaratūst: ‘Thou art a stricken supplicant for righteousness, and a producer of lamentation for the souls of Tanâpûhar sinners

1 Literally ‘most many-doored.”
worthy of death;’ for even so it is, and for this reason he becomes worthy of death, because the existence of the religion is known to him.” 20. What I tell thee, O Aûrvâltâ-dang, thou Tûr and scanty giver! is that thou art a stricken suppliant for righteousness, a producer of lamentation for the souls of Tanâpûhar sinners worthy of death.’

21. One prodigy of the demons is specified, who was the enemy of whatever sacred beings there are, a Karap, Vaêdvôist 1 by name, of those unsanctified (âyastân) by Aûharmazd 2. 22. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: ‘I so befriend that man, O Zaratûst! who is put forward by me over the creatures, whom thou shalt invite (khvânês), I who am Aûharmazd, because I am through righteousness opposed to harm (that is, through virtue I keep harm away from the creatures), and the archangels are opposed to harm. 23. Therefore do thou proceed, O Zaratûst! and thou shalt demand from him for me (that is, keep as my property) a hundred youths of vigour (tôsh tal) 3, girls, and teams of four horses; so do thou speak to him thus: “O Vêdvoist! Aûharmazd demands from thee a hundred youths of vigour, girls, and teams of four horses; if thou givest them

1 Here written in Pâzand, but the Pahlavi form, Vêdvoist, occurs in §§ 23, 24.
2 Or ‘of the non-worshippers of Aûharmazd.’
3 For an instance of gifts of slaves see the Pahlavi inscription on an engraved stone from Baghdâd, in Indian Antiquary, vol. xi, p. 224, ll. 2, 3 of inscription: ‘kevan bûtân va-kanîgakô . . . lakhvâr . . . shedrûnam . . . va-zak shibâ ridô va-shibâ kanîga-kôân shedrûnt:’—‘Now . . . I send back a slave-boy and slave-girl . . . and those seven slave-boys and seven slave-girls are sent.’ This inscription was probably engraved in the seventh century, judging from the forms of the letters.
to him, splendour and glory are thine through that giving; and if thou dost not give to him, evil destiny is thine through that not-giving.’"

24. Then Zarathust walked on to that Vedvośt of those unsanctified, and spoke to him thus: ‘O Vedvośt of the unsanctified! that which Aûharmazd demands from thee is a hundred youths of vigour, girls, and teams of four horses; if thou givest them to him, splendour and glory are thine through that giving; and if thou dost not give to him, evil destiny is thine through that not-giving.’ 25. And that Karap shouted in reply to Zarathust thus: ‘For me there is no more from thee (that is, there is no opulence for me from thy action), nor from Aûharmazd; I am more of a divinity (bagtâr) and am more forward in opulence than even Aûharmazd; many droves of a thousand swine are also acquired by me.’

26. On went Zarathust, up to Aûharmazd and up to the archangels, and Zarathust spoke thus: ‘O Aûharmazd, propitious spirit, creator of the world of embodied beings, thou righteous one! thus spoke he in reply to me: “For me there is no more from thee, nor from Aûharmazd; I am more of a divinity than thee or even Aûharmazd, and many droves of a thousand swine are acquired by me.”’

27. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: ‘Owing to the splendour and glory of those which are ours, O Zarathust! that man has acquired arrogance (that is, the cattle we produced are the many cattle of his arrogance). 28. This will be his retribution for it then, however, when he does not reach further alive at the end of the third night\(^1\); in that third night

\(^1\) Apparently the third night after death, on the passing away of
they will have stood aloof from alongside his life (that is, they will have stood away from assisting it); those seven of them who are radiant and bright-eyed (ṣpēdō dōtsar) make him rush up on high, and up there on high he shall be fed upon mouldy bread (parnān).

29. One marvel is the great healthfulness owing to the Hōm-water and the bringing of this by Zaratūst from the river Dāttī, which is manifested when Vohūmanō was conveying him to the conference. 30. Just as is declared in the words of Aūharmazd to Zaratūst thus: 'For them is the Hōm-water which thou bringest, O Zaratūst! not for those demon-worshipping people who worship the demons, or for a satisfier of courtezans (gēh-vigār); they shall sprinkle it on to that bull thou shalt bring forward, who is a four-year-old of exhausted vigour, black-haired and useful; on drinking up the water, that bull will become quite sound from that infirmity.'

31. Thereupon, Zaratūst went on first into the embodied existence, on which dwelt, at the end of Sagāstān, that same Parshad whose title was Tōrā (the Bull). 32. Parshad-tōrā also spoke to him which the soul is supposed to have its destination determined, until the resurrection (see Hádōkht Nask, II, 18; III, 17). If the seven sacred beings who stand aloof from him be the archangels, they treat Vēdvoīst very leniently; but this legend treats of a period which it assumes to be earlier than the laws of Zaratūst.

1 The modern Sištān, bordering upon Afgānīstān and Bulūḵīstān.

2 Av. Parshad-gau, mentioned twice in Yt. XIII, 96, 127, but it is not certain that both allusions refer to the same individual. The name also occurs in Bd. XXIX, 5, but only in one old MS.; in all others another name is given, though the locality appears to be
thus: ‘O Zaratŭst of the Spîtâmas! give me this Hôm-water which thou bringest.’ 33. And Zaratŭst spoke thus: ‘Do thou praise righteousness, O Parshad-tôrâ! and scorn the demons; also utter the profession \(^1\) of the Mazda-worship of Zaratŭst among the iniquitous.’ 34. It was praised by Parshad-tôrâ, and the demons were scorned by him; yet he did not speak among the iniquitous as to his accepting the Mazda-worship of Zaratŭst. 35. Forward to him came Zaratŭst at that praise of righteousness, for him was that Hôm-water which Zaratŭst brought; not for those demon-worshipping people who have worshipped the demons, but for that bull of his which Zaratŭst brought forward, a four-year-old of exhausted vigour, black-haired and useful; owing to that bringing forward of the water, the bull became quite sound from that infirmity.

36. One marvel is that which is declared regarding the rushing of the evil spirit for the slaughter of Zaratŭst, just as revelation \(^2\) mentions thus: ‘From the northern quarter forth rushed the deadly evil spirit, and thus shouted he, astute in evil, the deadly evil spirit: “Rush on, O fiend! and destroy the righteous Zaratŭst.”’ 37. On to him they rushed, the fiend, the demon Bûd, and secret-moving Pestilence, the deceiver. 38. Zaratŭst chanted aloud the Ahunavir; the fiend was confounded at that, and away they rushed, the demon Bûd and secret-moving Pestilence, the deceiver. 39. And the fiends shouted thus: “Thou art scornfully observing, O evil spirit! (that is, anything to the purpose thou

---

nearly the same. In § 31 the first part of the name is here written Parshêd.

\(^1\) The Fravarănê, Yas. XI, 16.  
dost not thoroughly observe, and what thou orderest us to do is not possible); the death of him who is Zaratûst of the Spîtâmas is not contemplated by us."

40. Owing to the full glory of the righteous Zaratûst, he perceived in his mind thus: "The wicked demons, astute in evil, consult together about my death;" and up stood Zaratûst, forth went Zaratûst. 41. Here is manifested a great wonder to the multitude, in that which is mentioned thus: 'And a stone was put forth by the righteous Zaratûst, that was held in his hand, and the size of a hut, and which was obtained by him from the creator Aûharmazd, the spiritual Yathâ-ahû-vairyô.'

42. And one marvel is this which is manifested not only in the country of Irân to Irânians, but in every land and to every race: the shattering of the demons' bodies through the chanting of the Ahunavair aloud by Zaratûst. 43. Just as that which a passage mentions thus: 'I worship the resources of the Kayân glory, with which the righteous Zaratûst was associated in thinking about, speaking about, and acting about the religion which was, of all embodied existences, the most righteous in righteousness, the most lordly in sovereignty, the most radiant in radiance, and the most glorious in glory. 44. At his appearance the demons have fallen before him, at his appearance their semen (mâyagân) also drops, at his appearance the courtezan is also withdrawn by them from mankind;

---

1 The first three words of the Ahunavair formula.
2 See Yt. XIX, 78–81.
3 Reading vêndavádahakih, but the first letter is omitted in all three occurrences of the word.
on hearing 1 him they lamented, very violently is it lamented by the demons. 45. By the Ahunavair, which the righteous Zaraturst chanted aloud to them, all the demons are seized and buried in the earth, where the complete shattering of their bodies is manifest. 46. So that, after the shattering of their bodies, it became evident to those in the world that they were not able to do mischief in the bodily form of a demon, and they have been declared of the nature of sacred beings to mankind, but mankind fully understood that they are not sacred beings, but demons.

47. Zaraturst revealed (gushatfō) to mankind by the word of Aûharmazd, how in this religion the latter tells in words to Zaraturst where and how, in the embodied existence, mankind consider a demon as exalted or as a high-priest, because they are where they say that they must consider some one as high-priest. 48. So Aûharmazd spoke to Zaraturst thus: 'How do they who are good people, O Zaraturst! consider a demon as exalted? and how are they that even tell a demon thus: “We should accept you,” because the demons speak thus: “It will happen to you”?' 49. And Zaraturst spoke thus: 'Only for the reason, O Aûharmazd! that people hasten on to that which is a jungly plain without dwellings, where no one resides from the departure of light until sun-

1 If the word be Pahlavi, it is probably intended for snâyân, ‘hearing’; but it may be merely an approximate transcript of Av. snaodhentis, which word, if this be the case, must have puzzled Sasanian scholars as much as it does those of the present time. As a transcript, the word might be read snôdîyân, and we might guess the meaning of the phrase to be ‘thereupon weeping they lamented.’
rise arrives, when it is two Hâsars\(^1\) of night, and again silently (agôp) from sunset until their returning together when the two Hâsars of night are gone, they hear that no work, no men, and no voices of dogs are there. 50. Then they say as to that, on arriving back, thus: "We have consulted with the demons there; when we request (zâèm) monarchy (sâstârîh) and leadership from them, they give them to us; when we request the possession of flocks and opulence from them, they give them to us."

51. Then Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'How can they do such a thing for them, O Zaratûst! (that is, how does it happen that it is continually given by them for those that speak thus: "It happened to us")?'

52. And Zaratûst spoke thus: 'They speak variously, O Aûharmazd! as to that generosity; there is one who speaks thus: "I have ever after been possessing more flocks, so long as I am in consultation with the demons;" and there is another who speaks thus: "I have ever after been worse and more ill-fated, so long as we are in consultation with those demons;" according as they possess a full subsistence for themselves from the demons (that is, when they diversely subsist fully on whatever they bespeak from the demons).' 53. Zaratûst also spoke thus: 'So they speak about it, O Aûharmazd! thus: "Observe further, where any one of us returns he is either shrunk together (that is, he holds his head down to his chest), or shrunk away (that is, he looks quite aside), or is only pleasantly

---

\(^1\) Av. hâthra, which, as a measure of time, varies from one to two hours (see Farh. Ofm, p. 43, ll. 1–3).
cast down and, owing to acquiescence in him, the demons tempt (nes,hûnd) him away out of mankind.'

54. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'According to thy wish, do thou, O Zaratûst! fully observe thy existence, upwards from the head, downwards from the sole \(^1\) of the foot, and afar on various sides; and thou shouldst beseech before and behind and in every direction, for we are not as to thee as the demons are as to mankind, we give away everything only in invisibility; but the demons, through close connection, when they rush out, tempt only with pleasantness. 55. Even unto thee, O Zaratûst! a fiend will rush, a female, golden-bodied and full-bosomed (so that she wears a bodice), and she rushes to request companionship from thee; a female, golden-bodied and full-bosomed, to request conversation from thee, to request co-operation from thee. 56. But thou shouldst not grant her companionship, nor conversation, nor shalt thou prescribe any conduct for her; afterwards, to revert her downwards, thou shalt utter aloud that triumphant saying the Yathâ-ahû-vairyô.'

57. Zaratûst proceeded to the habitable and friendly world, for the purpose of fully observing that beaten track (khâpînô) of the embodied existence; then that fiend came forward when he sat in the vicinity of a garment—that garment \(^2\) which, when Vohûmanô was conveying him to the conference, was deposited by him—a female, golden-bodied and full-bosomed, and companionship, con-

---

\(^1\) Assuming that lêlyâ stands for zêrih; the only difference, in Pahlavi writing, being in the first letter.

\(^2\) See Chap. III, 60.
versation, and co-operation were requested by her from him; she also whined (dandīdā): 'I am Spendarmad'\(^1\).

58. And Zaratūst spoke thus: 'She who is Spendarmad was fully observed by me in the light of a cloudless day, and that Spendarmad appeared to me fine behind and fine before and fine all round (that is, in all positions she was handsome); do thou turn thy back, and I shall know if thou art Spendarmad.'

59. And the fiend spoke to him thus: 'O Zaratūst of the Spitāmas! where we are, those who are females are handsome in front, but frightfully hideous behind; so do not make a demand for my back.' 60. After she had protested a third time, the fiend turned her back, and she was seen by Zaratūst behind in the groin; and when matter was exuded, it was full of serpents, toads, lizards, centipedes, and frogs.

61. And that triumphant saying, the Yathā-ahū-vairyā, was uttered aloud by Zaratūst; then that fiend was annihilated, and Kēshmak\(^2\) the Karap rushed forth. 62. And he grumbled in leaving, thus: 'The misery which is here below is such as I have obtained, because, owing to thee, I thought that thy sacred beings were more joyful than any heroes who through defeat go to hell; I proceed more joyfully than the sacred beings, as regards the life in the body, so that I fully deceive the life in thy body, and thou art fully deceived by me as regards thine.'

---

\(^1\) The female archangel Bountiful Devotion, in whose special charge are the earth and virtuous women; see Sls. XV, 5, 20–24.

\(^2\) See Chap. II, 44, 45.
63. Zarathustr also revealed (gushûftû) this secret to mankind, and their knowledge how to test a demon is manifested therein, even by a great wonder of the same nature to mankind: the visible rushing of the demons into the world before Zarathustr, and their bodies being afterwards shattered by the loud chanting of revelation by Zarathustr from the Avesta announced, which was the acceptance of its truth by the ruler Vistasp and the people of that time; and if this had not been so, and Vistasp and those of his time were not accepting the Avesta which was announced by Zarathustr in this fashion, through their considering it false, it would not have reached unto us.

64. One marvel is this, with which, too, he who was Zarathustr became aware from revelation, about the vileness and perverted religion of Zâk of the deadly Karaps of Vistasp and many other Kats and Karaps who were at the residence of Vistasp, their combination for the death of Zarathustr, the preparation for severe abuse of him to Vistasp, and influencing Vistasp for his death by command of Vistasp, which extends to awful imprisonment and punishment. 65. Afterwards, too, his knowledge about his preservation therefrom, the manifestation of his wondrousness, and the evidence concerning his attainment unto prophesying; also after the continuance of the last questioning of the ten years of conference, his departure alone, by the advice and command of Aûharmazd, to the residence of Vistasp and the precinct (var) of that terrible conflict. 66. His uttering, on the horse-course (aspânvar) of Vistasp, a reminder of the power and triumph of Aûharmazd over himself, as he invited Vistasp to
the religion of Aûharmazd; and with great wisdom Vistasp heard the words of Zaratûst, on account of his own complete mindfulness and spiritual knowledge of ritual, and would have asked for an outpouring of prophecy.

67. But thereupon, too—before the words of Zaratûst were fully heard by him, and he could have understood the character of Zaratûst—owing to the demonizing of the deadly Zâk and the rest of those Kings and Karaps, spoken out with slanderous knowledge and perverse actions to Vistasp about Zaratûst, there then occurred his consignment of Zaratûst to that confinement and punishment as stated in the words of Zaratûst thus: 'I have spoken about their three enquiries, and I am bound by thirty of them, I with thirty-three fetters of murderers, wicked ones, and demon-worshippers'.

68. But the hunger of manhood's inclination violently affected the strength of my legs, but the hunger of manhood's inclination violently affected the force of my arms, but the hunger of manhood's inclination violently affected the hearing of my ears, but the hunger of manhood's inclination violently affected the sight of my eyes, and it would force away my bosom up to my back (so that it would stay behind at my back) through the continuance of that deadly hunger of manhood's inclination.'

69. And here, through the mightiness of Zaratûst—who proceeded alone to the terrible combat with
evil, where there became manifest, in the mode which is written, the descent of his life into so much punishment, due to hunger and thirst, heavy fetters, and other misery unto which the strength of human nature is attaining, but unto which it is not destined—is manifested a great wonder to king Vistâsp and his officials, when his full-glorious person was found by them alive in awfulness, imprisonment, and those other transformations (padgastakîh) of long-continued starvation.

70. One marvel is this, that the sacred beings contrived, for the sake of (val vahân-) his preservation from that awfulness, a body possessing life, and on his account it became lifeless and imperceptible; afterwards, in the great session of Vistâsp and the assembly of the world, Zaratûst, through the strength and blessedness of the true word, restored the same body anew, like that which is issuing in the statement of the wonder about the splendid horse of Vistâsp.

71. One marvel is his telling and disclosing the thoughts of king Vistâsp and of those of the realm, and many other concealed matters, through spiritual perception.

72. One marvel is several matters of evil deceit (vad gamâs) which Dahâk had done in Bâpêl.

---

1 This very slight allusion to the cure of Vistâsp’s horse by Zaratûst is sufficient to show that this legend existed in the ninth century; but the writer of the Dinkard seems inclined to trace it back to a tale that he vaguely relates in the earlier part of this section, and which he evidently found in older writings; this tale, however, does not mention a horse, but only an animated body. The Persian Zaratûst-nâma develops the legend of the sick horse, whose legs are drawn up to its belly, into 160 couplets.

2 Babylon; see Yt. V, 29–31; XV, 19–21.
through witchcraft, and mankind had come to idol-worship through that seduction, and its increase was the destruction of the world; but through the triumphant words of the religion, which Zarathustra proclaimed opposing it, that witchcraft is all dissipated and disabled.

73. One marvel is this which is manifested, with wonders owing to Zarathustra, in controversy about the religion with the famous learned of the realm, among whom, known for learning in the world, are the investigators (girâyagânô) of the words of speech; and among those things which are more surprisingly controversial are those later (sihapsâr) words which are to save their creatures by a later religion. 74. Also to proclaim its truth intelligibly, and to make king Vistasp and those previously learned men without doubt as to the truth of the religion, the creator Aûharmazd sends some spiris, Vohûmanô, Ashavahhistô, and the propitious fire¹, as a reminder to Vistasp about the true prophesying of Zarathustra, and the desire of Aûharmazd for the acceptance of the religion of Mazda-worship by Vistasp and for its propagation in the world.

75. The wondrousness which is manifested to Vistasp and those of the realm—both through the travelling (vâzîdanô) of those archangels down from the sky to the earth, and in their travelling to the abode of Vistasp—was like this which revelation mentions thus: 'Then he who is the creator Aûharmazd spoke to them, to Vohûmanô, Ashavahhistô, and also the fire of Aûharmazd, the propitious, thus: "Proceed! you who are archangels, unto the

¹ Compare Zs. XXIII, 7.
abode of Vistāsp, whose resources (afzâr) are cattle and who is far and widely famed, with a view to his reliance upon this religion (that is, till he shall stand up for this religion); and, as regards the answering words of the righteous Zaratûst of the Spîtâmas, to approve the nature (zag sān) of those words.” 76. The archangels proceeded unto the abode of Vistāsp, whose resources are cattle and who is far and widely famed; their radiance, in that lofty residence, seemed to him, that Vistāsp, a heaven of complete light, owing to their great power and triumph; this was so that, when he thus looked upon it, the exalted Kaṭ-Vistāsp trembled, all his courtiers (pēsakō) trembled, all his chieftains (padō) were confused, and he of the superior class was like the driver of a chariot-horse.

77. 'And the fire of Aṅharmazd spoke, in the words of heroes, thus: “Fear not, for there is no fearing for thee, thou exalted Kaṭ-Vistāsp! they have not come for alarming thy abode, as a reminder of the deputed envoys of Argâsp; there have not come, for alarming thy abode, the two Khyōns of

---

1 Av. Aregad-aspa, king of the Huyaonas (Pahl. Khyōns), mentioned in Yt. V, 109, 113, 116; XVII, 50; XIX, 87. His war with Vistāsp, for the purpose of compelling the latter to abjure his new religion, is described in the Yādḵār-i Zarhrān (see Geiger in Sitzungsberichten der p.-p. und h. Classe der k. bayer. Akad. der Wiss. 1890, Bd. II, pp. 43–84). Argâsp sends two envoys, Vīdraf, the wizard and Nāmkhvāst of the Hazârs, to demand Vistāsp’s submission; this is refused defiantly by advice of Zarhr, the king’s brother; and both nations prepare for war. When the Irānians meet the Khyōns, Vistāsp consults his vazr Gâmāsp, who prognosticates prodigious slaughter. And, after losing most of their chieftains (including twenty-three brothers and sons of Vistāsp), the Irānians utterly annihilate the Khyōn army. This war is called the ‘war of the religion’ in Bd. XII, 33; Byt. III, 9.
Argâsp who demand tribute and revenue (sâk va-bâzô); and there has not come, for alarming thy abode, the all-overpowering thief who is an injurer, or the dog who is a highwayman. 78. We are three who have come over (taristô) to thy abode, Vohûmanô, Ashavahistô, and also the fire of the propitious lord; of these thy knowledge is most wisely most just. 79. If thou helpest vision, so that it becomes wisdom for thee, the worldly existence requires the good religion of the Mazda-worshippers, which proceeds purely through the recitation which Zarâtûst of the Spîtâmas teaches. 80. Do thou chant the Ahunavair, do thou praise perfect righteousness¹, and utter no worship² for the demons! because the desire of Aûharmazd, as regards thee, is for thy reliance upon this religion; it is also the desire of the archangels, and the desire, as regards thee, of the other sacred beings who are beneficent (sapîr-dahakô) and righteous.

81. ‘“And as the recompense in this life, if you praise the good and pure religion of the righteous Zarâtûst of the Spîtâmas, we will give unto thee a long reign and sovereignty, and the long lifetime of a life of 150 years; we will give unto thee Good Integrity and Rectitude³ which is long-continued in desire for constantly assisting, good for assistance

¹ That is, recite the Yathâ-ahû-vairÝô and the Ashem-vohû formulas.
² Pahl. a-azisnîh, literally, a ‘non-worship,’ which may mean something worse than ‘no worship;’ but ‘excracation or male-diction’ is usually expressed by gazîsn, ‘cursing,’ which is written exactly like yazîsn, ‘worship.’
³ Pahl. Aharîsvang and Râst-astîsnîh, the equivalents of Av. Ashîs-vanguhi and Rasâstât who are spiritual personifications of the qualities mentioned in the text.
through constantly assisting, and not passing away; and we will give unto thee a son, Pêshyôtan ¹ is his name, he is immortal, and so is undecaying, hungerless, and thirstless, living and predominant in both existences, those of the embodied beings and of the spirits. 82. But, as the recompense in this life, if you do not praise the good and pure religion of the righteous Zarâtûst of the Spîtâmas, we will not convey thee up on high, and we will order thine end; the vultures which are mindful of decay will see and eat up those and these of thine, thy blood will reach the ground, and the waters will not reach thy body.”

83. One marvel is that connected with the confidence (vâvartî-hastanô) of Vîstâsp in the religion, even through that occurrence of the speech of the archangels; and, afterwards, the obedience (pâtîya-sât?) of his thoughts in the case of the delays through the bloodshed owing to Argâsp ² the Khyôn and his attendant heroes (pas-gûrdânô) throughout the same Khyôns, because of the acceptance of the religion. 84. Also, for the sake of daily and visibly showing to Vîstâsp the certified victory over Argâsp and the Khyôns, and his own superior position, unceasing rule, splendour, and glory, the creator Aûharmazd sends, at the same time, the angel Nêryôsang ³ to the abode of Vîstâsp, as a reminder for the archangel Ashavahistô to give to Vîstâsp to drink of that fountain of life, for looking

¹ Written Pêshyôtanô, both here and in Chap. V, 12. He is the immortal priestly ruler of Kangdez, who was expected to come to restore the religion in Irân in the time of Aûshêdar, see Bd. XXIX, 5; Byt. III, 25-32, 36-42, 51, 52.
² Here written Argadâspô; see § 77.
³ Written Nêrôksang here and in § 85.
into the existence of the spirits, the enlightening food by means of which great glory and beauty are seen by Vistâsp.

85. Just as this passage of revelation mentions thus: 'And he who is the creator Aûhartama spoke to the angel Nêryôsang thus: “Proceed and travel, O Nêryôsang the assembler'! unto the abode of Vistâsp, whose resources are cattle and who is far and widely famed, and thou shalt say this to Ashavahistô, thus: ‘O Ashavahistô! do thou authoritatively take this fine saucer (tastô), which is fully finer than the other saucers that are made (that is, the cup (gâm) is as fine as is possible to make for royalty), and carry up to Vistâsp the Hôm and Varsz (muî) which are for us; and do thou give it unto the ruler Vistâsp to drink up, by whose word it is accepted.'" 86. Ashavahistô authoritatively taking the fine saucer from him, also, thereupon, gave it unto the exalted ruler Kaî-Vistâsp to drink from; and the ruler of the country (dîh), the exalted Kaî-Vistâsp, lay down when divested of his robes, and he spoke to Hûtôs thus: "You, O Hûtôs! are she

1 Compare Vd. XXII, 7.
2 A lock of three, five, or seven hairs from the tail of a white bull, that is tied to a metal thumb-ring which is put into the Hôm-strainer when the Hôm-juice is about to be poured through it. See Haug's Essays, 3rd ed., pp. 397-403. This ring and lock of hair may be the relic of a hair-sieve that may have been used for straining the Hôm-juice in former times.
3 The saucer, or cup, of strained Hôm-juice.
4 The foregoing twenty-six words, excepting two, have been here repeated by the writer of the old Bombay MS., after turning over a folio.
5 Av. Hutuosa, wife of Vistâsp and descendant of Nôdar (Av. Naotara); see Yt. XV, 35, 36. According to the later authority of the Yâdkar-î Zarîân, § 48, she was also a sister of Vistâsp.
whom the prompt ability (têzê hûnar) of Zarâst of the Spitâmas should reach; and through the diligence of the prompt ability of Zarâst of the Spitâmas, you would expound the religion of Aûharmazd and Zarâst."

87. One marvel is this which is declared; that when Vistâsp, accepting the religion, praises righteousness, the demons in hell are disabled, and the demon Aeshm rushes to the country of the Khyôns and to Argâsp, the deadly one of the Khyôns, because he was the mightiest of the tyrants at that time; and the most hideous of all, of so many of them in the country of the Khyôns, are poured out by him for war.

88. And here, too, is manifested a great wonder also to the host (ram) of Irân who have been coming there, unto the residence of Argâsp the Khyôn, like this which revelation mentions thus: 'Then, just at the time his legion is separately displayed, Aeshm the unredeemable (tanâpûharak) adheres (gèrevedô) to him, as being himself without escort (agurôh), and quite opposes (barâ sperezêdô) him, because: "You, who are a Khyôn, have become unlucky through want of success after you engage in conflict."' 89. Henceforth, it is not that the victory of Irân has come over foreigners and Khyôns—through companionship at the abode of that man who is mightier by the birth of Zarâst

The similarity of her name to that of Atossa, the wife and sister of Cambyses, whom Darius afterwards married, is striking.

1 As the verbal forms of the present third person singular and second person plural are alike in Pahlavi, it is doubtful which personal pronoun to use.

* The demon of Wrath; see Bd. XXVIII, 15-17.
of the Spätamas—when that hideous sovereignty of Argāsp, the deadly Khyôn, is swallowed up by him (Vistāsp), for the confusion of the deadly species (that is, they are further smitten by him, one through the other; and are swallowed together by him, mutually struggling and through mutually devouring). 90. And apart from him, that bitter and well-hardened Khyôn that is quite disabled by him the good Vistāsp, that deadly fiend is disturbed about him of eloquent abilities (Zaratûst); and so he grumbled at the hideous sovereignty thus: 'Prompt ability comes into existence and the Khyôn came; thereupon prompt ability comes into existence and the Irânian has come."

---

**Chapter V.**

1. About the marvellousness which is manifested from the acceptance of the religion by Vistāsp onwards till the departure (vikhêzô) of Zaratûst, whose guardian spirit is reverenced, to the best existence, when seventy-seven years ² had elapsed onwards from his birth, forty-seven onwards from

---

¹ According to the numbering of the folios of the old MS. of 1659 (brought from Persia to India in 1783) one folio, numbered 313 in Persian words, is here missing. It has not yet been found in India, and, owing to folio 312 apparently completing a sentence, and folio 314 evidently beginning a new chapter, the loss of text is hardly perceptible. It would have filled the next two pages.

² The MS. has ‘57 years,’ through ५० ५० ‘50’ being written instead of ५० ७० ‘70’; but see Chap. III, 51 which states the interval of thirty years between his birth and conference.
his conference, and thirty-five years onwards from the acceptance of the religion by Vistâsp

2. One marvel is this which is declared that, when Zaratûst chanted revelation in the abode of Vistâsp, it was manifest to the eye that it is danced to with joyfulness, both by the cattle and beasts of burden, and by the spirit of the fires which are in the abode. 3. By which, too, a great wonder is proclaimed, like this which revelation mentions thus: 'There seemed a righteous joyfulness of all the cattle, beasts of burden, and fires of the place, and there seemed a powerfullness of every kind of well-prepared spirits and of those quitting the abode (man-hishânô), "that will make us henceforth powerful through religion," when they fully heard those words which were spoken by the righteous Zaratûst of the Spitâmas.'

4. And one marvel is the provision, by Zaratûst, of the achievement of ordeal, that indicator of the acquitted and incriminated for sentence by the judge, in obscure legal proceedings; of which it is said in revelation there are about (kêrûn) thirty-three kinds. 5. These, too, the disciples of Zaratûst kept in use, after that time, until the collapse of the monarchy of Irân; and the custom of one of them is that of pouring melted metal on the breast, as in the achievement of the saintly (hû-fravârdô) Átûrpâd son of Mâraspend, through whose preservation a know-

1 The contents of this chapter and the next, as far as VI, 11, may be connected with the following summary in Dk. VIII, xiv, 9:—'Information also as to many other things which are marvellous, and as to a summary of the statements of these seven enquiries, which is derived from knowledge of every kind.' For the seven enquiries, see Zs. XXII.

2 Or, perhaps, 'make the abode.'
ledge about the religion was diffused in the world; and of the manifestation, too, through that great wonder, this is also said, on the same subject, in the good religion, that of those many, when they behold that rite of ordeal, it convinces the wicked ones.

6. One marvel is that which is afterwards manifested, after the former captivity of Zarathust and his speaking about the religion to Vistasp and those of the realm, *such as the acceptance of the religion by Vistasp and that which Zarathust said to him at his original arrival, as regards the declaration of a ruler's religion, thus: 'Thine is this disposition, and this religion which is calling (khrōsakō) is a property of that description which thou puttest together, O Kal-Vistasp! so that if thou wilt accept this disposition of thine, thou wilt possess this religion which exists (that is, the learning of learnings), and be the ruler that shall cause its progress; thou will possess in this disposition of thine, as it were, a new support (stūnakō), and any one will uphold thee by upholding it, as thou art the possessor of the support of this religion.'

7. Also the victory of Vistasp over Argasp the Khyôn and other foreigners in that awful battle, just as Zarathust explained unto Vistasp in revelation; and much which is declared by revelation.

8. One marvel is the disclosure by Zarathust, in complete beneficence, medical knowledge, acquaintance with character, and other professional retentiveness (pūshakō-girūkīh), secretly and completely, of what is necessary for legal knowledge and spiritual

---

1 §§ 4, 5 are already translated in AV. p. 145.
3 See Chap. IV, 73.
4 See Chap. IV, 88–90.
perception; also the indication, by revelation, of the rites for driving out pestilence (ségö), overpowering the demon and witch, and disabling sorcery and witchcraft. 9. The curing of disease, the counter-action of wolves and noxious creatures, the liberating of rain, and the confining of hail, spiders, locusts, and other terrors of corn and plants and adversaries of animals, by the marvellous rites which are also relating to the worship of Khûrdad and Amûrdad\(^1\), and many other rites which were kept in use until the collapse of the monarchy of Irân; and there are some which have remained even till now\(^2\), and are manifested with a trieste of marvellousness by the sacred fires. 10. And the disclosure to mankind of many running waters from marvellous streams (ardâyâ), and remedies for sickness which are mixed (fargardakö) by well-considering physicians; many are spiritual and celestial, gaseous (vâyîg) and earthy; and the worldly advantage of others, too, is the praise (lafö) which ought to come to one for angelic\(^3\) wisdom.

11. One is the marvel of the Avesta itself, which, according to all the best reports of the world, is a compendium of all the supremest statements of wisdom.

12. One marvel is the coming of this also to

---

\(^{1}\) These two archangels personify health and immortality, respectively (see Chap. II, 19), and are supposed to have special charge of water and plants.

\(^{2}\) The ninth century, unless this phrase be copied from one of the sources of the Dinkard.

\(^{3}\) The MS. has yazdânö-khiradöih which has the meaning given in the text; but this word can also be read gehânö-khiradöih, 'worldly wisdom,' though gehânö is the more usual orthography.
CHAPTER V, 9–VI, 2.

Vistâsp, which the archangels announced as a recompense for accepting the religion, as he saw Pêshyôtan the happy ruler, that immortal and undecaying son, not wanting food, large-bodied, completely strong, fully glorious, mighty, victorious, and resembling the sacred beings; the unique splendour of Pêshyôtan for the sovereignty of Kangde in yonder world, as allotted to him by the creator Aûharmazd, is manifested even through that great wonder to the multitude.

CHAPTER VI.

1. About the marvellousness which is manifested after the departure (vtkhêzô) of Zaratûst, whose guardian spirit is reverenced, to the best existence, and in the lifetime of Vistâsp.

2. One marvel is this which is declared by revelation, about the provision of a chariot by Sritis  of the Vîsraps; this is through a famous wonder and

1 See Chap. IV, 81.

2 It is singular that nothing is stated here about the death or departure of Zaratûst, which event, according to § 1, ought to have concluded this chapter. But in Chap. III, 39, Dûrâsrôb evidently foretells that Zaratûst will be killed by the evil eye of Brâdrôk-rêsh. In Dk. V, iii, 2, the killing of Zaratûst by Brâdrôk-rêsh the Tûr is merely mentioned. In Zs. XXIII, 9, it is stated that Zaratûst passes away (vidîrêdô) forty-seven years after his conference and preaching to Vistâsp. While the modern Persian Zaratûst-nâma does not mention his death, though it speaks of Bartarûsh as his chief enemy in his younger days. But compare Chap. III, 22.

3 Pahl. rdâ which is written exactly like the Pahlavi ciphers for twenty-two and, no doubt, stands for Av. ratha.

4 So spelt ten times in §§ 2–11, but here Sritis. It is also Sritis in Dk. V, iii, 2.

5 Pahl. Vîsrâpân in §§ 9, 11 and Dk. V, iii, 2; but here it is
the coming of a report about the marvellousness of that chariot to Vistâsp, Vistâsp's begging that chariot from Sritô, and Sritô saying in reply to Vistâsp: 'That chariot is for a righteous man, in which the soul of Sritô in the lifetime of Sritô's body, and that of that man in the lifetime of his body, come visibly together once in the worldly existence.' 3. And the soul of Sritô, through the generosity of that Sritô, presents that chariot to the eyesight of that man of righteousness; thereby it becomes evident he had seen it, and is told not to act in another manner. 4. The exalted Kaî-Vistâsp, as becoming from revelation more particularly aware of this marvel about the future at that time, and for the sake of this marvel being published to the worldly existence (ghânâtgh), and of his becoming Visrapân, and in § 7 the first letter is omitted, leaving only īsrapân. In Pahl. Vd. XX, I (Sp.) we have Srift-ī ma (in L.), which latter name may also be īsrapânô, though more likely to be read Sereşânô when considered by itself. It is almost certain that the person mentioned in Pahl. Vd. XX, I is intended to be the same as that named here in the text. But it is doubtful if this person be the Av. Thrîta son of Sâyusdrî (or Sâisdrî) of Yt. V, 72; XIII, 113. As the legend in the text appears to refer to the soul of Sritô, or Thrîta, revisiting the world to meet Vistâsp, this Sritô may have been the warrior Sritô, the seventh brother, employed by Kaî-Ûs, about 350 years earlier, to kill the frontier-settling ox of that time, but there seem to be no means of so identifying him with absolute certainty.

1 This is the literal meaning of the Pahl. 'mûn rûbân-ī Sritô pavan zîndâgh-ī Sritô tanô,' but it is not quite consistent with Sritô's return to the earth as a spirit. The Indian copyists seem to have observed this, as they have omitted several words, so as to alter the meaning to the following:—'That chariot is for a man of the righteous, with whom Sritô in the lifetime of that man's body comes visibly together, &c.' But the sentence is not quite grammatical.
more invoking for the supremacy of the Mazda-worshipping religion, became discernible by those of the realm, is sought for, and is most attended.

5. A great wonder became manifest to Vistāsp and those of the world, just as revelation mentions thus: 'Thereupon the archangels are letting forth the soul of that Sṛṭṭo from the light of the supreme heaven, from the light on to the earth created by Aḥarmaezd; and the soul of Vistāsp proceeded from him into the light to meet it. 6. Vistāsp proceeded on to the propitious south (rāpītvīnō); he was producing more gain than the gainer, and he was more inquisitive than the inquisitive; to all whom he saw he spoke, and unto such as spoke he listened; when he gazed at them looking simultaneously they stood up, and obeisance was offered by them unto the soul and person of Vistāsp.'

7. Immediately upon that no delay occurred until there came on at a run—besides the soul of Sṛṭṭo of the Vīsraps—the most horrid (a grandtūm) of demons, from the horrid northern quarter of the horrid destroyer (zadār), that was himself black, and his deeds, too, were very black. 8. And as he comes himself, so also he grumbles to the soul of Sṛṭṭo thus: 'Give a maintenance (khvārag) to Vistāsp who is thy driver¹, for the sake of good fellowship and service, and for that, righteousness is suitable unto a pure one; do not give it as a thing which is protective (that is, do not give it for the sake of worldly gratuity), but for love of the righteousness which is owing to the perfect existences.'

9. When those words were fully heard by Sṛṭṭo of

¹ This speech seems intended as veiled irony.
the Vîsraps, the early bestower (levîno-vakhsh),
he stood still and so he spoke in words thus: 'For
righteousness I give thee, O mighty Kat-Vistâsp!
this chariot which is without a driver, only for love
of the righteousness which is owing to the perfect
existences.' 10. As much for righteousness as is
best for righteousness, and as much for the soul as
is best for the soul, the gift of the whole was secured
(that is, its acceptance was announced as often as
three times).

11. Then that chariot became two chariots, one
spiritual and the other worldly; in the worldly one
the exalted Kat-Vistâsp travelled forth unto the
village of the Nôdarâs 1 in the joyfulness of good
thoughts, and in the spiritual one the soul of Srîô of
the Vîsraps travelled forth unto the best existence.

12. One marvel is this which is declared that in
fifty-seven years onwards from the acceptance of the
religion by Zaratûst 2, the arrival of the religion is
published in the seven regions 3; and within the
lifetime of Vistâsp, the circumstance (aêdûnôth) is
manifested by the coming of some from other regions
to Frashôstar of the Hvôbas 4 for enquiry about the

---

1 Nôdar (Av. Naotâra) was a son of king Mânûskôhar (Bd. XXXI, 13) and an ancestor of king Vistâsp. Vistâsp being a des-
cendant of Kaf-Kavâd (Bd. XXXI, 28, 29) who was the adopted son
of Aûzôbô (Bd. XXXI, 24) a son of Zâgh, son of Masvâk, son of
Nôdar (Bd. XXXI, 23 corrected from XXXIII, 5). Hûtôs, the wife
of Vistâsp, was also of the village of the Nôdarâs (Yt. XV, 35).

2 That is fifty-seven years after the conference of Zaratûst (see
Chap. V, 1).

3 See the summary in Dk. VIII, xiv, 10:—'Likewise, about the
communication of Zaratûst's knowledge of the Mazda-worshipping
religion to the world, his attracting mankind to the religion, and
the ages, after Zaratûst, until the renovation of the universe.'

4 Av. Ferashaosîrô Hvôgvô (Yas. LI, 17); he was a brother
religion, **even** as revelation mentions thus: 'Two whose names are thus, Spîtôis¹ and Arezráspô², who have hastened unto Frashôstar of the Hvôbas in search of wisdom.'

13. Thus much splendour and wonder of Vistâsp and those of the realm regarding Zaratûst³, and thus much due to the coming of the archangels from the sky to the earth before Vistâsp, as evidence about the true prophesying of Zaratûst⁴; and that, too, about Pêshyôtan⁵, the chariot of Sritô⁶, and other subjects seen written above, are declared by the Avesta, which is the same that they accepted from Zaratûst, as the culmination⁷ (avarîgânîth) of Aûharmazd's words. 14. And if this splendour, glory, and wonder that are written above as regards what those learned men of the realm saw—which are in the statement revealed by the Avesta—had not occurred, king Vistâsp and those learned men of the realm would not have seen what this Avesta had revealed to them—which was thus much splendour and wonder reported by it to them—and not one word about leaving its preservation to us would be annexed.

of Gâmâsp (Dk. V, ii, 12; iii, 4; Zs. XXIII, 10), and the father of Zaratûst's wife Hvôvi. The Hvôvas (Pahl. Hvôbas) were a numerous family.

¹ Av. gen. Spîtôis (Yt. XIII, 121). He was high-priest of Frâdâdâfsh, the south-east region.

² Av. Erezrâspa (ibid.) He was high-priest of Vîdâdâfsh, the south-west region (see Bd. XXIX, 1). These foreign envoys were brothers, each being a son of Uspâsnu.

³ See Chap. IV, 73.

⁴ See Chap. IV, 74–82.

⁵ See Chap. V, 12.

⁶ See §§ 2–11.

⁷ See Chap. V, 11.

[47]
CHAPTER VII.

1. About the marvellousness which is manifested after the time of Vistāsp until the collapse (hangaf-tanō) of the sovereignty of Irān.

2. There is marvellousness which is manifested after Vistāsp until the collapse of the sovereignty of Irān, apart from the blessedness of ordeal, the accomplishment of other Avestic rites, the great power over the sacred fires, and many other religious observances which were connected with the disciples of Zaratūst.

3. Even after the devastation which happened owing to Alexander, those who were rulers after him brought back much to the collection from a scattered state¹; and there are some who have ordered the keeping of it in the treasury of Shapān ².

4. Likewise there is to be brought forward what there is concerning the names of rulers and high-priests, such as arrive for it at times and periods, which are each consecutive, as organizers of the religion and the world; also of the tyrant or apostate, who is manifest at various periods, for the disturbance of the religion and monarchy and the penance of the world, with the coming of the penitential one.

¹ Referring to king Valkhas the Aškānian (probably Vologeses I, see S. B. E., vol. xxxvii, p. 413); possibly also to Ardashīr Pāpakān.

² So here, but usually written Shapīgān, and sometimes Shapīgān. It was no doubt a royal treasury, and Dk. V, iii, 4, calls it so, but uses the words gangō-i khūdāyān, in which Gāmāsp is said to have deposited the Avesta and Zand written in gold upon ox-hides. If Shapīgān be a corruption of shāyagān, 'royal,' it is singular that some copyist has not corrected the spelling.
5. *Such* as Vohúmanô, son of Spent-dâd, of the rulers, about whom it says even this in the Avesta, that *he is* Vohúmanô, the just, who is the most efficient of the assembly of Mazda-worshippers. 6. And Sênôv of the high-priests, as about him it says even this: 'The religion becomes a hundred years *old* when Sênôv is born, and two hundred years when he passes away; he was also the first Mazda-worshipper with a life of a hundred *years*, and who walks forth upon this earth with a hundred disciples.'

7. Also Alexander of the devastators, as it says even this of him in revelation, that in those three winters, which are of like purpose (hām-ayāzakād), that Aeshm would set up a deadly king in the impenitent world, who is the evil-destined Alexander.

8. And of the high-priests are Arezvâk, the interpretation of whose name is 'the pure word;' Srûtvôk-spâdâk, the interpretation of whose name is 'the propitious recitation;' Zrayang, hau, the interpretation of whose name is 'the ocean existence;' and Spentô-khratvau, the interpretation of

---

1. Av. Spentô-dâta of Yt. XIII, 103, a son of Vīstāsp, with whom Avesta dynastic history ends. He was the Persian Isfendiyār, and his son Vohúmanô is unknown to the Avesta. The Kîtradād Nask (Dk. VIII, xiii, 18) mentions a 'Namûn, son of Spent-shêd,' which probably stands for 'Vohúmanô, son of Spent-dâd,' but this appears to have been in a Pahlavi supplement compiled in Sasanian times. He is also mentioned in Bd. XXXIV, 8, a chapter 'about the computation of years by the Arabs,' according to the Irânian Bundahis.

2. Av. Saêna of Yt. XIII, 97, where the last clause of the passage here translated from the Avesta occurs. Compare Zs. XXIII, 11.

3. Not in the extant Avesta.

4. The demon of Wrath.


6. These two names are written in their Av. gen. forms, as they occur in Yt. XIII, 115.
whose name is 'the propitious wisdom.' 9. Because it says even this about them, namely: 'I mention thy manifestation, and also the tokens of its publicity when this religion of thy Mazda-worshippers becomes four hundred years old\(^1\); in this law benightedness (lēlyāth) arises, and the embodied existences see the manifestation through calculation of the planets and also the stars; and whoever, too, are mine are so for a century, through the average opinion of thirty medium winters for a man\(^2\); and the righteous Arezvāk and those three others are they of the most righteous existences, over whom they are the most masterly and most authoritative in that time.' 10. And this, too, that they who glorify the religion of the Mazda-worshippers in the fifth and sixth centuries are they; and no persons save their souls, except those who remain for the arrival of the four\(^3\) interpretations that arise through the authority of these four individuals, Arezvāk, Srûtô-spádhau\(^4\), Zrayang,hau, and Spentô-khratvâu who, all four of them, seek their thoughts, words, and deeds in the sacred text (mânsar).

11. Also Rashn-rêsh\(^5\) is the apostate of that

---

\(^1\) If the chronology in Bd. XXXIV, 7, 8 were correct, the interval between the first revelation of the religion and the death of Alexander would be 272 years, and this would make the 400th year of the religion coincide with b. c. 195.

\(^2\) That is, for a generation. The meaning appears to be, that these four successive high-priests insure the continuance of orthodox religion for more than a century, or well into the sixth century of the religion, as mentioned in § 10.

\(^3\) The MS. has the cipher for 'three,' by mistake.

\(^4\) Here written in Avesta characters.

\(^5\) In Dk. III, cxcviii, 2, this apostate is said to have been an
CHAPTER VII, 9–14.

85
time, as some one\(^1\) says unto Rashn, one of the sacred beings, and about many besides this one, thus: 'All who are creatures of the beneficent spirit are distressed by their persecution, but put trust in those men, Aresvâk and those three others.'

12. And of the organizers of the period is Artakhshatar\(^2\), son of Pâpâk, as it says even this about him, namely: 'Which is that ruler who is powerful, more striving than the Kayâns, and mighty, an embodiment of the sacred commandments and awfully armed; in whose abode Aharîsvang\(^4\), the virtuous and radiant, walks forth in maiden form, beneficent and very strong, well-formed, high-girded, and truthful, of illustrious race and noble? 13. Whoever it is that, on the occurrence of strife, seeks prosperity for himself with his own arm; whoever it is that, on the occurrence of strife, encounters the enemies with his own arm.'

14. Tanvasar\(^5\) is also for his assistance, as it says

associate (ham-pâtgar) of the Christian ecclesiastic Akvân, and yells out ten admonitions contradicting those of the righteous Sênôv who is mentioned in § 6 (see Peshotan's edition, vol. v, pp. 239, 311). It does not follow that he was a contemporary of Sênôv, and here he seems to be placed fully two centuries later.

1 Probably Âûhmâzdzâd.

2 The founder of the Sásânian dynasty, who reigned as king of the kings of Persia, A.D. 226–241.

3 Most of these qualities are applied to the angel Srôsh, the personification of obedience (see Yas. LVII, 1); also to Kâvi Vîstâspa and Karsha, son of Zbauvant, in Yt. XIII, 99, 106.

4 Av. Ashîs vanguhi, ‘good rectitude,’ personified as a female angel; her description is given in Yt. XIII, 107, and is similar to that of Anâhita in Yt. V, 64.

5 So spelt here and in §§ 17, 18, thrice in all; it is also thrice spelt Tansar, in Dk. III, last chapter, 7; IV, 25, 25, and this mis-spelling has led to the mis-pronunciation Tôsar. It appears, however, that Tanvasar is a transposition of Tanvars, 'hairy-
this, too, about them: 'Zaratúst asked again thus: "Who is he who is the most salutary for a country, which the demons have exhausted of everything virtuous, over which his authority is brought and which is wicked and teaching falsehood?" 15. Aû- harmazo spoke thus: "An autocrat (sástár), to cure a country, who has not gone mad (that is, he does not annoy the good) and is well-directing (that is, he gives virtuous commands), who is also of noble race, and likewise a priest who is acquainted with war, of a famous province, and righteous, are most salutary for that country. 16. And I tell thee this, that the apostasy of destruction is just like the four-legged wolf which the world gives up to running astray (vârâtâk-takhshisnâh) (that is, owing to its action they are leading it off as astray; which is so that even he who is not opulent is rendered sickly, that they (the apostates) may take away his things by the hand of the assassin (khûnâyân); and they shall lead the world, the dwelling for his residence, into wandering. 17. But that wicked (avârûnô) strife descended upon that country, besides that wicked demon-worship, besides that wicked slander; and not even that wicked strife, nor that wicked demon-worship, nor that wicked slander, is dissipated from bodied,' because we are told that Tansar, or Tanvasar, was so called on account of all his limbs being covered with hair (vars). This statement occurs in the introduction to Tanvasar's letter to Gushnaspshâh (Ar. Gasnasf-shâh), king of Padashkhvârgar (Ar. Farshvâdgar) and Tabaristân; and is made on the authority of an old Pahlavi copyist, Bahrâm Khûrzâd, whose Pahlavi was translated into Arabic by Ibn al-Muqaffa in the middle of the eighth century, and that into Persian early in the thirteenth century (see Darmesteter's edition in Journal Asiatique for 1894, pp. 185-250, 502-555).
that country until the time when they attach the grant of approval to him, the spiritual leader, the eloquent (pûr-gûftâr), truthful-speaking, and righteous Tanvasar. 18. And it is when they grant approval to the spiritual leader, the truthful speaker of eloquence, the righteous Tanvasar, that those of the country obtain redress (bêshâzagânth) when they seek it, and no deviation (anâyûlnakôîh) from the religion of Zaratûst.”’

19. As to the nature of the questions and statements of the organizer of the religion, Ætûrpâd¹ son of Mâraspend, about the connection of the glory with the race, it also says this, that ‘though righteousness may arise from the statements and prosperity of the Tûrânians when extracted by questions, it is said that its acceptance occurs there through complete mindfulness²; they benefit the embodied world of righteousness, and produce distress for the fiend; in like manner, they rely upon Vohûmanô, and Zaratûst is their delight through the report of the birth of Zaratûst from us who are archangels. 20. This liberality for thee is from us who are archangels, and Ætûrpâd, the very best well-destined man arose; and this, too, do thou say about him, that it is the steel age in which that man, the organizer of development and organizer of righteousness, Ætûrpâd son of Mâraspend, of the convocation, begets Avarethrabau³.’

¹ A high-priest who was prime minister of king Shahpûhar II (A.D. 309–379). He is often mentioned in Pahlavi writings, but in the Avesta he is only alluded to, apparently, by the title Râstarevaghent in Yt. XIII, 106.
² A translation of Av. spenta-ârmaiti, the archangel Spen-dârmad.
³ So written, all three times in Pâzand. He is the Avarethra-
21. This Avarethrabau, too, is an organizer whose righteous guardian spirit we reverence, and in memory of Mânûskîhar, the well-destined, and a progenitor of Âtûrpâd\(^1\), it says that 'only from him comes Avarethrabau;' and then also arises this one of the adversaries of the religion, the apostate of apostates, whom they have even called the Mazdag-like (Mazdagît-g-îk)\(^2\). 22. As it says this, too, about them, namely: 'This religion of mine thou dost survey with thoughts of spiritual life, thou dost very thoroughly inspect it, O Zarâtûst! when many, aware of apostates, call the performance of righteousness and even the priesthood innocence, and few are frank and practising it.' 23. In the revelation of the Mazda-worshippers is this, namely: 'Thoroughly look into revelation, and seek a remedy for them and any whatever of them who have become disturbing in the embodied existence, and uncaptivated by the orthodox (â-yîn-a ûmûnd) righteousness which is owing to the perfect existences; and so they divide the religion of the Mazda-worshippers through division of race, they speak regarding the action of their own followers, and give the endowment to their own. 24. They grant supplies of food, so that they may say the food is proportional to the hunger; they speak of procreation, and say that they say lineage is through the mothers; and they approve of wolfishness, so that they would act something like

bangh, son of Râstare-vaghent of Yî. XIII, 106, better known as Zarâtûst, son of Âtûrpâd in his old age, for whom the Andar'z-î Átûrpâd-î Mâraspendân was written.

\(^1\) Whose pedigree is traced back to Mânûskîhar in Bd. XXXIII, 3.

\(^2\) Probably some disciple of Mânih, the heretic who had been put to death A.D. 276–7. Mazdag was put to death A.D. 528. See S.B.E., vol. xxxvii, pp. 257 n, 278 n.
wolves in the performance of gratifying their desires, like that of the wolf's progeny behind the mother. 25. Moreover, they form their lineage through the mothers; buying their women as sheep, they shall carry off for profit even that son or brother who is the progeny, those that we have produced for your companionship; you are not predominant, but have remained in companionship; you do not even believe them, but you do not establish an ordeal, although it is evident that you will be acquitted; they lie even to their children, so that the advance of the promise-breaker is through them, and even in their own persons.

26. Here it speaks about the organization of the religion by the glorified 2 Khūsrō, son of Kavad, thus: 'Upon their lingering behind, a man is produced who is righteous, the Glorified one, an approver (khənTdâr) of speech who is wise, whom the convocation, on hearing the words that he utters, speaks of as a high-priest; that is when he gives out penance (srōshīgīth), so that he may effect the punishment of sinners. 27. The constant outpouring of perplexity (pēk šhãrdan) by the verters is the fear of that hero, as regards that

---

1 This quotation, from a Pahlavi version of an Avesta text, would probably be very applicable to the state of the Persian people at many periods in the fourth and fifth centuries, when heresy was prevalent and orthodox Zoroastrianism was by no means universal. Some of the evils mentioned are inseparable from slavery at all times.

2 Literally 'immortal-souled,' Anōshak-rūbân, the usual title of king Khūsrō I, who reigned a.d. 531–578. Before he became king, a.d. 528 or 529, he had summoned an assembly of priests to condemn the heretic Mazdag, when the last important revision of the Pahlavi versions of the Avesta probably took place (see Byt. I, 6–8, and Nöldeke's Gesch. der Sas. pp. 463–466).
convocation, when he casts *them forth* by expulsion from the vicinity, so that he may make *them* extinguished very quickly; owing to that, they, *whose* producer is even he who is a person destroying the righteous man, become gloomy on account of the Glorified one, through *his* smiting the spiritual life of apostasy; *just as* now, when he who is gloomy, *and* of scattered intellect, is gloomy owing to you *of* the Spitâmas.' 28. This, too, it states, namely: 'In every way, I tell thee, *O* Zaratûst of the Spitâmas! that their time is mistrustful (*avâvar*) as to him who is an open friend, *and* most deceitful both *to* the wicked and the righteous; the Glorified one is a controller (*ayûkhtâr*) exalting the creatures, *and* whoever is possessing the creatures of the righteous *ones*, so that he remains again at work in the doings of the Glorified one, is *he* who is a combiner *of* the actions *and* an utterer of the true replies *of* that Glorified one.'

29. And about the occurrence of a symptom of the devastators of the sovereignty *and* religion of the country of Irân one wonder, which is associated with the religion, is even this *which* it mentions thus: 'Thereupon, when the first symptom of a ravager *of* the country occurs, *O* righteous Zaratûst! then the more aggressive and more unmerciful *in* malice becomes the tyrant of the country, and through him, too, they ravage (*rêshênd*) the house, through him the village, through him the community, through him the province, *and* through him even the whole *of* that manifestation *in* the country *of* any teaching whatever that occurs *through* the ravager *of* the country; and so the country should

---

1 Of the good spirits.
keep a man who is observant and learned on the watch, because information is in his mind. 30. Thereupon, when the second symptom of a ravager of the country occurs, &c.\(^1\)

31. Thereupon, when the third symptom of a ravager of the country occurs, the priestly people are disturbing the tradition, so that they speak nothing wisely; it is even on this account they do not accept them, and it is not when one speaks truly that the ravager of the country believes them, and through him, too, they ravage the house, through him the village, through him the community, through him the province, and through him even the whole of that manifestation in the country of any teaching whatever that occurs through the ravager of the country; and so, too, the country should keep a man who is observant and learned on the watch, because information is in his mind. 32. Thereupon, when the fourth symptom of a ravager of the country occurs, it upsets the replenishment of the fires, and upsets those men of the righteous, so that they shall not undertake the care of them; and thus they shall not convey the holy-water to him who is a priestly authority, so that they may not produce the seizing upon the stipend of the priestly authorities by him who is the ravager of the country; through him, too, they ravage the house, through him the village, through him the community, through him the province, and through him even the whole of that

\(^1\) The whole of this section is omitted in the old MS., evidently by mistake. Perhaps the second symptom of devastation was connected with the evil deeds of the warrior class, but this is very uncertain. Passages of four or five words are also omitted by the MS. in §§ 31, 32.
manifestation in the country of any teaching whatever that occurs through the ravager of the country; and so, too, the country should keep a man who is observant and learned on the watch, because information is in his mind.'

33. About the collapse of the sovereignty of Irân, it also states this, namely: 'That very villain (mar), O Zarâtûst! brings those provinces on to running astray, so that he may make those quite dissoever which constitute the existence of that powerful sovereignty; and then he is a thorough assailant of the righteous, then he is an assailant of the righteous with eagerness. 34. That same deadly one (mar), O Zarâtûst! does not continue living long afterwards; moreover his offspring disappear (that is, they perish utterly); but his soul falls to the bottom of the gloomy existence which is horrible hell, and upon their bodies every kind of unseemly unhappiness comes from themselves, owing to their own actions when they give approval to the imprisonment of a guardian of spiritual affairs who is eloquent, true-speaking, and righteous. 35. Against that deadly one he contends, O Zarâtûst! for the spiritual lordship and priestly authority that I approve as good for the whole embodied existence; also against the preparation of a decree to produce evil decisions, and against the dismissal of litigants, whether heterodox or orthodox, who are of a family of serfs of a far-situated village and are making petitions.'

36. 'And as to the land, too, over which he wanders, the evil spirit utterly devastates their country through pestilence and other misery; and, moreover, strife which is tormenting falls upon that
country, besides demon-worship which is iniquitous, and besides slander which is iniquitous. 37. And the strife which is iniquitous is not to be dissipated (əpāsə-aɪtənə) from that country, nor the demon-worshippers who are iniquitous, nor the slander which is iniquitous, before the time when they give approval to him, to the priest who is a guardian of spiritual affairs, who is eloquent, true-speaking, and righteous; and it is when they give him approval, that they obtain healthfulness for their country when they pray for it, and not irregularly from him, O Zarathusting!

38. And this which is recounted is a statement that is execrated (nafrtg-aitō) by many, details from the Avesta as to occurrences that will arise after Vistasp until the dispersion (angāvisnō) of the sovereignty of Irān from the country of Irān; it is also declared that this which is written happened to the knowledge of those of the world. 39. This, too, is about the evidence of the above:—'And if this which is declared from the Avesta, as to what happens after Kal-Vistasp until the end of the sovereignty of Irān, should not have happened, and it being the pre-eminence of the Avesta which really became this present treasure, it thereby ensues, owing to its position in that former, and the manifest absence of the destruction of those rulers and high-priests from Vistasp onwards in this latter, that it could not be connected with us.'

---

1 The above declaration from the Avesta.
2 The present Avesta itself.
3 Meaning perhaps that, for some good reason, it could not be communicated to us in the extant Avesta. If § 39 be not a later addition to this chapter, it implies that the prophetic quotations from the Avesta, regarding the history of the religion after the time,
CHAPTER VIII.

1. About the marvellousness which is manifested and is openly specified after the collapsing of the sovereignty of Irân and the country of Irân; also the end of the millennium of Zarâtûst and the arrival of Aûshêdar the descendant of Zarâtûst.

2. There is this marvellousness, really overthrowing the blessedness of the knowledge of former government, revealed by the Avesta about the ninth and tenth centuries, that which is an indicator of circumstances (aêdûnôîh) now visible, such as the dispersion of the sovereignty of Irân from the country of Irân, the disturbance of just law and custom, the predominance of those with dishevelled hair, and the haughty profession of ecclesiastics. Also the collection and even connection of all their four systems of belief (vâvari-hastanô) to-

of Vîstâsp, were no more extant in the Avesta, when the Dînkard was compiled, than they are now.

1 The contents of Chaps. VII–XI have some connection with the following summary in Dk. VIII, xiv, 11, 12:—'And about the nature of the advancement of the people of the period, the separation of centuries and millenniums, and the signs, wonders, and perplexity which are manifested in the world at the end of each millennium in the world. Also as to the birth and arrival of Aûshêdar, son of Zarâtûst, at the end of the first millennium, and a report of him and his time, and of the many destroyers of the organizers of the period between Zarâtûst's millennium and the coming of Aûshêdar.'

2 This meaning for vîgârdô-vars is chiefly based upon the use of vîgârd in AV. XXXIV, 5, for a woman's hair being 'combed.' These invaders of Irân from the east, at the end of the first millennium of the religion, are mentioned in Byt. II, 22, 24, 28; III, 1, 6, 13. They are called 'Turkish demons' in § 47.

3 The Byzantine Christians.

4 Zoroastrianism, Muhammedanism, Christianity, and either Judaism or Idolatry.
gether for the upper rank; the coming of one working with the sacred beings to the inferior, the transient, and the captive of the period; and the dispersion and downfall of dependent and public men in their time.

4. The disappearance of a disposition for wisdom from the foreigners in the countries of Irân, which is an indication of shame at the truth of the religion, and at the praise, peace, liberality, and other goodness whose provision has lodgement in a disposition for wisdom. 5. Also the abundance of the decisions of apostasy, the falsehood, deceit, slander, quarrelleness, fraudulence, ingratitude, discord, stinginess, and other vileness whose real connection is a disposition to devour, neglecting heedfulness for the archangels of fire, water, and worldly existence. 6. The oppressiveness of infidelity and idol-worship, the scarcity of freedom, the extreme predominance of avarice in the individuals (tanô) of mankind, the plenitude of different opinions about witchcraft, and the much inclination of many for paralyzing the religion of the sacred beings.

7. The annihilation of the sovereignty of mankind one over the other, the desolation of localities and settlements by severe actual distress, and the evil foreign potentates who are, one after the other, scattering the valiant; the destruction among cattle and the defilement of the spirit of enjoyment, owing to the lodgement of lamentation and weeping in the countries of Irân, the clamour of the demon-worshipper in the country, and the unobtainable stature, non-existent strength, blighted destiny, and short

---

1 Ashavahistô, Khûrdad, and Spendarmad.
life of mankind. 8. Also the abundance of ordinances (āyinō) of various descriptions, the approval of the apostate among tyrants and the non-approval of the Zoti who is well-disposed and wise, the coming of the Zoti to want, and all the other adversity, disruption, and running astray which are overpowering even in districts and localities of the countries of Irân.

9. The maintenance of no ritual (apandith) of the religion of the sacred beings; the weakness, suffering, and evil habits of those of the good religion; the lamentation and recantation (khūstūkīh) of the upholders of the religion; and the wickedness and extermination of good works in most of the countries of Irân. 10. Also much other misery in these two centuries is recounted in the Avesta, which passed away with them and is also now so visible therein, and manifestly occurs in them.

11. This, too, is a statement (nisang-ī) as to them, which revelation mentions thus: 'That is the age mingled with iron (that is, from every side they perceive it is of iron) in which they bring forth into life him who is a sturdy praying apostate. 12. This is their sturdiness, that their approval is unobservant of both doctrines (ānakō); and this is their praying, that whenever it is possible for them they shall cause misery to others; also when an old man publicly advances into a crowd (galakō) of youths, owing to the evil times in which that man who is learned is born, they are unfriendly to him (that is, they are no friends of the high-priests of the priestly assembly). 13. They are freely speaking (that is,

1 Or it may be hēnō, 'squadrons.'
2 The chief officiating priest in religious ceremonies.
they utter phrases smoothly), they are wicked and are fully maliciously talking, so that they shall make the statements of priests and high-priests useless; they also tear asunder the spiritual lordship and priestly authority, and shall bring the ruler and priestly authority into evil behaviour as vicious, but they bring together those who are singular. 14. Anything they say is always mischief (agtha), and that district which had a judge they cast into the smiting precinct, into hell; it is misery without any intermission they shall inflict therein, till they attain unto damnation (darvanthi) through the recitation they persevere in, both he who is the evil progeny disseminated by the apostate and he who is the villainous wolf full of disaster and full of depravity.'

15. 'Here below they fight, the friend with him who is a friend, they also defraud (ztvend) him of his own work (that is, whenever it is possible for them, they shall seize upon his property), and they give it to him from whom they obtain prosperity in return; if not, they seek him who is acting as a confederate (nishin-gun), and they make that other one defraud the poor man (so that they shall seize upon his property); they also cheat him when he shall make complaint. 16. I shall not again produce such for thee, no friend here for him who is a friend, no brother for him who is a brother, no son for him who is a father, nor yet a father for him who is a son; admonished, but not convinced, they become the abode of the will of the place, so that they subsist in every single place where it is necessary for them to be, in each that is necessary for them they march on together, and on the way they reflect upon the path of blessedness and the
manifold learning they utter owing to knowledge of me."

17. 'These three, our increase, learning, and reward, we fully understand through the ascendancy of him who is ignoble, and through the downfall of him who is noble and superior to him of little thorough instruction who, in every thing, will be at the foot of the tyrant. 18. Thinking of a priest one becomes spiritual, thinking of a tyrant one becomes a Kavg; a demon in disposition is an incipient demon, a Kavg in disposition is himself attracted towards a youth.'

19. Then, when character and wisdom recede from the countries of Irán (that is, they depart), so that destitution and also winter, produced by demons who are worshiping the demon, rush together from the vicinity of disaster (võighn) on to the countries of Irán, where even rain becomes scanty and pestilence is secretly advancing and deceiving, so that deaths become numerous; thus even he of perverted wisdom, who is wicked, and the apostate also, who is unrighteous, rush together in companionship. 20. As what one says they all exclaim thus: 'Consume and destroy, O ruler! for it is to be consumed and destroyed by thee; destroy even the fire, consume even as food those who are the protection of the association enforcing religious obedience, and those leading on the poor man of the righteous dispensation by their guidance.' 21. So that they shall make him thoroughly detached and smite him;

---

1 So far, this statement (§§ 11–16) seems to be ascribed to Aûharmad; but what follows (§§ 17, 18, 20) appears to represent the sentiments of some IrâniOTS of those later times.

2 See Chap. II, 9 n.
likewise wisdom is the wealth they bring him, and it is when property is being carried off by them, that the wisdom conveyed by them arises.

22. 'And in that age, O righteous one of the Spîtâmas! the coming of my desire is not purely for thee, nor is a thorough belief of the departure of life, so that the bringing and conducting of a speaker of promises (mitragôv) is not necessary; those of the perfect apostate injure this discourse of thine, the Avesta and Zand, so that they shall make it thoroughly weak; and those of the perfect apostate harass their own souls, for love of the wealth which he produced.'

23. And about the ninth and tenth centuries this also it says, that, 'as that age proceeds, this is what occurs, O Zarâtûst of the Spîtâmas! when many apostates utter the righteousness of priestly instruction and authority, which is wickedness towards me, they cause begging for water, they wither vegetation, and they put down all excellence which is due to the manifestation of righteousness.'

24. Again Zarâtûst enquired of him thus: 'What do they so produce by that, O Aûharmazd! when they cause begging for water, they wither vegetation, and they put down all excellence due to the manifestation of righteousness?' 25. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'They so produce those things among them, O Zarâtûst! when they mention a greater reward for bantlings and relations than that of their own souls (that is, they talk more concerning their allowance, where it is that for their own). 26. Moreover, they give to the Kîgs and Karaps, for some repute with the shepherd people of the husbandman, and with the swift-horsed people of the warrior, as
though they would provide us\textsuperscript{1} here below with a large share of meat, that they would make our privilege, just as we\textsuperscript{1} here supply him with meat whom we render greatly precious. 27. The property of even a wicked man here below, O Zarat\textsuperscript{ú}st! in the average opinion among the disorganized (an\textsuperscript{á}ra-st\textsuperscript{án}ô) is a dignified provision (that is, we form a strong opinion, the approval of which is more to be asserted as being the opinion of a poor righteous man, about a worthy righteous man whose manifest righteousness is a homage (fran\textsuperscript{âm}isnô) to duty and good works).

28. Again he enquired of him thus: 'Is there so perfect a manifestation here below, in the age of the worldly existence of the religion of the Mazda-worshippers (that is, is there a lodgement of the religion of the Mazda-worshippers in any one)\textsuperscript{2}? 29. And A\textsuperscript{ú}harmazd spoke thus: 'It is so, among those men of mine, O Zarat\textsuperscript{ú}st! for here below there are priests who are eloquent, and they, too, are men voluble and requisite in the embodied existence, all-beneficent and producing the destruction of harm and the wizard; the people of the wicked tyrant say also regarding them, that, excepting thee, O Zarat\textsuperscript{ú}st! they rightly practise righteousness more largely, more powerfully, and more volubly. 30. Blind are those of the fiend, who are consulting with thee and are unaware of the tyrant; and observant are also those of the fiend who consult with them and think of their intelligence, and oppose the imbecile (an\textsuperscript{á}-k\textsuperscript{ás}îh-a\textsuperscript{û}mônd) apostate who is near them, so that

\textsuperscript{1} The archangels.

\textsuperscript{2} Reading minam, instead of madam which is unintelligible here.
they say¹ this, namely: "As to this which thou tellest us, it is evidently not so as thou sayest," of which they speak thus: "This duty of thy man is not mine (that is, it is not necessary for me to perform) nor thine (that is, it is not necessary even for thee to perform), because it is not this which is righteousness (that is, not a good work)." 31. For this one is produced for these words and thoughts of thine, of whom thou, too, art aware, he who is whatever is here below of Aûshêdar² of thoughtful controversy, O Zaratûst of the Spitâmas! for he brings into notice, through the intermingling of his own soul, him who is righteous, or has not become so.'

32. This, too, he says, namely: 'Of those, O Zaratûst of the Spitâmas! who come in the ninth and tenth centuries, I tell thee that they are of the fiend of Greed (Âzî); it is in her womb that they are to be fashioned, they who assist those who would be vicious, through pre-eminence in leadership, or through excellence in subserviency.'

33. And this, too, it says about them: 'Those men are much to be destroyed;' so it is said by Aûharmazd that 'these who are righteous, who carry away a corpse in this world, distress their fire, according to every high-priest³, and even long-flowing water; their bodies, which are really cesspools⁴ of a terrible character, become very assisting for the tormentors whose corpses are grievously wicked. 34. Concerning them I tell thee, O Zara-

¹ To the apostate.
³ Reading dastûr, instead of vastûr.
⁴ Pahl. mayâ-vakhdûn = Pers. âb-gîr.
tūst of the Spitāmas! that, in the ninth and tenth centuries, there come those who are the brood of the fiend and the wound-producer (reshgār)\(^1\) of the evil spirit; even one of them is more to be destroyed than ten demon-worshippers\(^2\); they also produce extermination for these who are mine, for these of my religion, whom they call a provision for destruction (that is, when it is possible to live in our way, and ours are wicked, they diminish in superiority).

35. Even the iniquity that they shall commit in leadership and subserviency, the sin which is smiting thee, they call a trifle (khalakō), \(O\) pure one of the Spitāmas! and the smiter, they say, is \(he\) whom these of thy religion of Mazda-worshippers smite. 36. Besides thee, \(O\) Zaratūst! they distress those duties, too, which are to be acquired by thy people (lagānō); they think scornfully of this ceremonial of thine, scornfully of thy worship, \(O\) Zaratūst! and they think scornfully of both the two blessed utterances\(^3\), the Avesta and Zand, which were proclaimed to thee by me who am the most propitious of spirits.

37. They foster villainous outrage, and they say the best work for mankind is immoderate fighting whose joyfulness is due to actions that are villainous; those, too, that they exterminate are the existences due to the spirits, they exterminate their own souls, they exterminate the embodied existences of the world; and they produce lamentation for the soul, and even the religion, as regards what is the mode of controlling orthodox people together with the iniquitous of the same period.'

38. And this, too, it says, that Zaratūst enquired

---

\(^{1}\) Or it may be riyağār, 'hypocrite.'

\(^{2}\) Or 'idolators.'

\(^{3}\) Pahl. vāfrīgānīh = Av. urvātā.
of Aûharmazd thus: 'So what shall we prescribe for those who are not capable, through being poor (that is, they have no means), nor have they troops, nor a protector over them, and they have many persecutors?' 39. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'The strong-minded \(^1\) man, through understanding, is a token of the development of those who, not being in the army, are capable; their persecutors also are many, and the passing over of authority is owing to the iniquitous of the same period.'

40. This, too, it says, that Zaratûst enquired thus: 'Is he, O Aûharmazd! who is a Kał or a Karap, or he who is a most evil ruler in authority, mingled again with the good?' 41. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'Even he \(^2\).'

42. Zaratûst also enquired thus: 'Is he, too, O Aûharmazd! who is one of those of the good sovereignty, mingled again with the good; or these, such as the Kalsar and Khâkân?\(^3\)' 43. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'Even that former, O Zaratûst!'

44. About the same iniquitous\(^4\) this, too, he says, namely: 'When they are aware and understand about the sayings (galimakô) due to righteousness, they are pleased, so that a bribe seems better to them than duty and good works; they love the darkness rather than light, the existence they love

---

\(^1\) Assuming that tôshtô-mînisnô is a miswriting of toshînô-mînisnô.

\(^2\) That is, after expiating his misdeeds by his allotted punishment. The last thirteen Pahlavi words of §§ 42, 43 are also added here by mistake in the MS.

\(^3\) The Byzantine emperor and the sovereign Khân of the invaders from the east.

\(^4\) Mentioned in §§ 37, 39.
is the worst existence rather than the best existence, and they promote difficulty. 45. Concerning them, too, I tell thee that they are more to be destroyed than the leaping (shaspo) serpent which is like a wolf or a lion, and they ever advance in malice and persecution from that time till when that man arrives who is Kitrô-mêhônô 1 the righteous, with the victorious club. 46. He has marched with fifty triplets of men 2 who are disciples, powerful and tall, looking after duties and ordinances, wide-shouldered, stout-armed, and very hairy (kabed-milîh), so that their appearance is rough and of a black colour 3, wherefore the demon and the iniquity proceeding from him fear them. 47. He also smites the evil spirit, together with his creatures; and those three manifest branches, that worship the fiend with simultaneous worship, are really these who march for eminent service on horses, even the Turkish demons with dishevelled hair, the Arab, and also Shedaspô 4 the ecclesiastical Arûman.

1 So spelt here, but in Dk. IX, xli, 6, it is Kitrâg-mêhônô, and other slight variations occur in the best MSS. of Bd. XX, 7, 31; XXIX, 5; Byt. III, 25, 26; Dd. XC, 3; but they can all be traced to an original Kitrô-mêhan = Av. Kithrô-maêthanem, 'of the racial home,' a title applied both to the river and the immortal sacerdotal ruler of Kangdes. The latter is supposed to be Pêshyôtanô, a son of king Vistasp, who is expected to restore religious rites in Irân and throughout the world.
2 With 150 disciples, as stated in Byt. III, 27, 29, 42. Here it is written levat 50 3-gabrâân.
3 Byt. III, 27, 29, 42, states that they wear black marten fur.
4 In Byt. III, 3, 5, 8, 21, this name is written Shedaspf which can also be read Shedasf, and is probably a corrupt pronunciation of the name of some Byzantine emperor or general (such as Theodosius) who had signally defeated the Persians some time in the fifth to seventh century, in which period Zaratûst's millennium probably ended.
48. 'And he has then to attract men, contented and discontented, mostly through the incentive of duty; he who is not contented (that is, not agreeing with what he says) contentedly pays respect to him, O Zarâtûst! (so that he brings him into the religion). 49. Likewise, through that club, he makes one press in the same manner; so that one is distressed by his hand to hold others in contempt, through the valiant arm and through the youthful bodily organs. 50. And he attaches power and triumph to his religion of Aûhârmazd, and through that power and triumph they become ever respected thenceforth, when those arrive who are the sons of Zarâtûst, who shall produce the renovation in an existence undecaying and immortal, hungerless and thirstless, the long-continued perpetuity including all.'

51. And about the separation (bûrînakô) of the ten centuries in the one millennium of Zarâtûst, and the tidings of Aûshêdar¹, son of Zarâtûst, it says also this, namely: 'When that century fully elapses which is the first of the religion of the Mazda-worshippers, from the time when Zarâtûst came forward to his conference, what is the separation of this first century?' 52. And Aûhârmazd spoke thus: 'The sun conceals itself.' 53. 'What is the separation after the second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, or tenth century?' 54. And Aûhârmazd spoke thus: 'The sun conceals itself.'

55. Then, when thirty winters of the tenth century are unelapsed (that is, thirty winters are remaining) a maiden, who is Shemig-abû², walks up

¹ See Chap. I, 42.
² 'Having a renowned father,' the Zvâris of Av. Srûtad-fedhri, Yt. XIII, 141.
to the water; she that is the mother of that famous Aûshêdar, and her former lineage is from Vôhûrôkô-l Frahânyân¹ in the family of Îsadvâstar, the son of Zaratûst that is brought forth by Arang. 56. Then she sits in that water and drinks it, and she kindles in a high degree those germs which were the third of the last that the righteous Zaratûst was dropping forth originally, and they introduce that son whose name is the Developer of Righteousness². 57. Though she is fifteen years old, the girl (kanîg) has not before that associated with men³; nor afterwards, when she becomes pregnant, has she done so before the time when she gives birth.

58. When that man becomes thirty years old, the sun stands still in the zenith (bâlistô) of the sky for the duration of ten days and ten nights, and it arrives again at that place where it was first appointed by allotment, where it occupies one finger-breadth out of the four finger-breadths, and it shines over all the regions which are seven. 59. So, too, O Zaratûst! of them themselves, their declaration is thus, that they know that the separation of the millennium, which this religion has heard about by listening, is thus; and of those who do not even then know, that it is something which is different.

60. Then, when that man becomes thirty years old, he confers with the archangels, the good rulers and good providers; on the morrow, in the daylight of the day, it is moreover manifest, when the embodied existence is thus undistressed—without

¹ See Yl. XIII, 97.
² The Pahlavi interpretation of Aûshêdar which is an imperfect transcript of the Av. Ukhshyad-ereta of Yl. XIII, 128.
³ Pahl. 'levatt gabrâânô barâ vepayîdô.'
a Kāl and without a Karap (that is, not deaf and blind to the affairs of the sacred beings), and is to be appropriated (that is, has not made its own self apart from the affairs of the sacred beings), and is produced full of life—that it has become extending (vālān), and remains again great in various places in Atrān-vēg where the good Dāttī
t is.

61. These are the characteristics as regards the two centuries which are the ninth and tenth; the accuracy of what was to come has continued and this has happened, and both are declared as regards the accuracy which is stated on evidence as to what will happen.

Chapter IX.

1. About the marvellousness which is after the end of the millennium of Zaratūst and the arrival of Aūshēdar, until the end of the millennium of Aūshēdar and the arrival of Aūshēdar-māh; and as to tidings of the same period.

2. The marvellousness of Aūshēdar as to birth, glory of person, sayings and actions; the standing of the sun ten days amid the sky; the perishing of the fiend of the four-legged race; the production of a three-spring cloudless influence for vegetation; the weakening of superfluity and destitution; the extreme strengthening of alliance; the gratification due to the good friendship of foreigners; the great increase of the wisdom of religion; and the praise

---

1 See Chap. III, 51, 54; Bd. XX, 13. It is the name of a river.
2 See Chap. VIII, 55-57.
3 Pahl. '3-zaremād an-avargarīh.'
4 See Chap. VIII, 58.
of Aûshêdar's smiting with a serpent-scourge of several kinds in the religion of the Mazda-worshippers.

3. The mightiness of the resources in the fifth century of the same millennium; the manifestation of the wizard Mahrkûs ¹ for seven years, in the year which is reported in all the regions which are seven; the coming on and arrival of the winter of Mahrkûs, the perishing of most of mankind and animals within three winters and in the fourth, through the awfulness of those winters and the witchcraft of Mahrkûs; and the dying away of Mahrkûs of scanty progeny (gasûkô-zahîsno), during the fourth winter, through the Dâhmân Afrîn. ⁴ 4. The opening of the enclosure made by Yîm, the coming of mankind and animals therefrom, and the complete progress of mankind and animals again, arising specially from them.

5. After those winters, the abundant and great increase in the milk of cattle, and the abundant nourishment of mankind by milk; the less distress of body in cattle, the fullness and prosperity of the world, the celebrity of assembled mankind, and the great increase of liberality. ⁶ Also the feebleness

¹ Av. Mahrkûsha of Westergaard's Fragment VIII, 2, who is evidently a wizard or fiend; according to Pahl. Vd. II, 49 (Sp.) the evil winter which was foretold to Yîm is called the winter of Markûs. In later times this name has been understood as Heb. Malkôs, 'autumnal rain;' so the idea of the fatal freezing winter of Mahrkûs, the intender of death, was abandoned for that of the deluging rain of Malkôs, as in Mkh. XXVII, 28. In Dd. XXXVII, 94, both snow and rain are mentioned as produced by Mahrkûs or Markûs (as it is always written in Pahlavi), and in Ñd. IX, 5 only his name is stated. The most complete account of him is given in our text.

² The Afrîn of the Ameshtaspends.
of poverty among mankind, just like what revelation mentions thus: 'Even so he, O Zarathustra! though he be more unfortunate than he who is accepting from him, is like the creator whose bounty of permanent liberality does thus, in the embodied existence, remain in his dwelling.'

7. And this, too, it says, namely: 'When that winter passes away, of which it is said that it is boisterous and destructive\(^1\), then a wild beast, black and wide-travelling, walks up to the Mazda-worshippers, and thus it thinks, that they who worship Mazda will therefore not finally hate us more than him who is their own progeny, the son whom they thus bring up as a Mazda-worshipper here below, in fondness and freedom from malice towards well-yielding cattle.

8. 'Then Ashavahistô calls out to the Mazda-worshippers from the upper region, and thus he speaks: "You are for the worship of Mazda; let no one of you become such a slaughterer of cattle as the slaughterers you have been before. 9. Recommend increase in gifts, recommend neighbourliness in person; are you worshipping Mazda? do you slaughter cattle? do you slaughter those of them which give you assistance, which speak to you thus: 'On account of your helpfulness one tells you that you are worshipping Mazda and you may eat?' I am in neighbourliness before that, until the time when you exclaim: 'Mine are the serpent and toad.'

10. "And you recommend increase, you recommend neighbourliness, and the Mazda-worshippers slaughter cattle, even those of them who give them

\(^1\) The Pahlavi version of Av. 'stakhrahê merêtô zaya' in Westerg. Frag. VIII, 2.
assistance, so that you are worshipping Mazda and you eat; I am in neighbourliness before that, until the time when you exclaim: 'Mine are the serpent and toad.'

11. 'Contentedly the Mazda-worshippers slaughter cattle, contentedly the cattle of the Mazda-worshippers let them butcher, and contented are the cattle when they do not butcher them; contentedly the Mazda-worshippers eat cattle, and contented are the cattle when they eat them. 12. And then, when there are spirits, the slaughterers and whatever they slaughter, the butchers and whatever they butcher, and the eaters and whatever they eat are alike watched by them.'

13. And this, too, it says, namely: 'When that century fully elapses, which is the fifth in the second millennium as regards the religion of the Mazda-worshippers, then of all those who are upon the earth, the existences which are both wicked and righteous, two-thirds in the land of Irân are righteous and one-third wicked; and so likewise the Tûrânians and those who are around Irân remain non-Irânian around Irân; the chief increase in dwellings here below, of those in the embodied existence, remains just as now.'

14. And this, too, it says, namely: 'When that millennium has fully elapsed, which is the first of the religion of the Mazda-worshippers, what is the separation after the first century?' 15. And Aûhar-mazd spoke thus: 'The sun conceals itself.' 16. 'And what is the separation after the second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, or tenth

---

1 Assuming that bûr'zâvând stands for bûrînênd which occurs in § 12.
century? 17. And Aûharmazed spoke thus: 'The sun conceals itself.'

18. Then, when thirty winters of the tenth century are unelapsed (arânakô), a maiden, who is Shapîrabû, walks up to the water; she that is the mother of that good Aûshêdar-mâh, and her former lineage is from Vôhû-rôkô-I Frahânyân in the family of Ísadvâstar, the son of Zaratûst that is brought forth by Arang. 19. Then she sits in that water and drinks it, and she kindles in a high degree those germs which were the second of the last that the righteous Zaratûst was dropping forth originally, and they introduce that son whose name is the Developer of Worship (that is, he augments liberality). 20. Though fifteen years old, the damsel (zihânakô) has not before that associated with men; nor yet afterwards, when she becomes pregnant, has she done so before the time when she gives birth.

21. When that man becomes thirty years old, the sun stands still in the zenith of the sky for the duration of twenty days and nights, and it shines over all the regions which are seven. 22. So, too, the declaration of them themselves is that they know

---

1 'Having a good father,' the Zvâris of Av. Vanghu-fedhri, Yt. XIII, 142.
2 See Chap. I, 42.
3 See Chap. VIII, 55-57.
4 The Pahlavi interpretation of Aûshêdar-mâh which is an imperfect transcript of the Av. Ukhshyad-nemangh of Yt. XIII, 128.
5 Compare the summary in Dk. VIII, xiv, 13, as follows:—'The arrival of Aûshêdar-mâh, son of Zaratûst, at the end of the second millennium; information about him and his time, and the destroyers of the organizers who were within the millennium of Aûshêdar.'
6 The MS. omits a clause here, which occurs in Chap. VIII, 58, possibly by mistake, as part of it is given in Chap. X, 19.
that the separation of the millennium, which this religion has heard about by listening, is even thus; and of those who do not even then know, that it is something which is different.

23. When that man becomes thirty years old, he confers with the archangels, the good rulers and good providers; on the morrow, in the daylight of the day, it is moreover manifest, when the embodied existence is thus undistressed—without a Kai and without a Karap (that is, not blind and not deaf to the affairs of the sacred beings), and is to be appropriated (that is, has not made its own self apart from the affairs of the sacred beings), and is produced full of life—that it has become extending, and is again great in various places in Atrân-vêg where the good Dâtî is.

CHAPTER X.

1. About the marvellousness which is after the end of the millennium of Aûshêdar and the arrival of Aûshêdar-mâh, until the end of the millennium of Aûshêdar-mâh and the arrival of Sôshâns; and as to tidings of the same period.

2. The marvellousness of Aûshêdar-mâh as to birth, glory of person, sayings, and actions; the standing of the sun amid the sky twenty days long; and the increase of the milk of cattle arrives at a maximum (avartûm), just as what it says, that one milks only one mature cow (tôrât az) for a thousand men, and that he brings as much milk as a thousand men require; also the feebleness of

---

1 See Chap. IX, 18–20.  
2 See Chap. IX, 21.
hunger and thirst is just as it says, that by only a single ration one becomes satisfied for three nights, and whoever eats a leg of mutton has plenty for himself for three days and nights. 3. The diminution of decay and extension (vêshth) of life, the increase of humility and peace, and the perfection of liberality and enjoyment in the world.

4. Like this which revelation states, that, when the first ten winters in the last millennium pass away, the Mazda-worshippers then make enquiry together thus: 'Are we really more hairy-headed (sar-vars-ik-tar) than occurred before, owing to the well-yielding cattle, so that food and clothing are less necessary for us? Has affection come to us more completely, owing to those cattle, than it was ours before? Have we grown up less deteriorated in the hair, by old age, than those grown up before? Are the thoughts, words, and deeds of our women and children more instructed than they were before? 5. And has this thing occurred, that he is classed as disqualified who in training a child has become quite retrogressive (pas-ûruzd), and is his penalty arranged? Does the fiend think of the Karap class, and are they utterly destroyed by her through those whose thoughts are most evil, devoid of righteousness, and devoid of a liking for righteousness? 6. Near here, in the disturbance of the existences, does that happen as heard by us from the ancients, when listening to the true proclaimers of the Mazda-worshippers? And now, even when our numbers are so greatly maintaining this dispensation, do we sanctify (aharâynem) righteousness (that is, do we perform duty and good works) more vociferously and more strenuously?'
7. This, too, it says, even that no one passes away in the last millennium, other than those whom they smite with a scaffold weapon, and those who pass away from old age. 8. When fifty-three years of that millennium of his have remained, the sweetness and oiliness in milk and vegetables are so completed that, on account of the freedom of mankind from wanting meat, they shall leave off the eating of meat, and their food becomes milk and vegetables. 9. When three years have remained, they shall leave off even the drinking of milk, and their food and drink become water and vegetables.

10. And in his millennium are the breaking (lānakō) of the fetters of Dahāk, the rousing of Kerēsāspō for the smiting of Dahāk, the arrival of Kai-Khūsrō and his companions for the assistance of Sōshāns in the production of the renovation of the universe, and the provision of most of mankind with the Gāthic disposition and law; also the occurrence of many other wonders and marvels is manifest in that millennium of his.

11. And this, too, it says, namely: 'When that millennium has fully elapsed, which is the second of the religion of the Mazda-worshippers, what is the separation after the first century?' 12. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'The sun conceals itself.' 13. 'And what is the separation after the second,

---

1 Reading pavan dār snesh, as in some modern copies; but the old MS. of 1659 has run the last two words together, so as to produce pavan dār ēgūsh, 'as destitute,' which must be wrong.
2 For details see Byt. III, 55–57; Bd. XXIX, 9; Dd. XXXVII, 97; Dk. IX, xv, 2. It may be noticed that this release of the demoniacal tyrant is expected to follow the triumph of strict vegetarianism.
3 See further Byt. III, 59–61; Bd. XXIX, 7, 8.
4 See Mkh. XXVII, 59–63; LVII, 7; Dd. XXXVI, 3.
third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, or tenth century?' 14. And Aūharmazd spoke thus: ‘The sun conceals itself.’

15. And when thirty winters of the tenth century are unelapsed, that maiden, who is Gōbāk-abū ¹, walks up to the water; she that is the mother of that testifying Sōshāns who is the guide to conveying away the opposition of the destroyer, and her former lineage is from Vōhū-rōkō-I Frahānyân ² in the family of Īsadvāstar, the son of Zaratūst that is brought forth by Arang. 16. ‘That maiden whose title is All-overpowerer is thus all-overpowering, because through giving birth she brings forth him who overpowers all, both the affliction owing to demons, and also that owing to mankind.’ 17. Then she sits in that water, when she is fifteen years old, and it introduces into the girl him ‘whose name is the Triumphant Benefiter, and his title is the Body-maker; such a benefiter as benefits (savīnēdō) the whole embodied existence, and such a body-maker, alike possessing body and possessing life, as petitions about the disturbance of the embodied existences and mankind.’ 18. Not before that has she associated with men; nor yet afterwards, when she becomes pregnant, has she done so before the time when she gives birth ⁵.

¹ ‘Having a testifying father;’ the Pahlavi of Av. Eredad-fedhri, Yt. XIII, 142.
² See Chap. VIII, 55-57.
³ The Pahlavi version of Yt. XIII, 142, latter clause.
⁴ From the Pahlavi version of Yt. XIII, 129.
⁵ Compare the summary in Dk. VIII, xiv, 14, 15, as follows:—
‘The coming and arrival of Sōshāns, son of Zaratūst, at the end of the third millennium, the destroyers of the organizers who were within the millennium of Aūshēdār-māh, the arrival of Sōshāns,
19. When that man becomes thirty years old, the sun stands still in the zenith of the sky for the duration of thirty days and nights, and it arrives again at that place where it was appointed by allotment.

Chapter XI.

1. About the marvellousness which is after the end of the millennium of Aûshêdar-mâh and the arrival of the Triumphant Benefiter, until the end of the fifty-seventh year of Sôshâns and the production of the renovation among the existences.

2. Concerning the marvellousness of Sôshâns as to splendour and glory of person, it says that 'when the coming of the last rotation of those rotations of the seasons of Aûshêdar-mâh occurs, the man Sôshâns is born whose food is spiritual and body sunny (that is, his body is as radiant as the sun);' also this, that 'he looks on all sides with six-eyed power (6-ôîsârîh), and sees the remedy for persecution by the fiend.'

3. This, too, that with him is the triumphant Kayân glory 'which the mighty Frêdûn bore when Aûz-l Dahâk was smitten by him; also Kaî-Khûsrîl was bearing it when the Tûr Frangrâstäyk was smitten by him; also Frangrâstyk bore it when the Drvê Zênigâk was smitten by him; and Kaî-

and information about Sôshâns and his time. Also, as to the renovation of the universe and the future existence, it is declared that they arise in his time.'

1 The date here indicated seems to be about twenty-eight years later than that intended in Chap. X, 15–19.


4 See Chap. I, 39.


6 Av. Drvau Zainigâus, an Arab chieftain who invaded Irán
Vistâsp shall bear it when you fully attract him to righteousness, and through it he shall carry off the fiend from the concerns of the world of righteousness.

4. And this, too, that in fifty-seven of his years there occur the annihilation of the fiendishness of the two-legged race and others, and the subjugation of disease and decrepitude, of death and persecution, and of the original evil of tyranny, apostasy, and depravity; there arise a perpetual verdant growth of vegetation and the primitive gift of joyfulness; and there are seventeen years of vegetable-eating, thirty years of water-drinking, and ten years of spiritual food.

5. And all the splendour, glory, and power, which have arisen in all those possessing splendour, glory, and power, are in him on whom they arrive together and for those who are his, when many inferior human beings are aroused splendid and powerful; and through their power and glory all the troops of the fiend are smitten. 6. And all mankind remain of one accord in the religion of Aûharmâzd, owing to the will of the creator, the command of that apostle, and the resources of his companions.

7. At the end of the fifty-seven years the fiend and Aharman are annihilated, the renovation for the future existence occurs, and the whole of the good creation is provided with purity and perfect

---

1 See Chap. I, 41.
2 From a Pahlavi version of Yt. XIX, 92, 93, with the second and third clauses transposed.
splendour. 8. *Just* as revelation states thus: 'When that millennium *has* fully elapsed, which is the third of the religion of the Mazda-worshippers, that Mazda-worshipper whose name is so Triumphant 1 then marches forward from the water Kanyisâ 2 with a thousand companions and also maidsens of restrained disposition and blindly-striving behaviour 3; and he smites the wicked people who are tyrannical, and annihilates them.'

9. Then those Mazda-worshippers smite, and none are smiting them. 10. Then those Mazda-worshippers produce a longing for a renovation among the existences, *one* ever-living, ever-beneficial, and ever desiring a Lord. 11. 'Then I, who am Aûhar Mazda, produce the renovation according to the longing among the existences, *one* ever-living, ever-beneficial, *and ever* desiring a Lord.'

---

1 See Chap. X, 17.

2 Reading the name as Pâzand; if it were Pahlavi it would have to be read Kânmasâf, because Irânian Pâz. yi is very like Pahl. mà. It is Kyânsih in Bd. XIII, 16; XX, 34; XXI, 6, 7, and represents Av. Kasava, the brackish lake or sea of Sagastân.

3 Reading ‘va-bigar-lk-i vand khîm va-kûr-kakhô râs,’ and assuming that bigar is Ar. bikr, as an Arabic word is occasionally used in the Dînâr (see Chap. II, 2 n) though very rarely. Bd. XXX, 17, mentions 'fifteen men and fifteen damsels' as assisting Sôshâns at the time of the renovation of the universe.
DÎNKARD.—BOOK V.

CHAPTER I.

1. The triumph of the creator Âûharmazd, and glory of complete wisdom, is the divine (ahûtg) religion of Mazda-worship.

2. The fifth book is about the sayings of the saintly Âûr-farnbag, son of Farukhzâd, who was the leader of the orthodox, even as to the manuscript which is called Gyêmârâ. 3. The collected replies of Âûr-

---

1 He was the leader of the orthodox about A.D. 815–835, and held a religious disputation with the heretic Abâlis in the presence of the Khalífah Al-Mâmûn (A.D. 813–833), as detailed in the Mâdîgân-î Gugastak Abâlis. He was also the first compiler of the Dînkard, probably of its first two Books, which are not yet discovered, as well as of some of the materials for the other Books. (See S. B. E., vol. xxxvii, p. 411, n. 1.)

2 The name of this MS. can be only guessed. It occurs three times in each of the two MS. authorities, B and K43, and the simplest reading of five of these six occurrences would be Sîmrá, so that the remaining one (Sârmâ) may be neglected as a corruption. A final â in Pahlavi is a very certain indication of a Semitic word, for if a final of similar form occurs in an Irânian word, it represents either h or kh; so if the name were Irânian, its most probable reading would be Sîmûrkî. But, in § 3, it is intimated that the MS. belonged to an ancient tribe, or congregation (ram); it also seems, from Chap. IV, 8, 9, that the religion of this tribe was not so inconsistent with Zoroastrianism as to prevent its members being taught that orthodox faith; and §§ 4, 5 of the present chapter appear to quote from that MS. some
farbag, son of Farukhzâd, the leader of the orthodox, about several significant questions that are the wonder of the moderns, which are like the friendly words, spoken by him as to those of the ancient tribe¹ (kâd mon-ramân) who call it really their Gyêmarâ, which are obtaining² a like wonder for them openly accessible to him³.

4. About the unswerving and co-operating chieftainship of those forefathers who went in mutually-friendly command of troops, and the complete enclosure of that tribe within the military control of Bûkht-Narsîh⁴. 5. About the disabling of vicious habits and evil deeds, which are entirely connected, and of the heinous demon-worship and mischief which

particulars regarding the siege of Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar. From these circumstances we may suspect that Âtûr-farbag, while collecting materials for his Dînkard, had asked some Jewish friends what information their MSS. contained regarding the old Persians, as the two peoples had been in contact, more or less, ever since the time of the Achaemenian dynasty. If he did so enquire, the Jews would naturally search in the Talmud, in which references to the Persians still survive, though the text is no longer complete. The question is, therefore, whether the MS., whose name has been provisionally read Šîmrâ, can have had any connection with the Talmud. It will be at once evident to any Pahlavi student that Pahl. sî may be read gyê equally well, and that we have no better reason for reading Šîmrâ than for the Gyêmarâ, which has been put into the text, as a suggestion that Âtûr-farbag was really referring to the Gemarâ of the Jews, the supplement to their commentary upon Scripture. Whether this can be clearly proved remains to be seen, and positive evidence seems scanty.

¹ Or 'congregation.' ² Or 'including (vandîg).'</p>

³ Pahl. 'munsânô ham-shkûp-vindîg frâs aûbas yehamûnîmîg.' From which it appears as if there had been a mutual interchange of information between him and his Jewish friends.

⁴ The Pahlavi form of Bu'ht-i-naţar, or Nebuchadnezzar.
are owing to them, through the ruler Kat-Loharâsp¹ being sent, with Bûkht-Naršt, from the country of Irân to Bêtâ-Makdis² of Arûm, and their remaining in that quarter. 6. And the orthodox belief in the rude particulars of religious custom in the mutual deliberation of those of the tribe, the acquaintance with religion of a boor (durûstakö-ī), the difficult arrangements, and the enquirer doubtful of the religion after the many controversial, deliberative, and cause-investigating questions and answers adapted to the importunities of that wordy disciple³.

7. About how the accepting of this religion by the prophets before Zaratûst occurred⁴, how the pure and saintly Zaratûst of the Spitâmas came⁵, and who will afterwards come as bringers of the same pure and good religion hereafter⁶. 8. That is, of the prophets, apostles, and accepters of the religion, there were they who accepted it concisely and completely such as Gâyômarâd was, from whom came irregularly (durûstakö) such as Masyê and Styâmak, Hâôshâng, Tâkhmôrup, Yim, Frêdûn, Mânûskîhar, the Sâmân, the Kayân, and also many other leaders in those times⁷. 9. And their acceptance expressly at various times is produced for action, and thereby the adversity of the creatures is removed, benefit

¹ The father of Kaî-Vistâsp (see Bd. XXXI, 28, 29; XXXIV, 7). His expedition to Jerusalem is mentioned in Pahl. Mkh. XXVII, 67, and by some Arab writers.
² 'The holy place,' a title of Jerusalem.
³ Not identified. From this point to Chap. IV, 7, Âtûr-farnbag must have used the same authorities as the writer of Dk. VII; but he returns to the Gyêmârâ in Chap. IV, 8.
⁴ Dk. VII, i, 7–40. ⁵ Ibid. 41. ⁶ Ibid. 42.
⁷ See the details in Dk. VII, i, 7–40. §§ 1–8 have been already translated in Grundriss der iranischen Philologie, ii, 93–94.
and prosperity are sought, the world is controlled, and the creator and good creations are propitiated.

CHAPTER II.

1. In the pure light and equal to the archangels—collected together and reckoned together, since the original creation, and completely unmixed—Zarathustra was spiritually fashioned and provided undefectively for the acceptance and propagation of the religion in the world. 2. And when he is sent for the manifestation of restrained saintliness (mokhith) and bodily substance, great glory and radiance become as much discernible in him as the same had come into the posterity of Yima who are Porthaspa, his father, and Dukdub who is his mother; and also while he is being born and for the duration of life, he produced a radiance, glow, and brilliance from the place of his own abode, that issued intensely and strongly, like the splendour of fire, to distant lands.

3. Also about the wizards and witches, tyrants, Kigs, and Karaps, and other miscreants who have produced outrage for him during his birth and childhood, with desire for his destruction; who have manifestly come about his death or disablement, and even so far as those who have come into the visible assembly about the destruction of his glory and other causes of helplessness. 4. And also including the wolves and other wild beasts, to whom he was

1 Dk. VII, ii, 1, 2, 14-21, 36-42, 46, 47; Zs. XIII, 4.
2 Ibid. 13.
3 Ibid. 3-8; Zs. XIII, 1-3.
4 Ibid. 56-58; Zs. XIV, 7.
5 Dk. VII, iii, 5-14; Zs. XVI, 1-7.
cast forth by those of Pōrūshāspō's kinsmen who were wizards, and the kindred of those frequenting demon-worship, but only as a test.  

5. In like manner it is declared that, on account of Vohūmanō being welcome to him, he laughed outright at birth. 6. His coming for conference with Aūharmaṣaḏ, and owing to his accepting the religion, Aharman and many demons and fiends have come to him with exhibition of fear, offering of service, and the argument and entreaty of suppliants; and all these have returned from him disapprovingly, defeatedly, and confusedly, through the pure proclamation of his Avesta, the unique perfection of Aūharmaṣaḏ's will, and the indication of a prepared armament (vīrāstō-żēnith), a declared reward, a powerful sovereignty, and a way of injury to the destroyer.

7. Also the triumph of the sacred beings in the end, and the peculiarity of the joint control of the demons; how, before that, they rushed openly into the world and have dwindled, their bodily forms are shattered, and they are so converted into secret decay, that their suppliants, deceived and deceivers, became awful disputants through confession of it.

8. And when, through completely accepting the religion from Aūharmaṣaḏ, he came to the obedient king Kai-Vistāsp to attract those of the world, he exhibited glorious actions of many kinds and the

1 Dk. VII, iii, 15–19; Zs. XVI, 8–11.
2 Ibid. 2; Zs. XIV, 12, 13.
3 Ibid. 60–iv, 1; Zs. XXI, 11–XXII, 13.
4 Dk. VII, iv, 36–41, 61, 62.
5 Ibid. 42, 44–46, 63.
smiting of demons and fiends; and he openly spoke the thoughts of king Vistâsp and many of the multitude about hidden matters, thus: 'A person is possessing life only by destiny, and without his body, but with a like destiny, the person possessing life is restored;' he was also opposing many wizards, demon-worshippers, demon-consulters, and those seduced by deceivers who are awful disputants.

9. And this was the utterance of those twelve stars whose names are those of the twelve zodiacal constellations, and the primitive learned of Bâpêl, that have come to these, who are asking questions of the chief rulers of Khvantras, have to justify it, in the controversy, with the spiritual and material customs and rude observances which are diversely manifested, onwards from the time of Yim the splendid, and the evidence of it, discernible with him, was that of Vohûmanô, Ashavahistô, the fire, and some other good spirits.

10. Afterwards, too, the estimating and weighing of the whole utterance of the religion of Aûharmazd were held out by him to Vistâsp and those of the world, as very accountably a wonder; and further, too, he remained as it were more conflicting with fellow-disputants than his own words opposing the fellow-disputants.

11. Also when, through the effect of glory and the struggle for being saved, every class of apostles and prophets and manifestation of tokens and such-like were, with certain and striking evidence, casting down blessings, even thereupon the obedient king

---

1 Dk. VII, iv, 65, 71.
2 B has 'and demon-separatists (va-shêdâ-gvîda kàn).'
3 Dk. VII, iv, 72.
4 Ibid. 74, 85; Zs. XXIII, 7.
Kat-Vistâsp's fear of the adversary of religion, and also other causes, arose, on account of which he was then accepting the propagation of the religion, when its great glory and beauty were seen by him. At first, Zarîr, Spend-dâd, Frashôstar, and Gâmâsp, several of the realm who were noble, conspicuous, and well-acting, the good and princes of mankind, beheld visibly the will and desirableness of Aûharmazd and the archangels, and the progressive religion of the creatures, fit for those completely victorious (hûktiragânîg).

13. Lastly, the seizure and capturing (girtininsnô) by the demons are beheld and watched; and they have remained opposing, owing to the number of idolators competing wranglingly. 14. And much conflict and slaughter occurred, which arose purely, so that the mingling of the religion in the world proceeded.

15. There are also his pure new bringers and complete controllers of the same religion, Aûshèdar, Aûshèdar-mâh, and Sôshâns; and through the complete progress of this religion of Aûharmazd, all the good creatures become without disturbance and all-radiant.

---

1 Dk. VII, iv, 87.
2 K 43 has varâzô; but B, omitting the first letter, has lâfô, 'praise.'
3 A brother and commander-in-chief of Vistâsp, killed in the battle with Argâsp, see Bd. XXXI, 29; YZ. 54–56.
4 A son of Vistâsp; see Dk. VII, vii, 5; YZ. 82–85.
5 Two brothers, see Chap. III, 4; Dk. VII, vi, 12; Zs. XXIII, 10.
6 See Chap. III, 1.
7 Dk. VII, viii, 55–ix, 13.
8 Dk. VII, ix, 18–x, 10.
9 Dk. VII, x, 15–xi, 5.
10 Dk. VII, xi, 6–11.
CHAPTER III.

1. About that which is manifested as regards the propitiousness, forward intellect, and complete virtue of Zarathust, it is openly declared that, according to his explaining statements, there occurred such events as the victory of Kai-Vistasp and the Iranians over Argasp\(^1\) and an army of Khyons and other foreigners of innumerable kinds, and details on that subject; also other assistance of Vistasp and those of the realm in other necessities.

2. The killing of Zarathust himself by Brâdrâ-râsh\(^2\) the Tûr; the provision of a chariot by Sritô\(^3\) of the Visraps; and whatever is on those subjects.

3. Also, specially, matters in the times to come, each consecutively, when therein arrive devastators such as Alexander\(^4\), and the killer of Akrê-khirâdô\(^5\), Mahrkûs\(^6\), Dahâk\(^7\), and other devastators; extenders of belief (vîravîsîn-vâlân) such as the Messiah (Mashikh), Mânîh\(^8\), and others; periods such as the steel age\(^9\), that mingled with iron, and others; and organizers, restorers, and introducers of religion, such

---

\(^1\) Dk. VII, iv, 77, 83, 84, 87–90; v, 7; this victory occurred in the thirtieth year of the religion, see Zs. XXIII, 8.

\(^2\) Dk. VII, v, 12 n.

\(^3\) Dk. VII, vi, 2–11.

\(^4\) Dk. VII, vii, 7.

\(^5\) Or Aghrêrad (Av. Ahraêratha), killed by his brother Frâsiyân or Frangrâsiyân of Tûr, see Bd. XXIX, 5; XXXI, 15, 20–22.

\(^6\) Dk. VII, i, 24; ix, 3.

\(^7\) Ibid. i, 26.

\(^8\) A heretic who flourished A.D. 216–242; see Dk. Ix, xxxix, 13 n.

\(^9\) According to Byt. II, 21, 22, the steel age was the time of Khûsrû Anôshêrvân, and that mingled with iron at the end of Zarathust’s millennium.
as Artakhshatar¹, Ātūrpād², Khūsrōl³, Pēshyōtan⁴, Aūshēdār, Aūshēdār-māh, Sōshāns⁵, and others.

4. The formation of custom, and the indications which have come to manifestation and will arrive at various periods; and the proclamation of these, too, by Gāmāsp⁶, from the teaching of Zarātūst, is what he wrote, together with the Avesta and Zand, upon oxhides, and it was written with gold, and kept in the royal treasury⁷. 5. And it was from it the high-priests of the rulers made many copies; and afterwards, too, it is from it that it happened, both to the less intelligent and the corrupters, that they were introducing different opinions and different views.

CHAPTER IV.

1. About the selectness and perfection of the race of Irān, that is, how the destroyer and the mingling of defects came into the creation, first into the distribution of the race [of mankind]⁸ from the children of Styāmak⁹, and good intellect, good disposition,

¹ Ardāshīr Pāpakān (A.D. 226–241), the founder of the Sāsānian dynasty.
² Son of Māraspend, and prime minister of Shahpūhar II (A.D. 309–379).
³ Anōshērvān (A.D. 531–578).
⁴ A son of Vistāsp and immortal ruler of Kangdez, see Dk. VII, iv, 81.
⁵ See Chap. II, 15.
⁶ See Chap. II, 12.
⁷ This was the original Avesta prepared by order of Vistāsp, as stated in the last chapter of Dk. III, § 3 (see S. B. E., vol. xxxvii, p. xxxi).
⁸ B omits the words in brackets.
⁹ Son of Masyē, called Sāmak in Dk. VII, i, 15.
proper affection, proper praise, proper modesty, observance of hope, liberality, truth, generosity, good friendship, and other capability, glory, and proper duty are more particularly included for Fravâk\(^1\), and again altered for frontier peoples.

2. Such-like goodness and glory, again, through selection from a promiscuous origin—even till the coming on of various new contaminations, from the demons, among the children of Fravâk—were for Hâôshâng and Vâégered\(^2\), as Hâôshâng through superior glory was ruler of the world, and Vâégered through provincial government (dahyûkânîh) became the cultivator and cherisher of the world; and their well-destined descendants\(^3\) aggrandized the race of the monarchs among the well-born provincial governors (dahyûkân).

3. In union, such-like glory and goodness proceeded, mutually connected, in various ages as settled by the annals (mâdîgân), and the frontiers of Atûr\(^4\) are penetrated; also in various annals there were in succession such men as Tâkmôrûp, Yim, Frêdûn the Åspîgân, and Airtê of Irân, the progenitor of Mânûs, Mânûs-khvârnar, and Mânûsêthar\(^5\).

4. And, besides including this one, who was a monarch of superior glory, and other monarchs such as are also in the same race\(^6\), the Kayâns\(^7\) were

---

\(^1\) Son of Sîyâmak; he was progenitor of the fifteen undeformed races of mankind (see Bd. XV, 25, 30, 31).

\(^2\) Dk. VII, i, 16–18.

\(^3\) K. 43 has ‘children.’

\(^4\) Probably Assyria; but it is possible to read atval as Ar. atval, and to translate ‘ancient frontiers.’

\(^5\) For the foregoing names see Dk. VII, i, 19–30; ii, 70.

\(^6\) Such as Aûzûbô in Dk. VII, i, 31.

\(^7\) From Kai-Kobâd to Kai-Khûsrô, as stated in Dk. VII, i, 33–40.
chosen. 5. Even thus, as regards the Kayâns, the annals have always to consider him who is monarch as the right one, who is a fellow-descendant of the lineage, and in whom the glory is residing.

6. The creator Aûharmazd has informed Néryô-sang\(^1\), his own reminder, that a similar instance is the supreme Zaratûstship, and the glory of the religion due to the same; also many other reasons, which are recountable, are declared in the Avesta, indications known only to an Irânian person of the best lineage. 7. And this, too, he has said, namely: 'Great glory and goodness of this description are appropriatable by the same race, and are even now visibly manifest.'

8. About what are the requirements of the tribe of those who call this really their Gyêmarâ and how they are effected by our acquaintance with revelation, that is, by much recitation of it; only, several occasions (yâvar r-kand) are necessary in these times.

9. Also action and precaution are possible for them, and among the actions and precautions one is to assume more especially law and custom, and whatever was perverted by us and again made true; and, as to those taught, several persons who are intellectual, seeking means, and friends of the soul, have come to teach complete delusions to them; also for the same tribe and whomever it is proper to teach, when it is necessary for them, even a worldly

---

\(^1\) The usual messenger of Aûharmazd, see Dk. VII, iv, 84, 85.

\(^2\) B has 'even anew,' by writing kevan backwards, which converts the word into navak. From Chap. I, 7 to this point, the compiler could have found very little of his materials in a Jewish MS., excepting such as had been recently obtained from Persian sources.
priestly authority is guiding for that same tribe, because he has come\(^1\).

\(^1\) It would seem that the tribe professed a different religion, but one that bore some resemblance to the Parsi faith in certain essential particulars. The remaining five-sixths of Dk. V are devoted to a miscellaneous collection of religious subjects, resembling a Rivâyat.
SELECTIONS OF ZÂD-SPARAM.
SELECTIONS OF ZÂD-SPARAM.

CHAPTER XII.

1. About the coming of the religion at a given time being a resemblance such-like as the birth of a child through two united powers, which are the reception of semen by females in procreation, and delivering it back to the fathers, and a period of struggling and intermingling, especially by two means: a monarchy with a religion of the same tenets (ham-vâk-dênôîh), and the existence of similar tenets to those of the monarchy in the custom of the religion. 2. The religion of the Mazda-worshippers, when the period of material

---

1 Zâd-sparam was Dastûr of Sirkân, about thirty parasangs south of Kirmân, in A.D. 881. At a later date, probably about A.D. 900, he compiled three series of Selections, from religious texts then extant, and these have been preserved by the Parsis in the same MSS. as contain the Dâdistân-î Dînîk (see the Introduction). The first eleven chapters of this first series of Selections have been already translated in S. B. E., vol. v, pp. 155-186, as they refer to some of the subjects detailed in the Bundahîs. The remaining chapters are here translated, except the last which refers to the Nasks and Gâthas, and will be found in S. B. E., vol. xxxvii, pp. 401-405. The MS. authorities for the text are K35 and T (see p. 2 and Introduction).

2 T has 'devoid of.'
organization is being converted again into a spiritual nature, became manifest on the earth, first through Spandarmad\(^1\) and afterwards through Aûharmazd, like the reception of a child by mothers and delivering it back to the fathers.

3. The manifestation of the religion through Spandarmad was at that time when Frâsiyâv\(^2\) kept back the water from the country of Irân, and brought the water again; in damsel form she was a speaker for its manifestation, in reply to foreigners, at the house of Mânûshâhar\(^3\), the monarch of the country of Irân. 4. She was also dressed, and wore radiant clothing which shone out on all sides for the length of a Hâsar\(^4\), which is a distance, like a Parasang; and, tied on her waist, she wore a golden sacred girdle which was the religion of the Mazda-worshippers itself.

5. As to the belt of the religion, it is that to which are connected the thirty-three fetters upon the thirty-three sins\(^5\), according to which all sin is divided; so that (kû) the damsels, by whom the tied sacred girdle of Spandarmad was seen, have become impetuous (taftûgô) after that for a tied girdle, on account of its seeming beautiful.

6. And this was the motherhood which is supplied through Spandarmad, as a gift, in the year 528

---

\(^1\) The female archangel who has special charge of the earth and virtuous women (see Dk. VII, ii, 19 n).

\(^2\) See Dk. VII, i, 31; and regarding his irrigation canals, see Bd. XX, 17, 34; XXI, 6.

\(^3\) See Dk. VII, i, 29.

\(^4\) A thousand steps of the two feet, or Roman mile; see Bd. XXVI, i.

\(^5\) Thirty sins are detailed in Mkh. XXXVI, and thirty-three good works in XXXVII (see S. B. E., vol. xxiv, pp. 71–75).
before Zaratûst came out to *his* conference\(^1\), which is *one of* their statements from the annals of the religion *in* a manuscript of the ancients.

7. The name of Zaratûst is also cited on the earth at 300 years before his conference\(^2\). 8. For Irân, at the supplication even of the priests in the land, and for the sake of the pacification of a dispute arisen, Aûharmazd produced a great ox, by whom the boundary of Irân next to Tûrân was intimated by pawing with *his* hoofs, and he was kept in a jungle. 9. Whenever contention arose, the boundary was fully made known by that ox, until it was the wish of Kaf-Üs to take, fully covetously, a portion of the land of Tûrân back *into* Irân, and he saw that the ox is *about* to act very ill-naturedly, because it was not besought with *forms* which were prescribed for it, where a boundary was intimated by it\(^3\).

10. *There* were seven brothers, and he who was

---

\(^1\) If this coming to conference with the spirits be 'the coming of the religion,' in the thirtieth year of Vîrtâsp's reign, then, according to Bundahîr chronology, these 528 years will carry us back to twenty-eight years before the accession of Mânûsâihar. As any alteration in the date of Mânûsâihar's accession would disturb the millennial arrangement of Bd. XXXIV, it is probable that some copyist has miswritten the ciphers, and we ought to read 428. This legend appears not to occur elsewhere.

\(^2\) According to Bd. XXXIV, 7, Kaf-Üs reigned from 360 to 210 years before 'the coming of the religion.' At this point a dislocation of the text occurs in all existing MSS., owing to the misplacement of a loose folio in some unknown copy written before 1530; the contents of this folio, §§ 8–16, are found in the existing MSS. three folios further on (after Chap. XIV, 14), and are here restored to their original position, as determined by the meaning of the text.

\(^3\) *T* has 'by that ox.' This legend is also told in Dk. VII, ii, 62–66.
the seventh was called Sṛtō the Seventh, the largest in body and chief in strength, belonging to those instructed in many subjects for Kaṭ-Ūs, and he was among his princes. 11. Kaṭ-Ūs summoned him into his presence and ordered him thus: ‘Go and kill that ox in the jungle!’

12. Sṛtō went, and the ox whom he wished to kill expostulated with him, in human words, thus: ‘Do not kill me! for though thou canst kill me, he whose guardian spirit is in the Hōm, the death-dispeller, will also become manifest on the earth, he whose name is Zaratūst of the Spītāmas, and will proclaim thy bad action in the world. 13. And the distress in thy soul becomes such as is declared in revelation thus: “As it occurs to him, so it does to Vadāk, when they mention his iniquity,” and thy death becomes the like and, owing to death, it is mixed up with hers (that is, owing even to hers is the death of Sṛtō).’

14. When those words were heard by him, Sṛtō turned back, and went again to Kaṭ-Ūs; also by his manner, and even apart from this, he stated what the ox had spoken with awfulness, and also thus:

1 Sṛtō, the seventh son (compare Dk. VII, ii, 64), is not easy to identify. He could not have been Thrita the father of Keresāspa, because this Thrita the Sāmān is said to have been a third son in Pahl. Yas. IX, 30 (Sp.). He may have been Sṛtō of the Vīsraps, whose soul visited Vistāsp in the latter part of his reign, about 350 years later, regarding which a legend is related in Dk. VII, vi, 2–11, and again mentioned in Dk. V, iii, 2; but there is a want of corresponding details for identification.

2 This is the citation of his name mentioned in § 7.

3 The mother of Dahāk, whose iniquity is considered as equal to that of the evil spirit, see Dd. LXXII, 5; Dk. IX, x, 3.

4 T has ‘also by his manner he intimated and separately stated.’
'I am more desirous than any one who is in the earth created by righteousness, that you should now order destruction for the ox.'

15. And Kaṭ-Ūs uttered his will, with the conviction of superior wisdom, thus: 'It is not certain whether he whose guardian spirit is in the Hôm, the death-dispeller, is himself, or not; and if he be, and be born, whether he will become manifest, or not;' and he commanded with severity, thus: 'Go and kill it!'

16. And Srtô spoke thus: 'It is not that I am without strength to kill, because its reprimand by me was owing to its remonstrance, mentioned to me, that a high-priest is to arise.'

17. So it is declared thus, in another revelation (dēnô zagâi), when the Tûrânians were backward in heart, Kaṭ-Ūs spoke thus: 'Go out to a certain jungle, in which dwell many chiefs of the witches, and they will cut thee up without any striving of heart.'

18. And Srtô went up to the jungle, where many witches saw him, who kept their jaws open, and they spoke about the handsome man thus: 'Slay and do not spare!' 19. And compassion having gone out of his heart, he went back to the other jungle and, with his fist, he broke the back of the ox in three places; and the ox, awfully convulsed (skiftô bar-hamakô), kept up an outcry.

20. After the slaughter of the ox, owing to its convulsed state which was heard by him, the

---

1 T omits 'and be born.'
2 The misplaced folio, which begins with § 8, ends here, but it is not quite certain that a few lines of text are not still missing.
3 T has 'at another time (dēn zagâi).'
remembrance of it then became grievous to Sritô; and he went back to Kat-ûs, and informed him how it was, and begged him that he should finish off by slaying him, because his life was not desirable.

21. Kat-ûs spoke thus: ‘Shall I slay thee, for it was not designed by thee?’

22. And Sritô spoke thus: ‘If thou wilt not slay me, then I shall slay thee.’

23. Again Kat-ûs spoke thus: ‘Do not thou slay me, for I am the monarch of the world.’

24. Sritô continued his discontent, until Kat-ûs ordered him thus: ‘Go out to a certain jungle, because a witch in the shape of a dog is in it, and she will slay thee.’

25. Then Sritô went out to that jungle, and that witch in the shape of a dog was seen by him; after he smote the witch, she became two; and he constantly smote them till they became a thousand, and the host (gîrdô) of them slew Sritô on the spot.

---

Chapter XIII.

1. About the glory of Zarâtûst becoming manifest even before his birth, it is thus declared, that forty-five years before the time when Zarâtûst came out to his conference, when Frênô gave birth to the mother of Zarâtûst, whom they called Dûkdak, it

---

¹ T has ‘that he should command the slaying of him.’
² That is, forty-five years before he was thirty years old (see Chap. XXI, 1–14).
³ It is necessary to translate in this manner, to agree with Dk. VII, ii, 3, but the text, which is ambiguous, runs as follows:—
‘amat Frênôg (Frênô-i?) Zarâtûst am, zyasân Dûkdakôg karîtuntô,
came down from the endless light, in the manner of fire, and mingled with the fire which was before her; and from the fire it mingled with the mother of Zaratûst.

2. For three nights it was manifest, to all passers-by, as a species of fire in the direction of the house, and passers on the road always saw great radiance. Also when she became fifteen years old, the radiance of that glory which was in her, was even such that, on the path she was walking along, its brightness was then shed by her.

4. About the combination of Zaratûst, whose guardian spirit is reverenced; that is, his guardian spirit, in the Hôm, and his glory are given the cow's milk, by his father and mother drinking it up, and his spiritual life (ahvâ) came into the combination, as was proclaimed by his statements in the manuscript about the Guidance of the Ceremonial.

5. About the backward connection of Zaratûst with Aûharma zd, through the two who are Yim, the best of the worldly existences, and Nêryôsang of the spirits. 6. The enumeration of the lineage of Zaratûst is Zaratûst, son of Pûrûshaspô, of Purtarâspô, zerkhûntô; which might also be translated thus: 'when Frênô, the mother of Zaratûst, whom they called Dûkôk, was born.' This Frênô, whether mother or daughter, does not seem to correspond with any Freni mentioned in the Avesta.

1 See Dk. VII, ii, 2, 3. 2 Ibid. 7, 8. 3 Ibid. 46, 47. 4 Not identified, but probably like the Nîrangistân. 5 This genealogy was, no doubt, derived originally from the same source as that in Dk. VII, ii, 70, but there are several variations, especially in orthography, which are here preserved, unless clearly copyist's blunders. The names marked with an asterisk are written in Pâzand.
of Ahûrvadâspô, of Háekadâspô, of Kîkhshnûs, of Pattiraspô, of AreSandarstî*, of Kharedhar*, of Spîtâmân, of Vaêdistô, of Ayazem, of Frits, of Arig*, of Dûrasrôbô, of Mânûshîhar, of Mânûs-khûrnar, of Mânûs-khûrnâk, whom Nêryôsanq the messenger of Aûharmazd brought, and whose mother was Vîzag, daughter of Aryag, of Sritak, of Bitak, of Frazûsak, of Zûsak, of Fragûzag, of Gûzag, daughter of Aîrûk, son of Frûdûn of the Åspîgâns to the total of ten Åspîgâns, of Yim, of the Vivang, has, of the Ayang, has, of the Anang, has, of Hôshâng, of Fravák, of Siyâmak, of Mastyâ, of Gâyômârd.

Chapter XIV.

1. About the wonderful striving of the fiend for the destruction of Zarâtûst. 2. When it became near to his birth, the Fever demon, the Pain demon, and the Wind demon of Aharman, each one with 150 demons, have come out to kill Zarâtûst, and from his spirit they have gone forth to his mother. 3. And she is hurried from there by Fever, Pain, and Wind; and at the distance of one league (parasang) there was a wizard, Impudent (Storkô) by name, who was the most medical of wizards; in hope of practice he stood up from his seat, as she stopped in her progress.

4. A messenger of Aûharmazd uttered a cry thus: 'Do not go to a wizard! for they are not healing (bêshazintdâr) for thee; but go back to the house, wash thy hands on the morrow with cow's butter held over the fire, also burn (tâpô) ¹ firewood

¹ T has 'consume (vidâsô),'
and incense for thy own self and thy progeny which is in thy womb.' 5. And she acted accordingly and became well; and the co-operators of the demon, and those of equal power, who had not obtained their remedy from her body, are again exposed, and spoke thus: 'On account of the existence of fire from all sides we have not succeeded; it is a help for every one who is her friend more than opponent; therefore it was not for us, because of the power within her.'

6. The same night as she gave birth, Aharman selected commanders and arrayed his champions (gûrd); there are some who are with one thousand demons, and there are some who are with two thousand demons; pursuing and attacking they have contended. 7. The opposing stand of the sacred beings, especially of the glory itself at the family fire, was manifest at that birth; and for its splendour and brightness (pa'drákô), settled opposite a distant place, they have then found no remedy.

8. At last, Aharman sends Akômanô on, and spoke to him thus: 'Thou canst be very spiritual, who canst be most intimate; thou canst go with deceit into the mind of Zarâtûst, and make him turn

---

2 T has 'and all the co-operators who had entered her body, and those of equal power who had reached them, returned helpless from them.'
3 Thus summarized in Dk. VIII, xiv, 2:—'Also about the arrival of both spirits, the good one for developing, and the evil one for destroying; the victory of the good spirit, and the rearing of Zarâtûst.' The 'rearing' is continued in Chaps. XV–XX.
4 Assuming that ṣhr stands for ṣḥr dûdak.
5 The archdemon of 'evil thought' (Bd. XXVIII, 7) and special opponent of Vohûmanô, the archangel of 'good thought.'
his mind to us who are demons.' 9. And Aûhar-mazd sends Vohûmanô on against him; Akômanô advanced to the front, and had come forward to the door, and wished to go inside.

10. Vohûmanô schemingly (kârakôgarthâ) turned back, and exclaimed to Akômanô thus: ‘Go inside!’ 11. Akômanô imagined thus: ‘There is nothing to be accomplished by me of what was mentioned to me, for Vohûmanô has gone back.’ 12. And Vohûmanô went inside, and mingled with the reason (vârôm) of Zaratûst, and Zaratûst laughed outright, for Vohûmanô is a gratifying spirit.

13. Also seven wizards were seated before him, and owing to the light in the dwelling, his having laughed at birth was conveniently seen, which is opposed to the habit of the rest of mankind who cry out at birth and are quite terrified.

14. Also, at the same time of birth, he authoritatively accepted the religion from Aûharmazd, as it is stated in revelation, that he spoke at birth thus: ‘As is the will of the spiritual lord (ahvô) mayst thou be who art the officiating priest (zôtô) (that is, mayst thou be the leader of the creatures).’

15. As Zaratûst, on account of his worldly body, spoke with a worldly voice, Aûharmazd spoke in reply to him, on account of the spirits, thus: ‘So

---

1 Assuming that stô stands for vastô.
2 Compare Dk. VII, iii, 2; V, ii, 5. This laughing is not mentioned in Dk. IX, xxiv.
3 ‘Seven midwives’ are mentioned in Dk. VII, iii, 2.
4 This is one form of the Pahlavi Ahunavair (see Dk. IX, xxiv, 4). At this point the text in the MSS. is interrupted by the erroneous insertion of Chap. XII, 8–16, the contents of a loose folio in some former copy, which have been restored to their original position in this translation.
mayst thou be the priestly authority (raď shâye), and so mayst thou be virtuous, owing to whatsoever righteousness occurs; and I confidently proclaim thee righteous (that is, I am thy controller).

16. Another day, Pûrûshaspô went and enquired of the wizards who kept in front at the place, thus: ‘What is the cause when infants cry out at birth, beyond that which occurs when they laugh outright?’ 17. And they replied thus: ‘Because those who are made to cry have seen mortality as their end, and those having laughed have seen their own righteousness.’

Chapter XV.

1. About the brothers who were a band of opponents of Zaratûst. 2. The Karaps and Aûsikshes were brothers’ sons, and have become the devastation (gâstâragîh) of the Irânians; the devastators of the Irânians (Èrânân) were from Kûkharèd, and Kûkharèd was born from Aêshm and Mânûsêk, the sister of Mânûsêkhar. 3. At the place where Zaratûst was born, five brothers have been, whose names were Bråd-rûkhsh, Bråd-rûyisn, Bråd-rêsh the Tûr, Hazân, and Vadast. 4. Their

1 Compare Dk. IX, xxiv, 4. 2 Compare Dk. VII, iii, 24, 25. 3 Av. ‘Karapâ Usiksh-kâ’ of Yas. XLIV, 20 c; the Kavâ, a third class of pre-Zoroastrian priests, is also mentioned ibid. 20 d. Compare Dk. VII, ii, 9 n. 4 Av. Kâhvaredha, Yas. LX, 6, 7 (Sp.) where it is translated by kâstâr, ‘diminisher, devastator,’ of whom it is here said to be the father; see also Yt. III, 9, 12, 16. 5 Compare the legend of the descent of the ape and bear from a demon and Yimak, sister of Yim, in Bd. XXIII, 1. 6 As these names do not occur in the Avesta, their pronunciation
brotherhood of five—of which the middle one was Brâd-rêsh the Tûr, who became more of an adversary of Zaratûst—was a semblance of the brotherhood of five who were sons of Pûrûshaspô, of whom the middle one was Zaratûst.

5. Of the four brothers of Zaratûst, the names of the two before Zaratûst were Ratûstar and Rangûstar, and of the two after him Nodârîgâ and Nîvêdîs.  

6. The middle position of Zaratûst is for the reason that he is so produced at that time, as an intermediate of the early narrators and the later narrators, that three millenniums came before him and three after.  

7. So that he has prescribed to the creatures in what manner he would teach the ancients as to what had occurred, and in what manner it is also to be done as regards what will occur; as is stated in the Gâtâhas thus: ‘Both those I ask of thee, O Aûharmazd! even whatever has happened till now, and whatever shall happen henceforth?’

---

CHAPTER XVI.

1. About the trials (aûzmâyîsnö) which occurred has to be guessed so as to give a probable meaning to the Pahlavi spelling. The writing of the last name is complicated; it is written  in the two MS. authorities, which forms can be most obviously read Vâsam and Sâman, but Sâman can also be read as the Zvâris yadás=dast, ‘a hand;’ this leads to the conclusion that the original name underlies the form Vâdast, and this is confirmed by the name of the Karap Vaêdvôist written at full length in Dk. VII, iv, 21–24. See ibid. ii, 9 n.

1 These brothers seem unmentioned elsewhere, and the existence of the elder two would imply another mother. The pronunciation of the names is guessed.

2 Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 14 a.
to him whose practice was lawful, and the signs of prophecy that are seen therein, it is thus declared, namely: 'Another day, when the child had been born, Pôrûshaspô called one of those five brothers of the race of Karaps, and spoke thus: “Fully observe the marks and specks of my son Zaratûst.”'

2. The Karap went and sat down before Zaratûst, and the head of Zaratûst was thereupon severely twisted by him, in order that he should be killed; but he, being fearless, watched the wizards whose terror was distressing. 3. As it was in those ten nights for hospitality, Aûharmazd sent Spendarmad, Arêdvisûr, and Ardâl-fravard down to the earth, by way of female care; thereupon no variation occurred to the child, and, further, the hand of that Karap was withered, and that wizard demanded the life of Zaratûst from Pôrûshaspô for the harm from him, which sprang upon himself from his own action.

4. At the same time Pôrûshaspô took Zaratûst, and gave him to the Karap, that he might do with him according to his own will. 5. He seized him and threw him out, at the feet of the oxen who were going on a path to the water; the leader of that drove of oxen stood still in his vicinity, and 150 oxen, which walked behind it, were kept away from him thereby; and Pôrûshaspô took him, and carried him back to the house.

6. Also the second day, the Karap threw him out

---

1 Assuming that vôshîg stands for vēshîg=bēshîg.
2 The three female spirits that represent the earth, pure water, and guardian spirits, respectively.
3 Compare Dk. VII, iii, 4-7.
4 Assuming that the MS. dênô stands for gân.
5 Compare Dk. VII, iii, 11, 12.
at the feet of the horses; and the leader of the horses stood still in the vicinity of Zaratúst, and 150 horses, which walked behind it, were kept away from him thereby; and Pôrushaspô took him, and carried him back to the house.

7. Also the third day, firewood is gathered together by the Karap, and Zaratúst is deposited on it by him, the fire is stirred up by him, yet with the same result (ham-bûn-ik), the child is not burnt by it, and those marks, which existed and were made upon him, were a preservation from it.

8. And the fourth day, he is thrown by the Karap into the lair (âshyânakô) of a wolf; the wolf was not in the lair, and when it wished to go back to the den (sûrâkô), it stopped when it came in front of some radiance, in the manner of a mother, at the place where its cub was. 9. In the night, Vohûmanô and Srôsh the righteous brought a woolly (kûrûsakô) sheep with udder full of milk into the den, and it gave milk to Zaratúst, in digestible draughts (guvârakô guvârakô), until daylight.

10. In the dawn, the mother of Zaratúst went to that place, in the expectation that it would be necessary to bring a skeleton out of the den, and the woolly sheep came out and ran away; his mother supposed that it was the wolf, and she spoke thus: 'Thou hast devoured to repletion; mayst thou endure for ever without it!' 11. She went farther, and when she saw Zaratúst quite safe, she then took him up and spoke thus: 'I will not give thee to any one during life, not though both the provinces of Râgh and Nôdar should arrive here together.'

---

1 Compare Dk. VII, iii, 13, 14. 2 Ibid. 9, 10.
3 Ibid. 15–17; V, ii, 4. 4 Ibid. 18, 19.
12. Because these princes were among the spiritual from two provinces which are in Atur-pādakān, such as are at sixty leagues (parasang) from Kist; Zaratūst arose from Rāgh, and Vistāsp from Nōdar.

13. And of these two provinces, Rāgh was according to the name of Ėrikō, son of Dūrēsrōbō, son of Mānūskēthar, from whom arose the race of Zaratūst; and Nōdar was according to the name of Nōdar, son of Mānūskēthar, from whom arose the race of Vistāsp.

Chapter XVII.

1. These were his tokens at birth:—One day, one of those five brothers of the Karaps saw Zaratūst, and he looked a long while upwards, downwards, and on all sides around.

2. Pōrūshaspō enquired thus: ‘What was there when thou lookedst upwards, what when thou lookedst downwards, and what when thou lookedst on all sides?’

3. And he replied thus, namely: ‘When I looked upwards, it was for this reason, when I saw that our souls that go up to the sky, will go up to the best

---

1 Compare Chap. XIII, 6; Dk. VII, ii, 70.
3 Assuming that the MS. gadd, ‘glory, or destiny,’ has lost an initial n, with which it was originally nismā=Chald. Ṣmā, ‘the soul;’ as the copyists have not been aware of the existence of this Zvāris equivalent for rūbān, ‘the soul,’ for some centuries, it has been altered into gadd, by the omission of its first letter, in nearly all but the very oldest existing MSS., such as K20 and M6 in Bd. XV, 3–5, and even there the medial m is really missing, though apparently existing in the final d; the irregularity of using s for sh is common in Pahlavi.
existence, owing to the words of this soul of mankind. 4. When I looked downwards, I saw that, owing to the action of this one, the demon and fiend, the wizard and witch become buried below the earth, and fall paralyzed back to hell. 5. And when I looked on all sides, I saw that the words of this one will extend through the whole earth; and when they have become as the law of the seven regions, each person is kept clothed with a robe (kapâh) of seven skins, in which the glory of the seven archangels has arisen.'

6. And Brâd-rûkhsh the Tûr went forth; when he went to the right side (arakô), Zaratûst hastened away to the left, and when he went to the left side, Zaratûst hastened to the right, and he is thereby concealed from Brâd-rûkhsh the Tûr, who has not met with him.

Chapter XVIII.

1. About his diverse want of participation (gvt d akhvêsth) with his parents this also is declared, that the demons, at an assembly of wizards, produced an outcry for a conference (ham-vâkô lâyîsnô) thus: 'That son of Pôrushaspô is senseless and foolish and secretly corrupted; no one, man or woman, will consider or accept him as exalted.'

2. The tidings came to Pôrushaspô, and Pôrushaspô spoke unto Zaratûst thus: 'I thought that I had begotten a son who would become a priest, a warrior, and a husbandman, and now thou

---

1 The ordinary heaven, see Dd. XX, 3.
wouldst be foolish and secretly corrupted; thou shouldst proceed to the Karaps, so that they may cure thee.'

3. Zaratûst gave answer thus: 'I am he that is thy son, a priest, warrior, and husbandman.' 4. And, by command of Pôrûshaspô he harnessed two horses to a chariot (vardînô), and he went with Pôrûshaspô.

5. When they came to the place according to the decision of Pôrûshaspô, into the presence of one Karap of those said five brethren, that wizard took a cup and made water, and spoke thus: 'This he should drink who is a son of thine, so that he may become well;' and he acted with this conviction, that so he would change to the same nature as theirs.

6. Zaratûst spoke to Pôrûshaspô thus: 'Thou mayst give it back to him who is thy protector and high-priest;' and he arose (âkhêgêd) and went back to their place.

7. On the way, Zaratûst gave their two horses water, on account of their thirst; and he thought thus: 'Unprofitable was my going to the residence of the Karaps, except in this manner, when, through giving water to the horses, my soul was then expanded.'

---

Chapter XIX.

1. About his interfering talk (andarg-gôbisnôth) with the iniquitous, this also is declared, that one

1 T has 'he saluted (nfîyâyêd).’ This legend has not yet been found elsewhere.
day Dûrêsrôbô 1 the Karap, as it were from the same five brethren, came out to the house of Pûrûshaspô; and Pûrûshaspô placed a bowl (gâmâkô) of mare’s milk before him, and spoke to him thus: ‘Consecrate it.’

2. Zaratûst expostulated with Pûrûshaspô thus: ‘I will consecrate it.’ 3. Pûrûshaspô spoke thus: ‘He should consecrate, and the grace is to be offered up by you;’ and as many as three times they mutually disputed.

4. Then up stood Zaratûst, and his right foot struck at the bowl and emptied it, and he spoke thus: ‘I reverence righteousness, I reverence the righteous and the poor, men and women; do thou, O Pûrûshaspô! prepare a portion for him in whom there is worthiness.’

5. And Dûrêsrôbô spoke unto Zaratûst thus: ‘As some of my portion of daily food was first thrown away by thee, it is I who will bring it on both thy lives, and will utterly destroy thee.’ 6. Zaratûst spoke interruptingly thus: ‘With complete mindfulness I will look upon thee with both eyes, and will utterly destroy thee.’

7. And, for a long time, they constantly looked, one at the other, with unshrinking gaze; but the divine nature of Zaratûst is victorious over the witchcraft of that wizard, and Dûrêsrôbô is further disturbed; he also asked for his horse and spoke thus: ‘On account of this boy, it is impossible for me to stay.’

---

1 So spelt in Zs., but Dûrêsrôbô in Dk.; also the former has always Pûrûshaspô, but the latter Pûrûshaspô. Compare the same legend in Dk. VII, iii, 34–45.

2 Pahl. ‘vald âe yazêdô, afêd vâg dahirnô.’

3 Or ‘inwardly.’
8. He sat upon the horse, and when he had gone a little way, he fell off from the horse, through severe distress, and died; and the children of his children's children have died upon the same spot ¹.

Chapter XX.

1. About the righteousness of his desires it is thus declared, that when he became fifteen years old, the sons of Pūrūshaspō demanded a portion from their father, and their portions are allotted out by him. 2. Among the clothes there was a girdle, the width of which was four finger-breadths; and of the four ² portions around and the girdle, which it was possible to bring forth, Zaratūst selected the latter and tied it on himself. 3. This was owing to the precepts (parvânakân) of Vohûmanô who came into his reason at birth; as to whatever is not the custom his mind was now quite closed, and in that which is the custom it was impetuously exercised by him.

4. About his compassionate disposition and the streams of the Arag province ³, this also is declared,

¹ Probably meaning that he died childless.
² The MSS. have 'three,' but there were five sons (Chap. XV, 5), and the numbers are written in ciphers which are very easily corrupted.
³ Pahl. 'Aragistân odhâvô (T dhâ)' = 'odhâ-t Arangistânô' of P. Vd. I, 77 (Sp.); compare Av. 'upa aodhaêshu Rang,hayau,' of Vd. I, 19; Yt. XII, 18. In the Irânian Bd. XX, 8 we are told that 'the Arang river is that of which it is said that it comes out from Albûrs in the land of Sûrak, which they call also Sham (Shâm); and it passes on through the land of Egiptôs, which they call also Mîsr, and there they call it the swift river Egiptôis.' It is
that there was a river, and from them the body of a naked woman floated, for the reason that, on account of the strength and swiftness of the river, a woman, except when she was quite naked while she was in it, was not able to pass; and an old person, such as he who is of seventy years and is called in revelation a Hânô 1, for want of power (apâḍyâvandîth râfä), was not able to go back through it by his own strength. 5. Zaratûst came on to the bank of the water, and of women and old people seven persons had come, and are passed on by him, in the manner of a bridge 2; it was an emblem of the spiritual performers 3 of bridging work, that is, of those providing a passage to heaven.

6. About his liberal disposition it is declared, that the fodder of Pûrûshaspô, which was stored for the beasts of burden, was not only for the beasts of Pûrûshaspô in a scarcity, but also for distribution among the beasts of others, which, owing to their hunger on account of the scarcity, then constantly ate off the tails of each other; and it was given to them plentifully.

7. About his abandoning worldly desire, and his laying hold of righteousness of way, this, too, is declared, that when he became twenty years old, without the consent (bêän akâmâkîth) of his father and mother, he wandered forth and departed from

one of the two mythical rivers which were supposed to bound the Irânian world, and seems to represent the Aras as a northern and the Nile as a western boundary. Arang often becomes Arag in Pahlavi, just as sang becomes sag.

1 Av. hänô in Vd. III, 19, 20; &c.
2 Probably holding each other's hands.
3 The sacred beings who assist the righteous souls to pass over the Kinvad bridge.
CHAPTER XX, 5-13.

their house, and openly enquired thus: 'Who is most desirous of righteousness and most nourishing the poor?' 8. And they spoke thus: 'He who is the youngest (kēhistō) son of Aūrvaitō-dih the Tūr, who every day gives an iron caldron (gāmāk), which is the height of a horse, full of bread and milk and other food, unto the poor.' 9. Zarátust went on to that place, and with his co-operation, for the nourishment of the poor, some of the chief men performed duty by carrying forth food for the poor.

10. About his compassion, not only upon mankind, but also his other creatures, this, too, is declared, that a bitch was seen by him, which had given birth to five puppies, and it was three days then that she had not obtained food. 11. Whomsoever she saw, she then advanced her mouth towards him, and became as it were prostrated; Zarátust provided a remedy, by swiftly bringing up bread for her, but when he was bringing it she had expired.

12. About his own desire for the good quality of a wife, on account also of the will of his parents, and his not mingling his own seed before a suitable obtainment, this, too, is declared, that when his father sought a wife for him, Zarátust argued with the bride (nēshā) thus: 'Show me thy face, so that I may find out (barkhām) its kind of appearance, and this, too, whether its appearance be undesirable, or shall not be gratifying;' and the bride turned away her face from him. 13. And Zarátust spoke thus:

---

1 See Dk. VII, iv, 7 n.
2 T has 'seven,' but this difference may have arisen from an erroneous mode of writing the ciphers in T.
3 T has 'a bone for food.'
4 T has 'good child-bearing.'
'Whoever takes away a sight from me, does not practise respect for me.'

14. About his having accepted progress even from the iniquitous, that listened sinfully desirous, who accepted so much advantageousness as was manifest, this, too, is declared, that he came into an assembly who were well known in the place for much knowledge, and he enquired of them thus: 'What is most favourable for the soul?' 15. And they spoke thus: 'To nourish the poor, to give fodder to cattle, to bring firewood to the fire, to pour Hôm-juice into water, and 1 to worship many demons with words, with the words which are called revelation (dênô).’ 16. Then Zaratûst nourished the poor, foddered the cattle, brought firewood to the fire, and squeezed Hôm into water, but never are any demons whatever worshipped with words by Zaratûst.

CHAPTER XXI.

1. About his coming to thirty years of age it is thus declared, that on the lapse of thirty years onwards from his appearance, on the day Anérân of the month Spendarmad 2, he had proceeded in that direction in which there occurred the so-called festival of spring (gâsnô-i vahâr) 3, forty-five days beyond

---

1 T inserts 'not' here, which is clearly wrong, and must have been introduced by some copyist who did not observe that the assembly, though learned, was sinful; and that the object of the anecdote is to exhibit Zaratûst's ability to distinguish between good works and sin, when still untaught by the sacred beings.

2 On the last day of the twelfth Parsi month.

3 The Mâidhyôzaremaya season-festival, held on the fifteenth day of the second Parsi month.
new-year’s day, at a place become specially noted, where people went, from many quarters, out to the place of festival (gəṣnəkår).

2. When Zaratušt, for the sake of going off to the festival place, halted on the way in walking, he chanced upon a solitary (aêvatâk) plain, and he saw, in a vision, that mankind and a much-adorned worldly existence were kept away to the north, so that all the people in the earth have become fully manifest in the north. 3. And he at the head (pavan têkʰ) of them was Mêdyomâh, son of Ārâståł¹, even as Ārâståł was brother of Pôrûshaspô²; Mêdyomâh was the leader of all mankind who have gone out to the presence of Zaratušt, and he became their guide, so that first Mêdyomâh and afterwards the whole material existence are attracted.

4. And about his coming out to the conference, on the lapse of those forty-five days, at the place of festival at dawn on the day Dadvô³-pavan-Mitrô of the month Ārdavahistô. 5. And Zaratušt, for the purpose of squeezing the Hôm, went forth to the bank of the water of the Dâtth, because it is the river⁴ of the conference for the supremacy (patlïh) of Zaratušt, and is the water of Āvân⁵ which has consisted of four channels (bêtâ). 6. Zaratušt also

¹ See Yt. XIII, 95.
² So Mêdyomâh was first cousin of Zaratušt, and became his first convert; see also Chap. XXIII, 1.
³ The Pahlavi letters represent Av. dadhvau, ‘creator’; compare the Khvârizmian name 𐭯𐭬 of the fifteenth day of the month in Sachau’s Alûfrûnî, p. 57, l. 35. The date here given is the fifteenth of the second month, as in § 1.
⁴ Assuming that rûd stands for rûd.
⁵ Probably Anâhita, the female spirit of pure water, mentioned by her title Arêdvîsûr in Chap. XVI, 3.
passed on through it; and its first channel was up to the ankle, the second up to the knee, the third up to the parting of the two thighs, and the fourth up to the neck. 7. This was an indicator that his religion comes four times to supremacy; the manifestations of which are through Zaratûst, Aûshêdar, Aûshêdar-máh, and Sôsháns.

8. When he came up from the water, and put on his clothes, he then saw the archangel Vohûmanô in the form (âyûtnakô) of a man, handsome, brilliant, and elegant, who wore his hair curve-tailed, because the curved tail is an indication of duality; who had put on and wore a dress like silk, than which there was no making anything superior, for it was light itself; and his height was nine times as much as that of Zaratûst.

9. He also enquired of Zaratûst thus: 'Who mayst thou be, and from whom of them mayst thou be? also what is mostly thy desire, and the endeavour in thy existence?' 10. And he replied thus: 'I am Zaratûst of the Spîtâmas; among the existences righteousness is more my desire, and my wish is that I may become aware of the will of the sacred beings, and may practise so much righteousness as they exhibit to me in the pure existence.'

11. And Vohûmanô directed Zaratûst thus: 'Do

1 Literally 'up to the leg (zang).'
2 The past and future apostles of Zoroastrianism. For the last three, see Dk. VII, ix–xi.
3 Compare Dk. VII, iii, 51–54.
4 Assuming that vagdûmak is a variant of the usual gâgđûmak. The scorpion (vagdûm) would be a sign of duality, as, being a noxious creature, it was produced by the evil spirit Aharman.
5 Compare Dk. VII, iii, 55–59.
6 Compare ibid. iii, 60–62.
thou proceed to an assembly of the spirits!’

12. As much as Vohûmanô walked on in nine steps, Zarâtûst did in ninety steps, and when he had gone ninety steps farther than him, he saw the assembly of the seven archangels. 13. When he came within twenty-four feet of the archangels, he then did not see his own shadow on the ground, on account of the great brilliancy of the archangels; the position of the assembly was in Irân, and in the direction of the districts on the bank of the water of the Dâlthth.

14. Zarâtûst offered homage, and spoke thus: ‘Homage to Âûharma zd, and homage to the archangels!’ and he went forward and sat down in the seat of the enquirers.

15. As to the asking of questions by Zarâtûst, he enquired of Âûharga zed thus: ‘In the embodied world which is the first of the perfect ones, which the second, and which the third?’ 16. And Âûharmazd replied thus: ‘The first perfection is good thoughts, the second good words, and the third good deeds.’

17. Zarâtûst also enquired thus: ‘Which thing is good, which is better, and which is the best of all habits?’ 18. And Âûharmazd replied thus: ‘The title of the archangels is good, the sight of them is better; and carrying out their commands is the best of all habits.’

19. Afterwards he demonstrated the duality of the original evolutions (bûn gaštânô), and the divergence in each control, and spoke thus: ‘Of those spirits, he who was wicked preferred the

¹ Both MSS. have ‘worse’ here.
² This title, a me shapenta, is ‘immortal benefactor.’
³ The two prime movers in creation.
practice which is iniquitous (Aharman’s desire was for the practice which is iniquitous), and the spirit of righteousness, the propitious (Aûharmazd) prefers righteousness. 20. Specially he demonstrated the divergence in each control of the exhibitors of light, and he spoke thus: ‘Neither our thoughts, nor desires, nor words, nor deeds, nor religion, nor spiritual faculties agree; he who is loving light, his place is with the luminaries; and he who is loving darkness is with the dark ones.’

21. On the same day also, his omniscient wisdom appeared three times: as regards the same first questions, it pointed out the sky in great light and splendour, and in its exhibition of the prevention of darkness, at the sight of which it becomes an opposing existence as regards that darkness. 22. And it exhibited its own appearance proportionally to the sky, when it kept its head at the summit of the sky, its feet at the bottom of the sky, and its hands reached to both sides of the sky; the sky also kept it covered, in the manner of a garment.

23. The six archangels were manifest by their similar stature (ham-bašnīh), in such manner that it is obvious each one successively is apparently one finger’s breadth shorter than the other. 24. The archangels exhibited three kinds of achievement.

---

1 Quoted from Pahl. Yas. XXX, 5 ab. The words in parentheses are glosses inserted by the Pahlavi translator.
2 Both MSS. have ‘spirits’ by inserting a stroke in the middle of the Pahlavi word.
3 An imperfect quotation, omitting glosses, from Pahl. Yas, XLIV, 2 cde (Sp.).
4 A similar idea is expressed in Vd. XIX, 30, but the Pahlavi version of half of it is lost.
5 Apart from Aûharmazd, their president.
(pasâkhtan) for the religion; first, by means of fires, and Zaratûst walked three steps on them, with the words, 'good thoughts, good words, and good deeds,' and was not burnt; and secondly, hot metal is poured on to his chest, cooled thereby, and, grasping it with his hand, he held it for the archangels.

25. Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'After the establishment of the pure religion, when a dispute occurs in the religion, those who are thy disciples will pour it on to a spiritual lord, they will take it up with the hand, and will thoroughly believe in him who is over the whole embodied existence.' 26. The third was cutting with a knife, and the vital parts (ahvôn) becoming visible, which are inside the abdomen, with a flowing forth of blood; and, after the hands are rubbed over it, it became healed. 27. And this is pointed out, namely: 'Thy and thy correligionists' accepting of the pure religion is, as to the steadfast in other religions, such that, through such-like burning of fire, pouring of hot metal, and through an operation with a sharp instrument, there is no perversion from the good religion.'

---

Chapter XXII.

1. About the seven questionings (7-frasñoth), with reference to religion, of the seven archangels, which occurred in seven places.

2. For the occurrence of the first questioning, that of Aûharmazd, the person of Zaratûst, who was

---

1 By way of ordeal, a relic of the old faith in incantation.
2 Compare Dk. VIII, xiv, 5, 6, 9.
3 This has been narrated in the preceding chapter.
the upholder of Aûharmazd, came out to a conference on the bank of the water of Dâttth 1.

3. For the occurrence of the second, which is Vohûmanô's, five animals out of the five species 2 which are the worldly tokens of Vohûmanô, have come with Zaratûst to a conference on Hûgar and Aûsind 3; and on that day also, before their coming out to the conference, their tongues are fully liberated and spoke with human words. 4. And among the rest 4 is a fish of one species, Arzuva 5 by name; of those in burrows (khanôtgânô) are the white ermine and white marten; of the flying creatures (vâyan-dagân) is the Karsipt 6, a bird like a species of water-fowl; of the wide-travellers (farâkhvô-raftârânô) is the hare which is showing wild beasts the way to the water; and of those suitable for grazing (karakô-argântgân) is the white ass-goat; with human words they also accepted the religion from Aûharmazd.

5. With the chieftainship of the five species they are intrusted, so that the like animals also, with their own voices, and as much as their knowledge is capable, shall recount the powerfulness of the religion.

1 See Dk. VII, iii, 51, 54.
2 These species, which are named in § 4, are those mentioned in the Avesta, Visp. I, i.
3 Av. Hukairya of Yt. XII, 24, and Us-hindu of Yt. VIII, 32, described in Bd. XII, 5, 6, as two neighbouring mountains, for the pure water of Arêdisûr falls from the summit of Hûgar to Aûsind which stands in the circumambient ocean.
4 The remainder of K 35, the MS. brought by Westergaard from Kirmân, is lost; but an old copy of it (BK, see the Introduction) exists in Bombay, which supplies the missing text, as an authority independent of T.
5 See Bd. XIV, 26; apparently the same as the Ariz, or Kar, the chief of fish, ibid. XVIII, 3, 5; XXIV, 13.
6 See Bd. XIV, 23; XIX, 16; XXIV, 11.
6. And freedom from assault, exemption from persecution, and proper maintenance of the five species of animals, were prescribed by him to Zaratûst with seemingly very awful admonition.

7. For the occurrence of the third questioning, which is Ardavahistô’s, the spirits of the fires have come out with Zaratûst to a conference at the Tôgân water; and, in that questioning, care for the proper maintenance of the Varahrân fire, and the propitiation of all fires, is explained to him.

8. For the occurrence of the fourth questioning, which is Shatvêr’s, the spirits of the metals have come with Zaratûst to a conference at Sarât, a settlement on the Mîvân; and he was fully admonished about various proper preservations of the metals, and as to not producing warlike accoutrements of gold.

9. For the occurrence of the fifth questioning, which is Spendarmad’s, the spirits of the regions, frontiers, stations (aûstâmân), settlements (rûda-stâkân), and districts, as many as were desirable, have come out with Zaratûst to a conference where there is a spring (khânţgô-aê) which comes out from the Asnavad mountain, and goes into the Dâltth, like those of Satavês who is blowing the Pâfrigs.

10. And Zaratûst was also thus ad-

---

1 By Vohûmanô, as the protector of useful animals.
2 Possibly the Tegend river, the Zend or Zôndak of Bd. XX, 7, 15.
3 The Bahram, or sacred fire at places of worship.
4 Names not clearly identified, and readings uncertain.
5 In Ātûr-pâtakân, and the Günasp, fire was established upon it (see Bd. XII, 2, 26; XVII, 7).
6 Pahl. ‘Satavês-t Pâfrîg damânô ânô čigûn.’ Referring probably to Yt. VIII, 8, 9. Satavês is the southern chieftain of the stars, as correctly stated in the Irânian Bûndahis (compare Bd. II, 7; XIII, 12); and the Pâfrigs are meteors.
monished by her, about the care and propitiation of the earth: that each district is *to be* intrusted to a faithful testifier (*gôkâs-i vâvar*), each settlement to a judge acquainted with the law, each station to an officiating priest (*magôpatô*) of just intentions, and each frontier to a pure priestly authority (*radô*); over all is proclaimed the councillor of the spirits, the supreme priest (*magôpatânô magôpatô*), and through him the sovereignty of Aûhârmažd is provided.

11. For the occurrence of the sixth questioning, which is Khûrdad's, the spirits of seas and rivers have come with Zarâtûst to a conference at the Asnavad mountain ¹, and he was told about the care and propitiation of water.

12. For the occurrence of the seventh questioning, which is Amûrdad's, the spirits of plants have come out with Zarâtûst to a conference on the precipitous bank of the Darega ², on the bank (bâr) of the water of Dâttth, and different places; and he was informed about the care and propitiation of plants.

13. The seven questionings are explained within the length of these winters, which are of five months, and within ten years ³.

---

¹ See § 9.
² Pahl. 'pavan Daregân zbâr' = Av. 'Dregya paiti zbarahi' of Vd. XIX, 4; a mythical river in Afrân-vég, where Pûrôushaspô resided (Bd. XX, 32).
³ The Pahlavi is rather vague, but it is clear that Zarâtûst starts for his conference at thirty years of age (Chap. XXI, 1), returns from it ten years later (Chap. XXIII, 1), and the conversion of Vistâsp occupies two years longer (Chap. XXIII, 5), occurring when Zarâtûst was forty-two years old and thirty-five years before his passing away at the age of seventy-seven (Chap. XXIII, 9).

At this point another dislocation of text occurs in all existing
CHAPTER XXIII.

1. On the completion of revelation, that is, at the end of the ten years, Médyômâh, son of Ârâstât, became faithful to Zarâtûst.

2. Afterwards, on having obtained his requests, he came back to the conference of Aûharmazd, and he spoke thus: 'In ten years only one man has been attracted by me.' 3. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'There will be days when so few are not attracted by you, who are themselves the occasion of the resurrection of the world; when, apart from Dahâk, the beneficence of the formation of the renovation of the universe attracts every one besides, and the impenitence of Dahâk is destroyed.'

4. When he came out from the presence of Aûharmazd, with the same paradox, he thereby indicated his religion as complete to Spendarmad through his intelligence.

5. In the two years after that, the Kâvîgs and

MSS., owing to the accidental interpolation of three loose folios of another text, between this chapter and the next, in some unknown copy written before 1530. In the MSS. the text is written continuously, without division into chapters. But the connection of this chapter with the next one, which is here restored to its proper position, is clearly shown by the reference to the 'ten years' of conference, with which this chapter ends, and the next one begins. The accidentally interpolated text is here classified as Chaps. XXIV and XXV, but its real connections have not yet been traced.

1 That is, the replies of the archangels to his enquiries.

2 See Dk. VII, i, 26. He was chained by Frêdûn in Mount Dimâvand, to escape in the latter days, to be slain by Keresâsp, and to be specially punished at the resurrection (Bd. XII, 31; XXX, 16; Byt. III, 55-61).

3 See Dk. VII, iv, 2.
Karaps of Vistâsp, in the manner of opponents (hamêstarânîh), propounded thirty-three enquiries (khvâstakô)\(^1\) to him, so that by command of Vistâsp he became the explainer of those thirty-three enquiries. 6. Of the thirty-three habits\(^2\) of iniquity, come for opposition to the religion of the sacred beings; of the declaration, by revelation, of those thirty-three indications of fetters\(^3\); and of the restraint of the thirty-three iniquitous practices by the thirty-three best good works, there are statements in revelation. 7. Including the acceptance of the religion by Vistâsp from Zaratûst, after the re-demonstration of its judicially multiform prophecy and spiritual character, which are looked into through the evidence of three speakers about them, the archangels who, with worldly manifestation, have become apparent unto Vistâsp and his councillors and mighty ones; they are Vohûmanô, Ardâvahistô, and the Bûrûn-Mitrô fire\(^4\).

8. About the reward which existed before the beneficence of Zaratûst, and its being seen how, through guidance by Aûharmazd, it is demonstrated by him to those of the world, so that Mêdyômâh is attracted in the tenth year in the forest of reedy hollows (kanyâstânô\(^5\) vêsakô) which is the haunt of swine of the wild-boar species (khazûrá-t varázo gâs); in the twentieth year the Kavig who is son

---

\(^1\) See Dk. VII, iv, 67.

\(^2\) Reading sôn = Pers. sân; but the MSS. have dênô, 'religions.' The thirty sins and thirty-three good works, detailed in Mkh. XXXVI, XXXVII, are certainly referred to at the end of this section.

\(^3\) Compare Chap. XII, 5, and Dk. VII, iv, 67.

\(^4\) See Dk. VII, iv, 74.

\(^5\) Hybrid Zvâris of Pers. nayistân.
of Kûndah\textsuperscript{1} is attracted; in the thirtieth year the Khyôns\textsuperscript{2} arrive, who make an incursion (var\textsubscript{a}dakô) into the countries of Irân, owing to the Kavgis, those who are more of their own race; and in the fortieth year Vohûnêm, son of Avarôstar\textsuperscript{3}, is born.

9. In the forty-seventh year Zarâtûst passes away, who attains seventy-seven years and forty days in the month Ardavahistô, on the day Khûr\textsuperscript{4}; and for eight rectified (véhi\textsubscript{k}akô) months, till the month Dadvô and day Khûr, he should be brought forward as to be reverenced.

10. In the same month Ardavahistô, in the sixty-third\textsuperscript{6} year, Frashôstar\textsuperscript{6} passed away, and in the sixty-fourth year Gâmâsp\textsuperscript{7}, the same as became the priest of priests after Zarâtûst; in the seventy-third year Hangâürûsh, son of Gâmâsp\textsuperscript{8}; in the eightieth year Asmôk-khanvatô\textsuperscript{9}, and also in the eightieth

\textsuperscript{1} Or Kûnîh which is the name of a demon (see Sg. XVI, 13, 16, 18, 19); but such an identification is uncertain.

\textsuperscript{2} Av. Hu\textsubscript{ya}ona of Yt. IX, 30, 31; XVII, 50, 51. Compare Dk. VII, iv, 77, 83, 84, 87–90; v, 7.

\textsuperscript{3} Av. gen. ‘Vohu-nemang, hô Avâraostôis’ of Yt. XIII, 104.

\textsuperscript{4} The eleventh day of the second month.

\textsuperscript{6} T has 43\textsuperscript{d}, and the date is lost in the other MS. authority. But 43\textsuperscript{d} is highly improbable for two reasons: first, it would make this date the only one out of chronological order in the series here given; secondly, it would render it inconsistent with the statement, in Dk. VII, vi, 12, that two priests came, from other regions, to ask Frashôstar about the religion, fifty-seven years after it had been accepted by Zarâtûst. By substituting 63\textsuperscript{d} (the Pahlavi cipher most likely to be corrupted into 43\textsuperscript{d}) both these inconsistencies are removed.

\textsuperscript{6} See Dk. VII, vi, 12; V, ii, 12.

\textsuperscript{7} See Dk. V, ii, 12; iii, 4.

\textsuperscript{8} Av. gen. ‘Hang, haurushô Gâmâspanahê’ of Yt. XIII, 104.

\textsuperscript{9} Av. gen. ‘Asmô-\textsuperscript{h}vanvatô’ of Yt. XIII, 96, and Westergaard’s Yt. XXII, 37.
year Kaped-usaha-spâê\(^1\), who is called also Akht the wizard, is killed.

11. Of the six great upholders of the religion there are the two daughters of Zaratûst, whose names are Frêno and Sritö\(^2\), with Aharûbô-stôtô, son of Médyômâh\(^3\), and another three, who are renowned for their religion for a hundred years, who are Vohûnêm\(^4\) that is born in the fortieth year of the religion, Sênô\(^5\) is afterwards born and passes away in the two-hundredth year, and as to his hundred-discipledom\(^6\), it exists day and night till the three-hundredth year. 12. Afterwards the religion is disturbed and the monarchy is contested (ganglaitô).

13. About the three customs (dâdô) which Zaratûst prescribed as the best:—The first of them is this: ‘Do not go without others, except with magisterial authority (apatkâr radîha);’ the second is: ‘Though they shall proceed unlawfully as to you, consider your actions lawfully beforehand;’ and the third is: ‘Next-of-kin marriage, for the

\(^1\) As kaped is Zvâris for ‘many,’ we may assume that kaped-usa = Av. nom. pourus which usually becomes pouru in compounds; so that the compound name, or title, in the text, probably represents Av. Pouruspâdha (Yt. X, 109, 111), ‘having many troops,’ a suitable title for Akht the wizard (Av. Akhtya of Yt. V, 82) who is said, in Gf. I, 2, to have invaded a district with an army of seven myriads. He was killed, in Zoroastrian fashion, by the recital of a religious formula.

\(^2\) There was a third daughter, Pûrušîst (see Bd. XXXII, 5), but she may not have survived her father.

\(^3\) Av. gen. ‘Ashastvô Maidhyôi-maung hôis’ of Yt. XIII, 106.

\(^4\) See § 8.

\(^5\) He was born in the 100th year; see Dk. VII, vii, 6.

\(^6\) This seems to be the sixth upholder of the religion, the third of those lasting about a century.
sake of the pure progress of your race, is the best of the actions of the living, which are provided for the proper begetting of children.

Chapter XXIV.

1. About the five dispositions of priests, and the ten admonitions with which all instruction as to religion is connected.

2. Of those five dispositions the first is innocence.

3. The second is discrimination among thoughts, words, and deeds; to fully distinguish the particulars of destruction from indestructiveness, such as

---

1 This chapter ends the first series of Selections of Zád-spáram, and is immediately followed in the MSS. by a second series. It is evident from the extent of this chapter, as compared with the amount of text contained in the three misplaced folios (see p. 162, n. 3), that this chapter could have occupied only about one folio and a half in the dislocated MS., so that the second series must have commenced on the same folio as contained the end of this chapter, and that Chaps. XXIV, XXV cannot have belonged to this series. The three misplaced folios contain two distinct texts; the first (Chap. XXIV) is an Irânian version of the Five Dispositions of priests and the Ten Admonitions, and is here translated; the second (Chap. XXV) contains some details about the Nasks and Gáthas, and has been already translated in S.B.E., vol. xxxvii, pp. 401–405.

2 This Irânian version of the Dispositions and Admonitions is more complete than the Indian version, which, like the Bundahis, was brought from Irân five or six centuries ago, and is found in two MSS. (Pt. and J) written in India about 500 years ago, and now in the libraries of Dastúrs Dr. Peshotan and Dr. Jámâsp, respectively. Passages which occur only in the Irânian version are here enclosed in brackets, and other differences between the two versions are mentioned in the notes.

3 The Indian version has 'of.'
noxious creatures from cattle; and of production from unproductiveness, such as the righteous and worthy from the wicked and unworthy].

4. The third is authoritativeness, because that priestly master is always wiser and speaking more correctly who is taught wisely and teaches with more correct words.

5. The fourth is to [understand and consider the ceremonial as the ceremonial of Aðharmasd, and the essentials with all goodness, beneficence, and authority; to be steadfast in his religion, and to consider the indications of protection (sâyag) which are established for his religion. 6. To maintain the reverence of the luminaries prayerfully, also the reverence of the emanations from the six archangels, be they fire, be they earth, or be they of bodily form, and of the creatures which are formed by them; also the pure cleansing from dead matter, menstruation, bodily refuse, and other hurtfulness; this is in order that they may be characterised, and thereby constituted, as better-principled, more sensible, and purer, and they may become less faulty. 7. The reverence of mankind is to consider authoritatively about knowledge and property; the reverence of cattle is about fodder, little hardship, and moderate maintenance; the reverence of plants is about sowing and ripening for the food of the worthy. 8. The ceremonial which is glorifying all

---

1 Ind. vers. has only: 'to celebrate the ceremonial of the sacred beings with the correct words, inward prayers, and complete mastery of the text (narm–nasgîhâ) in the ritual.' It omits §§ 6–8 altogether.

2 T has 'limit (kûstak).'

3 T has 'issue.'

4 T has 'seven.'

5 Or 'more fragrant;' hû-bôdtar has both meanings.
the sacred beings, praises the luminaries and worldly creations improperly, and is antagonistic to them, because complete glorification is proper through complete recitation of the ritual; and the ceremonial of any one whatever is his own proper duty professionally, so long as it is possible to keep proceeding with very little sinfulness].

9. The fifth is to struggle prayerfully\(^1\), day and night, with your own fiend\(^2\), and all life long not to depart from steadfastness, nor allow your proper duty\(^3\) to go out of your hands.

10. And the first of those ten admonitions is to proceed with good repute, for the sake of occasioning approving remarks as to\(^4\) the good repute of your own guardian and teacher, high-priest and master\(^5\).

11. The second is to become awfully refraining from evil repute, for the sake of evil repute not occurring to relations and guardians.

12. The third is not to beat your own teacher with a snatched-up stick, and not to bring scandal upon his name, for the sake of annoying him, by uttering that which was not heard from your own teacher.

13. The fourth is that whatever is taught liberally by your own teacher, you have to deliver back to the worthy, for the sake of not extorting a declaration of renown from the righteous\(^6\).

14. The fifth is that the reward of doers of good

---

1 Ind. vers. has: 'to remain in diligence intelligently.'
2 Ind. vers. has: 'opponent.'
3 Ind. vers. has: 'steadfastness in religion, and to be diligent in your proper duty.' But it omits the rest of the sentence.
4 Ind. vers. has: 'for the sake of the appropriateness of.'
5 Or 'father.'
6 T has: 'not extracting the purity of the righteous.'
works and the punishment of criminals have to be established by law, for the sake of progress 1.

15. The sixth is to keep the way of the good open to your house, for the sake of making rightousness welcome in your own abode.

16. The seventh is that, for the sake of not developing the fiend insensibly in your reason, you are not to keep it with the religion of the good, nor to remain in impenitence of sin.

17. The eighth is that, for the sake of severing the fiend from the reason, you have to force malice away from your thoughts, and to become quickly repentant of sin.

18. The ninth is to fully understand the forward movement of the religion, also to keep the advancing of the religion further forwards, and to seek your share of duty therein; and on a backward movement, when adversity happens to the religion, to have the religion back again, and to keep your body in the continence (maka vādith) of religion.

19. The tenth is that there is to be a period of obedience (Srōshdārith) towards the ruler and priestly authority, the high-priesthood of the religious 6.

---

1 Ind. vers. adds: 'of religion.'
2 Ind. vers. inserts: 'a token of;' and T has: 'making the righteousness of the sacred beings in writing welcome.'
3 Ind. vers. has: 'not to maintain malice with the good,' which is more probable, and kēnō, 'malice,' is easily corrupted into dēnō, 'religion,' in Pahlavi writing.
4 This eighth admonition is omitted in the Irānian MSS.
5 Ind. vers. adds: 'and backward movement.'
6 Chapter XXV, about the three divisions of revelation, is translated in S. B. E., vol. xxxvii, pp. 401-405.
INDEX.
OBSERVATIONS.

1. The references, in this index, are to books, chapters, and sections; the chapters being denoted by the larger ciphers.

2. Though different forms of the same name may occur in the text, only one form is usually given in the index, to which the references to all forms are attached; except when the forms differ so much as to be widely separated in the index.

3. Pāzand forms are printed in italics, as their orthography is usually corrupt. In all such italicised names any letters which would elsewhere be italic are printed in roman type.

4. Abbreviations used are:—Av. for Avesta, Dk. for Dīnkard, Int. for Introduction, m. for mountain, meas. for measure, MS. for manuscript, n. for footnote, Pahl. for Pahlavi, patron. for patronymic, r. for river, Zs. for Selections of Zād-sparam.
INDEX.

Abálíz, heretic, Dk. V, 1, 2 n.
Ábán, month, Int. 87.
Aeshm, demon, Dk. VII, 1, 18; 4, 87, 88; 7, 7.
Aéváták, r., Dk. VII, 3, 51.
Agash, demon, Dk. VII, 4, 12.
Aharižvang, angel, Dk. VII, 7, 12.
Aharman, demon, Int. 13, 29; Dk. VII, 11, 7; V, 2, 6; Zs. 14, 6, 8; 21, 8 n, 19.
Aharúbō-stótō, man, Zs. 23, 11.
Ahunavair, Int. 16, 30, 48, 49; Dk. VII, 1, 12, 13; 4, 38, 42, 45, 80.
Ahúrvadáspō, man, Zs. 13, 6.
Aírán-vég, land, Dk. VII, 2, 30 n; 8, 60; 9, 23.
Aírík, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70; Zs. 13, 61; prince, Dk. VII, 1, 28–30; 2, 70; V, 2, 3; Zs. 13, 6.
Aíryák, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70; Zs. 13, 6.
Aíryéfshíg, man, Dk. VII, 1, 34 n.
Aíryéfshvá, man, Dk. VII, 1, 34.
Akhrē-khiradō, prince, Dk. V, 3, 3.
Akhē, prince, Dk. V, 3.
Akō-manō, demon, Zs. 14, 8–11.
Avkūn, Christian priest, Dk. VII, 7, 11 n.
Aílák or Aírāk, district, Dk. VII, 2, 9.
Albirūnī, Int. 74, 86–88.
Albūrē, m., Zs. 20, 4 n.
Ameshaspéntas, Int. 89.
Amūrdad, angel, Dk. VII, 2, 19; 5, 9; Zs. 22, 12.
Anāhīta, angel, Zs. 21, 5 n.
Anang bad, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70; Zs. 13, 6.
Anērân, day, Zs. 21, 1.
Aôšnār, priest, Int. 3; Dk. VII, 1, 36.
Arabs, Int. 10; Dk. VII, 1, 34; 8, 47.
Arab victories, Int. 61.
Arag, land, Zs. 20, 4.
Arang, r., Zs. 20, 4 n.
Arang, woman, Dk. VII, 8, 55; 9, 18; 10, 15.
Arāstāl, man, Zs. 21, 3; 23, 1.
Archangels, Int. 4, 10, 11, 15, 18, 19, 29, 35, 48, 49, 55, 61; Dk. VII, 1, 4, 7, 12, 13, 34; 2, 16, 18, 21, 22, 34, 39, 54; 8, 51; 4, 5, 22, 26, 75, 76, 80, 83; 5, 12; 6, 5, 13; 7, 19, 20; 8, 5, 26 n, 60; 9, 23; V, 2, 1, 12; Zs. 17, 5; 21, 8, 12–14, 18, 23, 24; 22, 1; 23, 2 n, 7.
Archdemons, Int. 4, 29.
Arđāl-fravard, angel, Zs. 16, 3.
Arđashir the Sásānian, Int. 43, 57, 58, 62, 88.
Arđavahidō, angel, Int. 41; Dk. VII, 2, 19, 29; Zs. 22, 7, 28, 7; month, Zs. 21, 4; 28, 9, 10.
Arēdźvisūr, angel, Zs. 18, 3; 21, 5 n.
Arēgād-aspa, king, Int. 30.
Arēgād-bārsan, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70; Zs. 13, 6.
Aresh, demon, Int. 29.
Arēźrāspō, priest, Dk. VII, 6, 12.
Arēźvāk, priest, Dk. VII, 7, 8–11.
Argāsp, king, Int. 7, 29, 55; Dk. VII, 4, 77, 83, 84, 87–89; 5, 7; V, 2, 12 n; 3, 1.
Aristotle, Int. 71.
Ariyārāma, ruler, Int. 70.
Ariż, fish, Zs. 22, 4 n.
Armenian revolt, Int. 61.
Arshāma, ruler, Int. 70.
Artakhshatar, king, Int. 9; Dk. VII, 7, 12; V, 3, 3.
Arūm = Asia Minor, Dk. V, 1, 5.
Arūman, nation, Dk. VII, 8, 47.
Aruzvā, fish, Zs. 22, 4.
Ashavahidō, angel, Int. 11, 48, 55; Dk. VII, 1, 34; 8, 17, 18, 24, 25; 4, 74, 75, 78, 84–86; 8, 5 n; 9, 8; V, 2, 9.
Ashem-voňū, Int. 49; Dk. VII, 4, 80 n.
Ashis-vanguard, angel, Dk. VII, 4, 8 r
Azkandian, dynasty, Int. 43, 57
Asnavad, m., Zs. 22, 4, 11
Aspigar, patron, Dk. VII, 4, 4; 70; V, 3, 3
Assyria, land, Dk. V, 4, 4
Atossa, queen, Dk. VII, 4, 86 r
Atur, land, Dk. V, 4, 3
Atur-farnbag, priest, Int. 14; Dk. V, 1, 2, 3
Aturpad, priest, Int. 9, 64-67, 70, 88; Dk. VII, 5, 5; 7, 19-21; V, 3, 3
Aturpadakan, land, Zs. 16, 12; 22, 9 n
Ausharmac, Int. 4-6, 18, 29, 30, 47, 48; Dk. VII, 1, 1, 2, 4, 5, 9-13, 17, 20-22, 38, 41, 42, 44, 46; 2, 2, 3, 14, 17-19, 31, 37, 47, 54; 3, 1, 48, 49, 51; 4, 2, 12, 14, 16, 17, 21-27, 39, 41, 47-49, 51-54, 65, 66, 74, 75, 77, 80, 84-86, 5, 12; 6, 5, 13; 7, 15, 8, 16 n, 24, 25, 29, 33, 38-43, 50, 52, 54; 8, 15, 17, 10, 12, 14; 11, 6, 11; V, 1, 1; 2, 6, 8, 10, 12, 15; 4, 6; Zs. 12, 2, 8; 18, 5, 6; 14, 4, 9, 14, 15, 19, 7, 18, 3; 21, 14-16, 18, 19, 23 n, 25; 22, 2, 4, 10; 23, 2-4, 8, 24, 5, 5
— king, Int. 64.
AuramazdA, Int. 84.
Aurvaapsha, king, Int. 70.
Aurvalita-dang, king, Int. 6, 47, 49, 55; Dk. VII, 4, 7-10, 14-16, 20.
Aurvalita-dih, king, Zs. 20, 8.
Aushaan-rud, r, Dk. VII, 8, 54.
Aushedar, apostle, Int. 10, 11, 55, 61, 63, 66-68; Dk. VII, 1, 42, 51, 52; 4, 81 n; 8, 1; 31, 51, 55; 9, 1, 2; 10, 1; V, 2, 15; 3, 3; Zs. 21, 7.
Aushedar-man, apostle, Int. 11, 12, 55; Dk. VII, 1, 42, 52, 59; 5, 1, 18; 10, 1, 2; 11, 1, 2; V, 2, 15; 8, 3; Zs. 21, 7.
Auskhsh, Int. 16; Zs. 15, 2.
Ausind, m., Zs. 22, 4.
Azuobb, king, Int. 55; Dk. VII, 1, 31; 8, 11 n; V, 4, 4 n.
Avan, angel, Zs. 21, 5.
Avarthrabu, priest, Int. 9, 64, 70; Dk. VII, 7, 20, 21.
Avarostar, man, Zs. 23, 8.
Avesta, Int. 7, 30, 36, 37, 42, 49, 55, 64, 70, 78, 90; Dk. VII, 4, 44, 4, 63, 5, 11; 8, 13, 14, 7, 5, 38, 39; 8, 2, 10, 22, 36; V, 2, 6, 4, 6.
Avesta scholars, Int. 78, 79, 90.
Avestic rites, Dk. VII, 7, 2.
Avirafaianeg, man, Dk. VII, 1, 34 n.
Ayangabad, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70; Zs. 18, 6.
Ayazem, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70 n; Zs. 13, 6.
Az-i Dahak, king, Dk. VII, 11, 3.

Babylon, Dk. VII, 4, 72 n.
Bactria, Int. 74.
Bahman, angel, Int. 41, 43.
Bahman Yart, MS., Int. 44.
Bahram GOr, king, Int. 43.
Bahram-i Hamavand, king, Int. 43.
Bahram Khurzaad, copyist, Dk. VII, 7, 14 n.
Bakyr, m., Dk. VII, 1, 39 n.
Bzpel, city, Int. 50; Dk. VII, 4, 72; V, 2, 9.
Bartarush, karap, Int. 34, 35; Dk. VII, 5, 12 n.
Barzinakurs, man, Int. 34.
BarzD KAMDIN, dastur, Int. 32.
Behistun inscription, Int. 70, 84.
Beted-Makdis=Jerusalem, Dk. V, 1, 5.
Bitak, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70; Zs. 13, 6.
Bor-tor, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70.
BrZD-resh=BrzDrok-reshh, Int. 29; Zs. 15, 3.
BrzDrok-resh, karap, Int. 49; Dk. VII, 2, 9 n; 3, 20, 24, 28, 32, 39 n; 12 n; V, 3, 2.
BrzDrory, karap, Zs. 15, 3.
BrzDruksh, karap, Zs. 15, 3; 17, 6.
Bud, demon, Dk. VII, 4, 37, 38.
Buddha, Int. 78.
Bukht-Narsih=Nebuchadnezzar, Int. 14; Dk. V, 1, 4, 5.
Bundahiz, MS., Int. 15, 53-59, 61, 62, 68, 69.
Bursin-Mitre, fire, Zs. 23, 7.

Cambyses, king, Dk. VII, 4, 86 n.
Ch in Oriental words is printed K.
Christian persecution, Int. 63, 65.
Chronology, Int. 51-89.
Creator, Dk. VII, 1, 4-6, 8, 10, 11, 15, 19, 21, 24, 25, 28, 41; 2, 2;
INDEX.

Eastwick's translation of the Zartušt nāmah, Int. 31, 32.
Égiptos, land, Zs. 20, 4 n.
Enclosure made by Yim, Dk. VII, 1, 24.
Epistle of Mānūšāhār, Int. 25.
Erīḵā, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70 n; Zs. 16, 13.
Eudoxus, Int. 71.
Evil spirit, Int. 55; Dk. VII, 1, 19; 2, 67; 4, 36, 39; 8, 47.
Exposition of the good religion, MS., Int. 2; Dk. VII, 1, 2, 4.

Farukhīzād, priest, Dk. V, 1, 2, 3.
Fiend, Int. 13; Dk. VII, 1, 6, 12, 13, 26, 32; 4, 36–39, 55, 57, 59–61; 8, 30, 32; 9, 2, 10, 5, 11, 7; V, 2, 6, 8; Zs. 17, 4.
Five dispositions of priests, MS., Zs. 24, 1–9.
Fravadās, region, Dk. VII, 6, 12 n.
Frāŋgūzak, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70; Zs. 13, 6.
Frahān, patron., Dk. VII, 8, 55; 9, 18; 10, 15.
Frahimravāz, man, Dk. VII, 2, 3.
Frāḏēḵ, heretic, Dk. VII, 1, 36.
Frangrasiyāk, king, Dk. VII, 1, 31, 39; 2, 69; 11, 3.
Frashōtar, priest, Int. 29, 30, 55; Dk. VII, 6, 12; V, 2, 12; Zs. 28, 10.
Frāsiyāv = Frangrasiyāk, Int. 55; Dk. VII, 1, 39 n; 2, 68; V, 3, 3 n; Zs. 12, 3.
Fravāk, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70; V, 4, 1, 2; Zs. 13, 6.
Fravashis, spirits, Int. 30, 55, 72, 75, 77.
Frāzūsak, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70; Zs. 13, 6.
Frēḏūn, king, Int. 33, 55; Dk. VII, 1, 25, 26, 28, 29, 34 n; 2, 61, 70; 11, 3; V, 1, 8; 4, 3; Zs. 13, 6; 23, 3 n.
Frēnō, woman, Zs. 13, 1; another, 23, 11.
Frīz, man, Zs. 13, 6.

Gandarepañ, monster, Dk. VII, 1, 32.
Gāthas quoted, Zs. 15, 7.
Gaugamela, battle, Int. 54.
Gāyomār, man, Int. 3, 55, 77; Dk. VII, 1, 4, 6–9; 2, 70; V, 1, 8; Zs. 13, 6.
Gêfar-tôrâ, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70.
Gôbák-abûl, woman, Dk. VII, 10, 15.
Good works, Dk. VII, 1, 6.
Gôdûrvan, Int. 29.
Gushnasphâh, king, Dk. VII, 7, 14 n.
Gûnasph fire, Int. 41; Zs. 22, 9 n.
Gûtâsp, king, Int. 34, 36, 41–43.
Gûzak, princess, Dk. VII, 2, 70; Zs. 13, 6.
Gyêmârâ, Int. 14; Dk. V, 1, 2, 3; 4, 8.
Gâmâsp, priest, Int. 29, 30, 42, 55; Dk. VII, 4, 77 n; 6, 12 n; 7, 3 n; V, 2, 12; 8, 4; Zs. 23, 10.
Hadish, angel, Int. 3, 48; Dk. VII, 1, 12, 13.
Haêâdâspas, family, Int. 30.
Haêâdâspô, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70; Zs. 13, 6.
Hakhâmânir, ruler, Int. 70.
Hangâârûsh, priest, Int. 55; Zs. 23, 10.
Hânû, septuagenarian, Zs. 20, 4.
Haoma, angel, Int. 30.
Haoshyangha, king, Int. 30.
Harâbhar, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70; Zs. 13, 6.
Hásar of length, Zs. 12, 4.
— time, Dk. VII, 4, 49.
Házân, karap, Zs. 15, 3.
Hazarâhs, Int. 43.
Heaven (best existence), Dk. VII, 6, 1, 11.
— (supreme), Dk. VII, 1, 7, 24.
Hércules, Dk. VII, 1, 32 n.
Hermippus, Int. 71.
Hôm-juice, Dk. VII, 4, 85; Zs. 20, 15.
Hôm plant, Int. 49, 55; Dk. VII, 2, 14, 22, 23, 25, 26, 28–31, 34, 35, 46; 4, 85; Zs. 12, 12, 15, 18, 4; 20, 16; 21, 5.
Hôm-strainer, Dk. VII, 4, 85.
Hôm-water, Int. 5, 6, 47; Dk. VII, 8, 51, 54; 4, 29, 30, 32, 35.
Hôshang, king, Int. 3, 48, 55; Dk. VII, 1, 16, 18; 2, 70; V, 1, 8; 4, 2; Zs. 18, 6.
Hûgar, m., Zs. 22, 3.
Hûmâî, queen, Int. 54, 55, 57.
Hundred-discipledom, Int. 54, 55.
Hûtôs, queen, Int. 29, 30; Dk. VII, 4, 86; 6, 11 n.
Hvôbas, tribe, Int. 29; Dk. VII, 6, 12.
Hvôvi, woman, Dk. VII, 6, 12 n.
Hyoanâs, nation, Dk. VII, 4, 77 n.
Hystaspès, king, Int. 70.
Idolators, Dk. VII, 1, 18 n.
Idolatry, Int. 50; Dk. VII, 1, 19, 4, 72.
Idol-temple, Int. 50; Dk. VII, 1, 39.
India, Int. 43.
Irân, land, Int. 9, 43, 54; Dk. VII, 1, 30, 31, 33, 38, 50; 2, 62, 68, 4, 42, 81 n, 88, 89; 5, 5, 9, 7, 1, 2, 29, 33, 38, 39, 8, 1, 2, 4, 7–9, 19; 0, 13; V, 1, 5; 4, 1, 3; Zs. 12, 3, 8, 9; 21, 13; 23, 8.
Irânian, Int. 14; Dk. VII, 2, 63, 70 n; 4, 90; V, 4, 6.
Irânian Bundahîsh, Dk. VII, 1, 34 n; 2, 9 n; 7, 5 n; Zs. 22, 9 n.
— country, Dk. VII, 1, 37.
— monarchy, Int. 43.
Irânians, Int. 11, 14; Dk. VII, 2, 63; 4, 42, 77 n; 8, 16 n; 11, 3 n; V, 8, 1; Zs. 16, 2.
Îsadâvâstar, man, Dk. VII, 8, 55; 9, 18; 10, 15.
Isfendyâr, prince, Int. 39, 42; Dk. VII, 7, 5 n.
J in Oriental words is printed G.
Jerusalem, Int. 14; Dk. V, 1, 2 n.
Jews, Int. 14; Dk. V, 1, 2 n.
Kabéd-ô-spâî, wizard, Zs. 23, 10.
Kâî=Kâîvî, Dk. VII, 4, 64; 8, 40, 60; 0, 23.
Kâî-Arsh, prince, Dk. VII, 1, 35.
Kâî-Kâîs, priest, Int. 32.
Kâî-Khûsîrî, king, Int. 12, 50, 55; Dk. VII, 1, 39; 10, 10; 11, 3; V, 4, 4 n.
Kâî-Kobâd, king, Int. 55; Dk. VII, 1, 13, 8, 11 n; V, 4, 4 n.
Kâî-Lohârâsp, king, Int. 14, 55; Dk. V, 1, 5.
Kâî-Lostrî, Int. 27; Dk. VII, 8, 42.
Kâî-Sîyâvakhsh, prince, Dk. VII, 1, 38.
Kâî-Us, king, Int. 3, 15, 55; Dk. VII, 1, 35, 37; 2, 62, 63, 65, 66; 8, 2 n; Zs. 12, 9–11, 14, 15, 17, 20, 21, 23, 24.
Kâî-Vîstäsp, king, Int. 3, 29, 55; Dk. VII, 1, 41, 47, 49; 4, 1, 76, 77, 86; 6, 6; 6, 4, 9, 11; 7, 39; 11, 3; V, 1, 5 n; 2, 8, 11; 3, 1.
Kangdez, fortress, Int. 7, 10, 43;
INDEX.

DK. VII, 1, 38; 4, 81 n; 5, 12; 8, 3 n.
Kanyisala, lake, DK. VII, 11, 8.
Karp, fish, Zs. 22, 4 n.
Karap, Int. 4-6, 16, 17, 47, 49, 55; DK. VII, 2, 9, 45; 3, 4, 7-9, 11, 13, 15, 20, 24, 26, 28, 32, 34, 39, 41, 50; 4, 2, 6, 14, 21, 25, 61, 64, 67; 8, 26, 40, 60; 9, 23; 10, 5; V, 2, 3; Zs. 15, 2; 18, 1-4, 6-8; 17, 1; 18, 2, 5, 7; 19, 1; 23, 5.
Karapans, Int. 30.
Karadar-tor, man, DK. VII, 2, 70.
Karupt, bird, Zs. 22, 4.
Karsha, man, DK. VII, 7, 12 n.
Kavda, king, Int. 58; DK. VII, 7, 26.
Kava Husrava, king, Int. 30, 70.
— Kavata, king, Int. 70.
— Kasa, king, Int. 70.
Kavig, Int. 4, 55; DK. VII, 2, 9; 8, 18; Zs. 23, 5, 8.
Kavis, Int. 30.
Kavi Vutsapa, king, Int. 30, 70; DK. VII, 7, 12 n.
Kayam glory, DK. VII, 4, 43; 11, 3.
Kayans, Int. 3; DK. VII, 1, 33; 2, 9 n; 7, 12; V, 1, 8; 4, 4, 5.
Kereshapp, hero, Int. 12, 29; DK. VII, 1, 32; 10, 10; Zs. 28, 3 n.
Kersevaz, prince, DK. VII, 1, 39.
Khakan, Int. 27; DK. VII, 8, 42.
Khallfah, Al-Mamun, DK. V, 1, 2 n.
Khur, day, Zs. 23, 9.
Khurday, angel, DK. VII, 2, 19, 38; 5, 9; 8, 5 n; Zs. 22, 11.
Khurddal, fire, Int. 41.
Khusrav I, king, Int. 9, 26, 27, 58, 63; DK. VII, 7, 26; V, 3, 3.
— II, king, Int. 58, 61.
Khvaniras, region, DK. VII, 1, 26; 2, 70; V, 2, 9.
Khvotkidas, Int. 6, 47, 49; DK. VII, 4, 4 n.
Khyons, nation, Int. 7, 55; DK. VII, 4, 77, 83, 84, 87-90; 5, 7; V, 3, 1; Zs. 28, 8.
Kig, Int. 6, 47, 49; DK. VII, 2, 9 n; 3, 50; 4, 2, 6, 14, 67; 8, 26; V, 2, 3.
Kirmam, town, Zs. 12, 0 n.
Kobad, king, DK. VII, 1, 35.
Kokharad, Zs. 18, 2.
Kundah, Int. 55; Zs. 28, 8.
Kuatal-tor, man, DK. VII, 2, 70 n.
Kaispi, ruler, Int. 70.

Kest, lake, Int. 50; DK. VII, 1, 39.
Keshmak, demon, DK. VII, 2, 44; 45; 4, 61.
Kikibiums, man, DK. VII, 2, 70; Zs. 13, 6.
Kinvad bridge, Zs. 20, 5 n.
Kist, Zs. 16, 12.
Kitarad nask, Int. 3, 14, 20; DK. VII, 1, 34 n; 7, 5 n.
Kitro, meho, prince, Int. 10; DK. VII, 8, 45.

Macedon, Int. 55 n.
Mada, land, DK. VII, 1, 26.
Majgan-1, Guagastak, MS., DK. V, 1, 2 n.
Mahrkus, wizard, Int. 11, 55; DK. VII, 1, 24; 9, 3; V, 3, 3.
Maidhyosa, festival, Int. 18; Zs. 21, 1 n.
Manih, heretic, DK. VII, 7, 21 n; V, 8, 3.
Manuak, princess, Zs. 15, 2.
Manqur, for Manuakkar, DK. VII, 1, 29 n.
Manuakhurmak, man, DK. VII, 2, 70; V, 4, 3; Zs. 13, 6.
Manuakhurmar, man, DK. VII, 2, 70; V, 4, 3; Zs. 13, 6.
Manuakkar, king, Int. 15, 16, 55; DK. VII, 1, 29-31; 2, 51 n, 70; 6, 11 n; 7, 21; V, 1, 8; 4, 3; Zs. 12, 3; 18, 6, 15; 2, 16, 13.
Maraspend, priest, Int. 64, 88; DK. VII, 5, 5; 7, 19, 20.
Marvels of Zoroastrianism, Int. 1.
Masvak, man, DK. VII, 6, 11 n.
Masya, woman, Int. 48, 55; DK. VII, 1, 9, 12-14.
Masy, man, Int. 48, 55; DK. VII, 1, 9, 11-14; 2, 70; V, 1, 8; 4, 1 n; Zs. 13, 6.
Mazandaran, land, DK. VII, 1, 26.
Mazandaran, land, DK. VII, 1, 18 n.
Mazanov, demons of, DK. VII, 1, 18.
Mazda, DK. VII, 7, 10.
Mazdak, heretic, Int. 36, 43; DK. VII, 7, 21, 26 n.
Mazdakites, sect, Int. 58.
Mazdaworship, Int. 15, 49; DK. VII, 1, 1, 2, 4, 41, 43, 44; 8, 35 n; 4, 2, 5, 14; 33, 34, 74, 79; 6, 4, 12 n; V, 1, 1.
Mazdaworshippers, DK. VII, 7, 5; 6, 9, 10, 23; 8, 28, 35, 51; 9, 2, 7, 8, 10, 11, 13, 14; 10, 4, 6, 11; 11, 8-10; Zs. 12, 2, 4.

N
PAHLAVI TEXTS.

Medyomah, man, Int. 18, 19, 29, 30, 55; Zs. 21, 3; 28, 1, 8, 11.
Messiah, Dk. V, 8, 3.
Millennial apostles, Int. 3.
Misr, land, Zs. 20, 4 n.
Mivan, river (?), Zs. 22, 8.
Mordad, angel, Dk. VII, 2, 38.

Namkhvast of the Hazars, Dk. VII, 4, 77 n.
Naks, Int. 64.
Nayzam, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70.
Nebuchadnezzar, king, Int. 14; Dk. V, 1, 2 n.
Neresang, for Neryosang, Dk. VII, 1, 29 n.
Nersansang, for Neryosang, Dk. VII, 2, 21 n, 70; 4, 84 n.
Neryosang, angel, Dk. VII, 1, 29; 2, 21; 4, 84, 85; V, 4, 6; Zs. 13, 5, 6.
Nevak-tora, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70.
Next-of-kin marriage, Dk. VII, 1, 10; 4, 5, 6, 8, 11; Zs. 23, 13.
Ninus, king, Int. 71, 74.
Nirangistan, MS., Zs. 13, 4 n.
Niveli, man, Zs. 15, 5.
Nozar, man, Int. 17; Dk. VII, 2, 51; 8, 19, 39; 4, 86 n; 6, 11 n; Zs. 16, 11-13.
Nodari, man, Zs. 15, 5.
Nodars, tribe, Dk. VII, 6, 11.
Non-Iranian, Dk. VII, 9, 13.
Noshervan, king, Int. 43.
Numdarih-Yazishn, MS., Zs. 13, 4.

Oldest dates explained, Int. 72.
Ordeal, Int. 7, 18, 64, 65; Dk. VII, 5, 4, 5; 7, 2; Zs. 21, 24-27.
Osthanes, Int. 73.
Ox, frontier-settling, Dk. VII, 2, 62-66; Zs. 12, 8-25.
— sole-created, Int. 55, 77; Dk. VII, 2, 67.
Oxyartes, king, Int. 74.

Padashkhvarag, land, Dk. VII, 7, 14 n.
Pafiragavarasp, man, Dk. VII, 2, 9, 10, 13, 70.
Pafrast = Paitirasp, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70; Zs. 13, 6.
Pakrigs, meteors, Zs. 22, 9.
Papak, prince, Dk. VII, 7, 12.
Parshad-tora, man, Int. 6, 47; Dk. VII, 4, 31-34.

Parsi calendar, Int. 79-89; how rectified, Int. 85.
Patakahrubb, king, Int. 3, 48; Dk. VII, 1, 34.
Persia, Int. 55 n, 63, 79.
Paddadian, Int. 3; Dk. VII, 2, 70.
Peshyatan, prince, Int. 7, 10, 42, 43; Dk. VII, 4, 81; 5, 12; 6, 13; V, 3, 3.
Pestilence, demon, Dk. VII, 4, 37, 38.
Plato, Int. 71, 77.
Pliny the Elder, Int. 71, 73, 75, 76.
Pordast, woman, Int. 29, 30.
Pordashpo, man, Int. 4, 39, 49; Dk. VII, 2, 10, 13, 21, 29-35, 39-41, 46-48, 56-58, 70; 8, 3, 4, 7-11, 13, 15, 21, 23, 24, 26, 27, 32, 34, 37, 38; V, 2, 2, 4; Zs. 13, 6; 14, 16, 15, 4, 16, 1, 3-5; 17, 2, 18, 1, 4-6; 18, 1-4; 20, 1, 6; 21, 3.
Pouruspada, wizard, Zs. 23, 10 n.
Proconnesian Zoroaster, Int. 73.
Purtaraspo, man, Zs. 13, 6.
Purt-tora, man, Dk. VII, 9, 70.

Ragan, man, Dk. VII, 2, 51 n, 70 n.
Ragun, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70 n.
Rai, city, Int. 32.
Rak, man, Dk. VII, 2, 51; 8, 19, 39; or Ragh, Int. 17; Zs. 16, 11-13.
Ramak-tora, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70.
Ranghurst, man, Zs. 18, 5.
Rasat, angel, Dk. VII, 4, 81 n.
Rashn, angel, Dk. VII, 7, 11.
Rashn-resh, apostate, Int. 9; Dk. VII, 7, 11.
Rautare-vaghen, priest, Int. 64, 70; Dk. VII, 7, 19 n.
Ratutar, man, Zs. 18, 5.
Renovation of the universe, Int. 13, 55, 77; Dk. VII, 1, 41, 42, 54; 10, 10; 11, 10, 11; Zs. 28, 3.
Romans, Int. 63, 65.

Sacred beings, Int. 6, 15, 19, 48, 52, 55; Dk. VII, 1, 4, 12, 44, 41; 2, 10, 61, 62; 3, 47-49; 4, 21, 46, 62, 70, 80; 5, 12; 8, 6, 60; V, 2, 7; Zs. 14, 7, 21, 10.
Sacred fires, Dk. VII, 7, 2.
Sagastan, land, Int. 6, 47; Dk. VII, 4, 31.
Salm, prince, Dk. VII, 1, 30.
Saimak, man, Dk. VII, 1, 15.
INDEX.

Sāmanā, patron., Dk. VII, 1, 32; V, 1, 8.
Sanskrit, Int. 78.
Saoshyant, apostle, Int. 30.
Sarā, town, Zs. 22, 8.
Sāsānian, Int. 9, 11, 50, 57, 68, 69.
Satavān, star, Zs. 28, 9.
Selections of Zād-sparam, Int. 1, 15, 24.
Semiramis, queen, Int. 71, 74.
Shahpūhar II, king, Int. 26, 58, 61, 63, 64, 88; Dk. VII, 7, 19 n.
— III, king, Int. 64, 87.
Sham = Shām, land, Zs. 20, 4 n.
Shapān, Dk. VII, 7, 3.
Shapīgān or Shaspiğān, Dk. VII, 7, 3 n.
Shaptāb, woman, Dk. VII, 9, 18.
Shatrāvī, angel, Dk. VII, 2, 19.
Shatvēr, angel, Zs. 22, 8.
Shērēfas (Theodosius ?), Int. 10, 27; Dk. VII, 8, 47 n.
Shērēfps, Dk. VII, 6, 47.
Shemig-ābū, woman, Dk. VII, 8, 55.
Sīrkan, town, Zs. 12, 0 n.
Siyāh-tōrā, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70.
Slyāmān, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70; V, 1, 8; 4, 1; Zs. 13, 6.
Slyāvakāsh, prince, Dk. VII, 1, 39.
Sog-tōrā, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70.
Sōhāns, apostle, Int. 12, 13, 55; Dk. VII, 1, 42, 53; 10, 10, 15; 11, 1, 2; V, 2, 15; 3, 3; Zs. 21, 7.
Spēn-darmād, angel, Int. 6, 15, 55; Dk. VII, 2, 19; 4, 57, 58; 8, 5 n; Zs. 12, 2, 3, 5, 6, 16, 3; 23, 9; 23, 4.
— mouth, Zs. 21, 1.
Spēn-dāda, prince, Int. 39, 55; Dk. VII, 7, 5; V, 2, 12.
Spēn nask, Int. 1, 2, 14, 20, 27, 46; Dk. VII, 2, 1 n.
Spētō-khratavā, priest, Dk. VII, 7, 8, 10.
Spētō-tōrā, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70.
Spītāmā, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70; Zs. 18, 6.
Spītāmas, tribe, Int. 30; Dk. VII, 2, 9, 11, 29, 57; 7, 27; 8, 22, 35.
Spītōē, priest, Dk. VII, 6, 12.
Sētō, hero, Int. 8, 15, 55; Dk. VII, 2, 63, 64; 6, 2, 3, 5, 7–9, 11, 13; Zs. 12, 10, 12–14, 16, 18, 20, 22, 24, 25.
Sētō, woman, Zs. 23, 11.
Srōbōvār, snake, Dk. VII, 1, 32.
Srōsh, angel, Dk. VII, 8, 17; Zs. 18, 9.
Srūtvēk-spādāk, priest, Dk. VII, 7, 8, 10.
Sūdār nask, Int. 44.
Sūrāk, land, Zs. 20, 4 n.
Sēnōv, priest, Int. 9, 54, 55; Dk. VII, 7, 6; Zs. 28, 11.
Tabaristān, land, Dk. VII, 7, 14 n.
Tākhmērup, king, Int. 48, 55; Dk. VII, 1, 19; V, 1, 8; 4, 3.
Talmud, MS., Dk. V, 1, 2 n.
Tanāpūhar, sin, Dk. VII, 4, 19, 20.
Tanosar, priest, Int. 9, 62; Dk. VII, 7, 14, 17, 18.
Tās, man, Dk. VII, 1, 34.
Tegend, r., Zs. 23, 7 n.
Ten admonitions, MS., Zs. 24, 10–19.
Thrītāk, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70.
Tisar, star, Dk. VII, 2, 38 n.
Tōgān, r., Zs. 22, 7.
Trojan war, Int. 71.
Tūg, prince, Dk. VII, 1, 30.
Tūmāsp, prince, Dk. VII, 1, 31.
Tūr, land, Dk. VII, 1, 31, 39.
— = Tūrān, land, Int. 6, 47; Dk. VII, 4, 6–10, 14–16, 20; 5, 12 n; 11, 3; V, 3, 2; Zs. 16, 3, 4; 17, 6; 20, 8.
Tūrān, land, Dk. VII, 2, 62; Zs. 12, 8, 9.
Tūrānian, Dk. VII, 2, 9 n, 63, 68; 3, 28; 7, 13; 9, 13; Zs. 12, 17.
Turkish demons, Dk. VII, 8, 47.
Urugabasp, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70.
Usikshā, Int. 30.
Uspaśnā, man, Dk. VII, 6, 12 n.
Vadak, woman, Dk. VII, 2, 64; Zs. 12, 13.
Vadast = Vaēdvōt, Zs. 15, 3.
Vaēdis, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70; Zs. 18, 6.
Vaēdvōt, karap, Int. 6, 47; Dk. VII, 2, 9 n; 4, 21, 23, 24.
Vaēgared, prince, Int. 3; Dk. VII, 1, 16; V, 4, 2.
Vakṣir, land, Dk. VII, 1, 39.
Vanōfravān, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70.
Varahān fire, Zs. 23, 7.
Vars, hair, Dk. VII, 4, 85.

N 2
Varštamsar nask, Int. 10.
Verethraghna, angel, Int. 30.
Vidafaš region, Dk. VII, 6, 12 n.
Vidrafa, wizard, Dk. VII, 4, 77 n.
Vigirkard-i Dënig, MS., Dk. VII, 2, 70 n.
Vïrañang man, Dk. VII, 1, 34 n.
Visperad, MS., Int. 3.
Visraps tribe, Dk. VII, 6, 2, 7, 9, 11; Zs. 12, 10 n.
Virtasp king, Int. 6-10, 14, 19, 29, 47, 49, 52, 55, 70; Dk. VII, 1, 2; 2, 9 n; 3, 31; 4, 63-67, 69-71, 74-76, 83-85, 89, 90; 5, 1, 2, 6, 7, 12; 6, 1, 2, 5, 6, 8; 11 n, 12-14; 7, 1, 2, 5 n, 38, 39; V, 2, 8, 10; 8, 1; Zs. 16, 12, 13; 29, 5, 7.
Vivangha, man, Dk. VII, 1, 20, 2, 70; Zs. 13, 6.
Vïzakh woman, Dk. VII, 2, 70; Zs. 13, 6.
Vohûmanô, angel, Int. 5, 16, 55; Dk. VII, 1, 4; 2, 17, 19, 24-26, 29, 33; 3, 17, 22, 26, 51, 52, 54, 56, 58-60, 62; 4, 29, 57, 74, 75, 78; 7, 19; V, 2, 5, 9; Zs. 14, 9-12; 16, 9; 20, 3; 21, 8, 11; 22, 3, 6 n.
— king, Int. 9, 55; Dk. VII, 7, 5.
Vohûnêman, man, Int. 55; Zs. 23, 8, 11.
Vohû-rêkô, man, Dk. VII, 8, 55; 9, 18, 10, 15.
Vologeses I, king, Int. 88, 89.
— III, king, Int. 61, 88.

Wilson's Parsi Religion, Int. 31.
Witch, Dk. VII, 1, 19; 5, 8; V, 2, 3; Zs. 17, 4.
Witchcraft, Dk. VII, 2, 6, 7, 63; 3, 4, 8; 4, 72; 5, 8, 8, 6.
Wizard, Dk. VII, 1, 19, 31, 39; 2, 8, 53, 54, 66; 3, 5, 42-44; 8, 29; V, 2, 3, 4; 8; Zs. 14, 3, 13; 16, 16, 2, 3; 17, 4; 18, 1, 5.
Wrath, demon, Int. 16.

Xanthus of Lydia, Int. 71.
Xerxes, king, Int. 71, 73.

Yâdâkâr-i Zarîrân, MS., Dk. VII, 4, 77 n, 86 n.
Yâthâ-ahû-vairyô, Dk. VII, 1, 4 n, 12 n; 4, 41, 56, 61.

Yazdakard I, king, Int. 64, 66, 87, 88 n.
— II and III, kings, Int. 58, 61.
Ylm, king, Int. 55; Dk. VII, 1, 20-22, 24, 25, 26 n, 32, 36; 2, 21, 59-61, 70; 9, 4; V, 1, 8; 2, 9; 4, 3; Zs. 13, 5, 6; 15, 2 n.
Yimak, princess, Zs. 15, 2 n.
Yim's enclosure, Int. 11.
Yûgyast, meas., Dk. VII, 8, 16, 45.

Zâd-sparâm, priest, Int. 15, 25; Zs. 12, o n.
Zâghb, man, Dk. VII, 6, 11 n.
Zâlinâgâv, prince, Dk. VII, 1, 34 n.
Zâk, karap, Dk. VII, 2, 9 n; 4, 64, 67.
Zand, Int. 37; Dk. VII, 8, 22, 36; V, 3, 4.
Zarathushtra, apostle, Int. 30; Dk. VII, 1, 34 n.
Zaratûft, apostle, Int. 1-4, 6-8, 10, 15-17, 19, 20, 29, 32-43, 46-50, 52, 55, 61, 70-75, 77, 78; Dk. VII, 1, 3, 34, 43, 51; 2, 2, 3; 9 n, 10, 14, 15-22, 24 n, 27, 29, 36-40, 42, 43, 46, 47, 52, 53, 56, 60, 61, 64, 68-70, 8; 1, 8 n, 4, 5, 7-9, 11-16, 20, 22, 32, 33, 36, 38-43, 46, 51, 54, 57, 59, 61, 62, 4, 3-6, 11, 12, 14, 16-19, 22-27, 29-31, 33-36, 38, 40-43, 45, 47-49, 51-55, 57, 58, 60, 61, 63, 64, 66, 67, 69, 70, 72-74, 86, 90; 6, 7, 2, 4-8; 8, 1, 12, 13; 7, 2, 14, 18, 19, 22, 29, 33-35, 37; 9, 1, 24, 25, 27, 29, 36, 38, 40, 42, 43, 48, 59, 55, 55, 56, 59, 60, 1, 6, 18, 19, 19, 10, 15, 1, 7; 2, 1, 8, 1, 2, 4; Zs. 12, 6, 7, 13, 1, 4-6; 14, 1, 2, 8, 12, 15, 16, 1, 3-6; 16, 1-4, 6, 7, 12-13; 17, 1, 6; 18, 2, 3, 6; 7, 10, 2, 4-7; 20, 2, 5, 9, 11-13, 16, 21, 3, 5-9, 11, 12, 14, 15, 17, 24, 22, 2, 3, 6-12, 13 n; 23, 1, 7-11, 13.
Zaratûft of the Spîtâmâs, Dk. VII, 1, 3, 8, 41, 43, 44; 2, 67, 68; 3, 55, 56, 58, 60; 4, 15, 32, 39, 59, 75, 79, 81, 82, 86, 89; 5, 3; 7, 28; 8, 23, 31, 32, 34; V, 1, 7; Zs. 12, 12; 21, 10.
Zaratûft, priest, Int. 64, 66, 70, 88.
Zaratûft-nâmak of Zs., contents, Int. 15-19; Mss., Int. 24.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEX.</th>
<th>181</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zaratûrship, Dk. V, 4, 6.</td>
<td>Zôndak, r., Zs. 22, 7 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zarîr, prince, Dk. VII, 4, 77 n; V, 2, 12.</td>
<td>Zoroaster, Int. 74, 75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zartûr Bahrâm Pa zdû, writer, Int. 32, 43, 46.</td>
<td>Zoroastrian epoch, Int. 52.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zartûr-nâmâb, Persian, Int. 31, 45, 46; Dk. VII, 4, 70 n; 5, 12 n; contents, Int. 32–44.</td>
<td>— legends, Int. 14, 20, 27, 51, 59; scattered in other Pahl. texts, Int. 29; in Av., Int. 30, 31.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zbaurvast, man, Dk. VII, 7, 12 n.</td>
<td>Zôti, priest, Dk. VII, 8, 8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zend, r., Zs. 22, 7 n.</td>
<td>Zrayang, hau, priest, Dk. VII, 7, 8, 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zô ir, man, Dk. VII, 2, 3, 4.</td>
<td>Zúsa k, man, Dk. VII, 2, 70; Zs. 13, 6.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ERRATUM.

P. 20, l. 4. The name of the district of Alâk should probably be read Arâk, as the province is called Râgh in Zs. XVI, 13.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONSONANTS</th>
<th>Tenuis</th>
<th>Media</th>
<th>Nasalis</th>
<th>Gutturales</th>
<th>Spiritus asper</th>
<th>Spiritus lenis</th>
<th>Gutturo-labialis</th>
<th>Nasalis</th>
<th>Sporadic</th>
<th>Lesser</th>
<th>Greatest</th>
<th>Palatals</th>
<th>Lingual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gutturales.</strong></td>
<td>1 Tenuis</td>
<td>asprina</td>
<td>asprista</td>
<td>6 Nasalis</td>
<td>10 asper</td>
<td>9 lenis</td>
<td>8 lenis</td>
<td>7 Spiritus asper</td>
<td>11 lenis</td>
<td>12 asper</td>
<td>13 Nasalis</td>
<td>14 asper</td>
<td>15 lenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5 Gutturo-labialis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3 (ng)</td>
<td></td>
<td>2 (w, g, b)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TRANSLITERATION OF ORIENTAL ALPHABETS ADOPTED FOR THE TRANSLATIONS OF THE SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONSONANTS (continued)</th>
<th>I Class.</th>
<th>II Class.</th>
<th>III Class.</th>
<th>Missionary Alphabet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>19 Spiritus asper lentis</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>th</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 &quot; asper assibilatus lentis assibilatus</td>
<td>dh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 &quot; aspirata lentis aspirata</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 &quot; assibilata</td>
<td>n</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 Tenuis</td>
<td>i</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 &quot; aspirata</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 &quot; assibilata</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 Media</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27 &quot; aspirata</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 &quot; assibilata</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29 Nasalis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 Semivocalis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 Spiritus asper lentis</td>
<td>s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32 &quot; asper 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33 &quot; lenis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34 &quot; aspiratus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 &quot; asper 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36 &quot; lenis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37 &quot; aspiratus 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teeth modification (linguals, &amp;c.)</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dentals</td>
<td>Tenuis</td>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Nasalis</td>
<td>Semi-vocalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dh</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>Dh</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>Nh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Contents

I. Literature and Philology .............................................. 1–54
  § 1. Dictionaries, Grammars, &c. ................................. 1–5
  § 2. Anglo-Saxon and English ..................................... 6
  § 3. European Languages, Mediaeval and Modern ............ 17
    1. French, Italian, &c. ......................................... 17
    2. German, &c. ................................................... 20
    3. Scandinavian ................................................. 23
  § 4. Classical Languages ............................................ 24
    1. Latin .......................................................... 24
    2. Greek .......................................................... 32
  § 5. Oriental Languages ............................................. 45
  § 6. _Anecdota Oxoniensia_ Series ................................ 52

II. Theology .............................................................. 55–67
  A. The Holy Scriptures, &c. ..................................... 55
  B. Fathers of the Church, &c. ................................... 60
  C. Ecclesiastical History, &c. .................................. 62
  D. Liturgiology ..................................................... 64
  E. English Theology ................................................. 65

III. History, Biography, &c. ........................................... 68–77

IV. Law ............................................................................... 78

V. Philosophy, Logic, &c. .............................................. 80

VI. Physical Science and Mathematics, &c. ................. 82–90

VII. Art and Archaeology ................................................ 91

VIII. Palaeography .......................................................... 92
I. LITERATURE AND PHILOLOGY.

SECTION I.

DICTIONARIES, GRAMMARS, &c.

ANGLO-SAXON. An Anglo-Saxon Dictionary, based on the MS. Collections of the late Joseph Bosworth, D.D. Edited and enlarged by Prof. T. N. Toller, M.A.

Parts I–III. A–SÁR. 4to, stiff covers, 15s. each.
Part IV. Sect. I. SÁR–SWÍDRIAN. 8s. 6d.

" Sect. II. SWÍp–SNÉL–ÝTMEST. 18s. 6d.

* * * A Supplement, which will complete the Work, is in active preparation.

The Student's Dictionary of Anglo-Saxon. By H. Sweet, M.A., Ph.D., LL.D. Small 4to, 8s. 6d. net.

ARABIC. A Practical Arabic Grammar. Compiled by A. O. Green, Lieut.-Colonel, R.E.

Part II. Third Edition. Revised and Enlarged. 10s. 6d.

BENGALI. A Grammar of the Bengali Language; Literary and Colloquial. By John Beames. Crown 8vo, cloth, 7s. 6d.; cut flush, 6s.


I. Literature and Philology.

BURMESE. A Burmese Reader. By R. F. St. ANDREW
St. John, Hon. M.A. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

CELTIC. Ancient Cornish Drama. Edited and translated
by E. NORMAN, with a Sketch of Cornish Grammar, an Ancient Cornish
Vocabulary, &c. 2 vols. 8vo, 21s.
The Sketch of Cornish Grammar separately, stitched, 2s. 6d.

CHINESE. A Handbook of the Chinese Language. By
JAMES SUMMERS. 8vo, half-bound, 12s.

ENGLISH. A NEW ENGLISH DICTIONARY, on
Historical Principles: founded mainly on the materials
collected by the Philological Society. Imperial 4to. Edited by
J. A. H. MURRAY, LL.D., &c.

Vol. I. A By Dr. Murray...... Half-morocco 2 12 6
Vol. II. B By Dr. Murray...... Half-morocco 2 12 6
Vol. III. C By Dr. Murray ...... Half-morocco 2 12 6
Vol. IV. D By Mr. Bradley...... Half-morocco 2 12 6
Vol. V. F-H By Dr. Murray. In the Press, G By Mr. Bradley. In the Press.
Vol. VI. L-N By Mr. Bradley. In the Press. For details see page 6.

FINNISH. A Finnish Grammar. By C. N. E. ELIOT, M.A.
Crown 8vo, roan, 10s. 6d.

GOTHIC. A Primer of the Gothic Language. Containing
the Gospel of St. Mark, Selections from the other Gospels, and the Second
Epistle to Timothy. With Grammar, Notes, and Glossary. By JOSEPH
WRIGHT, M.A., Ph.D. Second Edition. Extra fcp. 8vo, cloth, 4s. 6d.

GREEK. A Greek-English Lexicon, by H. G. LIDDELL, D.D.,

— An Intermediate Greek-English Lexicon, founded upon
the Quarto Edition. Small 4to, 12s. 6d.

— A Greek-English Lexicon, abridged from the Quarto
Edition, chiefly for the use of Schools. Square 12mo, 7s. 6d.

— A Concordance to the Septuagint and the other
Greek Versions of the Old Testament (including the Apocryphal Books).
By the late EDWIN HATCH, M.A., and H. A. REDPATH, M.A. In six
Parts. Imperial 4to, 21s. each.

— Supplement, Fasc. I. Containing a Concordance to
the Proper Names occurring in the Septuagint. By H. A. REDPATH, M.A.
Imperial 4to, 16s.

GREEK (continued). A copious Greek-English Vocabulary, compiled from the best authorities. 24mo, 3s.


— Gesenius' Hebrew Grammar, as Edited and Enlarged by E. KAULTSCH. Translated from the Twenty-fifth German Edition by the late Rev. G. W. COLLINS, M.A. The Translation revised and adjusted to the Twenty-sixth Edition by A. E. COWLEY, M.A. 8vo, 21s.

— The Book of Hebrew Roots, by ABU ’L-WALID MARWĀN IBN JANĀH, otherwise called RABBĪ YŌNĀH. Now first edited, with an Appendix, by AD. NEUBAUER, M.A. 4to, 21. 7s. 6d.


HINDŪSTĀNĪ. A Hindūstānī Grammar. By A. O. GREEN, Lieut.-Colonel, R.E. Crown 8vo, cloth. Part I. 8s. 6d. Part II. 7s. 6d.

ICELANDIC. An Icelandic-English Dictionary, based on the MS. collections of the late RICHARD CLEASBY. Enlarged and completed by G. VIGFÚSSON, M.A. 4to, 3l. 7s.

— A List of English Words the Etymology of which is illustrated by comparison with Icelandic. Prepared in the form of an Appendix to the above. By W. W. SKEAT, Lit.D. Stitched, 2s.

— An Icelandic Primer, with Grammar, Notes, and Glossary, By HENRY SWEET, M.A., Ph.D. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

— An Icelandic Prose Reader, with Notes, Grammar, and Glossary, by DR. GUDBRAND VIGFÚSSON and F. YORK POWELL, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

LATIN. A Latin Dictionary, founded on Andrews' edition of Freund's Latin Dictionary, revised, enlarged, and in great part re-written, by CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D., and CHARLES SHORT, LL.D. 4to, 11. 5s.

--- An Elementary Latin Dictionary. By Charlton T. Lewis, Ph.D. Square 8vo, 7s. 6d.

--- Scheller's Dictionary of the Latin Language, revised and translated into English by J. E. Riddle, M.A. fol. 21s.

--- Contributions to Latin Lexicography. By Henry NettleSHIP, M.A. 8vo, 21s.


--- A Sanskrit-English Dictionary, Etymologically and Philologically arranged, with special reference to cognate Indo-European Languages. By Sir Monier Monier-Williams, M.A., K.C.I.E., with the collaboration of Prof. E. Leumann, Ph.D., and Prof. E. Cappeller, Ph.D., and other Scholars. New Edition, greatly Enlarged and Improved. 4to, cloth, bevelled edges, 3l. 13s. 6d.; Half-marocco, 4l. 4s.


Swahili. English-Swashili Dictionary. By A. C. Madan, M.A. Extra folio. 8vo, 7s. 6d. net.


Vol. I, containing Fasciculi I-V, 8vo, 5l. 5s.

Vol. II, completing the work, containing Fasciculi VI-X, 8l. 8s.

* * * The Fasciculi may also be had separately.

Fasc. I-VI, 11. 1s. each; VII, 11. 11s. 6d.; VIII, 11. 16s.; IX, 11. 15s.

--- Compendious Syriac Dictionary. Founded upon the above, and edited by Mrs. Margoliouth. In Four Parts. Parts I-III, 8s. 6d. net each. (Part IV, in the Press.)


— The Nāladiyār, or Four Hundred Quatrains in Tamil. Edited by G. U. POPE, D.D. 8vo, 18s. Large Paper, half Roxburgh. 2l. Also in paper covers—Part I, Quatrains 1–130, 3s. 6d. Part II, Quatrains 131–320, 4s. 6d. Lexicon only, 6s.

— The Tiruvācaagam, or 'Sacred Utterances' of the Tamil Poet, Saint, and Sage, Mānikka-vācagar. The Tamil Text of the Fifty-one Poems, with English Translation, Introductions, Notes, and Tamil Lexicon. By the same. Royal 8vo, 21s. net.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL WORKS.

Cotton's Typographical Gazetteer. First Series. 8vo, 12s. 6d.

— Typographical Gazetteer. Second Series. 8vo, 12s. 6d.

* * * Copies of the Second Series cannot be supplied separately.

Dowling (J. G.). Notitia Scriptorum SS. Patrum aliorumque vet. Eccles. Mon. quae in Collectionibus Anecdotorum post annum Christi MDCC. in lucem editis continentur. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Ebert's Bibliographical Dictionary, translated from the German. 4 vols. 8vo, 1l. 10s.

# I. Literature and Philology.

## SECTION II.

**ANGLO-SAXON AND ENGLISH.**

**HELPS TO THE STUDY OF THE LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE.**

---

**A NEW ENGLISH DICTIONARY on Historical Principles,** founded mainly on the materials collected by the Philological Society. Imperial 4to. Edited by J. A. H. Murray, LL.D., &c.

**PRESENT STATE OF THE WORK.**

| Vol. I. (A, B) | By Dr. Murray | Half-morocco | £ | s. | d. |
| Vol. II. (C) | By Dr. Murray | Half-morocco | £ | s. | d. |
| Vol. III. (D, E) | By Dr. Murray and Mr. Bradley | Half-morocco | £ | s. | d. |
| Vol. IV. (F, G) | By Mr. Bradley | Half-morocco | £ | s. | d. |

**Vol. IV. Separately.**

- Field... 0 7 6
- Field-Frankish... 0 12 6
- Franklaw-Glass-cloth... 0 12 6
- Glass-ooch-Graded... 0 5 0
- Gradel-Greement... 0 2 6
- Green-Gys... 0 5 0
- H-Hod... 0 12 6
- Hod-Hywe... 0 7 6
- I-In... 0 5 0
- In-Infer... 0 5 0
- Inferable-Inpushing... 0 2 6
- Input-Invalid... 0 5 0
- Inv-Jew... 0 5 0
- Jew-Kairine... 0 2 6

**Vol. V. H-K By Dr. Murray.**

**Vol. VI. L-N By Mr. Bradley L-Lap.**

*Also, commencing with the letter A, monthly numbers of 88 pages, 3s. 6d. each.*

---

**The Dictionary is also, as heretofore, issued in the original Parts:**

| Series | I. | Parts I-IX. A-Distrustful | Each | £ | s. | d. |
| Series II. | Parts I-IV. E-Glass-cloth | Each | £ | s. | d. |
| Series III. | Part V. Glass-ooch-Gysarn | £ | s. | d. |
| Series III. | Part L. H-Hod | £ | s. | d. |
| Series III. | Part II. Hod-Hywe | £ | s. | d. |
| Series III. | Part III. I-Inpushing | £ | s. | d. |
| Series III. | Part IV. Input-Kairine | £ | s. | d. |

Anglo-Saxon and English.


—— The Philology of the English Tongue. Fifth Edition, Newly Revised. Extra fcap. 8vo, 8s. 6d.

Mayhew. Synopsis of Old English Phonology. By A. L. Mayhew, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, bevelled boards, 8s. 6d.


—— A Supplement to the First Edition of the above. 4to, 2s. 6d.


—— Principles of English Etymology:


Second Series. The Foreign Element. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

—— A Primer of English Etymology. Third and Revised Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 1s. 6d.

—— Notes on English Etymology; chiefly reprinted from the Transactions of the Philological Society. Crown 8vo, 8s. 6d. net.

—— A Student’s Pastime: being a Select Series of Articles reprinted from ‘Notes and Queries.’ Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d. net.

—— Twelve Facsimiles of Old English Manuscripts, with Transcriptions and an Introduction. 4to, paper covers, 7s. 6d.

Stratmann. A Middle English Dictionary, containing Words used by English Writers from the Twelfth to the Fifteenth Century. By Francis Henry Stratmann. A New Edition, Re-arranged, Revised, and Enlarged by Henry Bradley, M.A. Small 4to, half-morocco, 1l. 11s. 6d.

London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
I. Literature and Philology.

Sweet. A New English Grammar, Logical and Historical. Part I. Introduction, Phonology, and Accentence. By Henry Sweet, M.A., Ph.D., LL.D. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Part II. Syntax. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

A Short Historical English Grammar. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

A Primer of Historical English Grammar. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

History of English Sounds from the Earliest Period. With full Word-Lists. 8vo, 14s.

The Student's Dictionary of Anglo-Saxon. Small 4to, 8s. 6d. net.

First Steps in Anglo-Saxon. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

An Anglo-Saxon Primer, with Grammar, Notes, and Glossary. Eighth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.


A Second Anglo-Saxon Reader. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Old English Reading Primers:


II. Extracts from Alfred's Orosius. Second Edition, 2s.

First Middle English Primer, with Grammar and Glossary. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.


A Primer of Spoken English. Second Edition, Revised. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

An Icelandic Primer, with Grammar, Notes and Glossary. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

A Primer of Phonetics. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

A Manual of Current Shorthand, Orthographic and Phonetic. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Anglo-Saxon and English.


—— An English Grammar and Reading Book, for Lower Forms in Classical Schools. Fourth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.


Vol. I. Text, Appendices, and Glossary. 10s. 6d.

Vol. II. Introduction, Notes, and Index. 12s. 6d.

—— (787-1001 A.D.) Crown 8vo, stiff covers, 3s.


With Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index.


Specimens of English Literature, from the 'Ploughman's Crede' to the 'Shepheardes Calender' (A.D. 1394 to A.D. 1579). With Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index. By W. W. Skeat, Litt.D. Sixth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 7s. 6d.


An English Miscellany. Presented to Dr. Furnivall in honour of his Seventy-fifth Birthday. With Portrait and Illustrations. 8vo, cloth extra. 1l. 1s.

A SERIES OF ENGLISH CLASSICS.

The Deeds of Beowulf. An English Epic of the Eighth Century done into Modern Prose. With an Introduction and Notes, by John Earle, M.A. Crown 8vo, 8s. 6d.


—— King Alfred's Version of the Consolations of Boethius. Done into Modern English, with an Introduction. By the same. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
I. Literature and Philology.

The Ormulum, with the Notes and Glossary of Dr. R. M. White. Edited by R. Holt, M.A. 2 vols. Extra fcap. 8vo, 17. 1s.

CHAUER.

The Complete Works of Geoffrey Chaucer. Edited, from numerous Manuscripts, by W. W. Skeat, Litt.D. In Six Volumes, demy 8vo, with Portrait and Facsimiles. 41. 16s., or 16s. each volume.

Chaucerian and other Pieces, being a Supplementary Volume to the above. Edited, from numerous Manuscripts, by W. W. Skeat, Litt.D. 8vo, 18s.

The Prologue to the Canterbury Tales. (School Edition.) Edited by W. W. Skeat, Litt.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s.


The Prioresses Tale; Sir Thopas; The Monkes Tale; The Clerkes Tale; The Squieres Tale, &c. Edited by W. W. Skeat, Litt.D. Seventh Edition, Revised. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.


The Hous of Fame. Edited by W. W. Skeat, Litt.D. Crown 8vo, paper boards, 2s.


The Student's Chaucer. Being a complete Edition of the Works, edited from numerous MSS., with Introduction and Glossary, by W. W. Skeat, Litt.D. In one vol., crown 8vo, cloth, 7s. 6d.

* * * Glossarial Index to the above, Crown 8vo, limp cloth, 1s. 6d.

The Oxford Chaucer. On Oxford India Paper, cloth extra, 9s. 6d.


A Series of English Classics.

LANGLAND (W.).
The Vision of William concerning Piers the Plowman, by WILLIAM LANGLAND. Edited, with Notes, by W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. Sixth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

GOWER. The Complete Works of John Gower. Edited from the MSS., with Introductions, Notes, and Glossaries, by G. C. MACAULAY, M.A. In Four Volumes, 8vo, buckram.
Vol. II. and III. The English Works. With a facsimile. 16s. each.


Wycliffe.

Minot (Laurence). Poems. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by JOSEPH HALL, M.A. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.


Hooker. Ecclesiastical Polity, Book I. Edited by R. W. CHURCH, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

OLD ENGLISH DRAMA.
York Plays. The Plays performed by the Crafts or Mysteries of York, on the day of Corpus Christi, in the 14th, 15th, and 16th centuries; now first printed from the unique manuscript in the library of Lord Ashburnham. Edited, with Introduction and Glossary, by LUCY TOULMIN SMITH. 8vo, 31s.

London: HENRY FROWDE, AMEN CORNER, E.C.
I. Literature and Philology.

OLD ENGLISH DRAMA (continued).


The Pilgrimage to Parnassus, with the Two Parts of the Return from Parnassus. Three Comedies performed in St. John's College, Cambridge, A.D. MDXXII-MDCI. Edited from MSS. by W. D. MACRAY, M.A., F.S.A. Medium 8vo, bevelled boards, gilt top, 8s. 6d.

Marlowe's Edward II. With Introduction, Notes, &c. By O. W. TANCOCK, M.A. Third Edition. Extra foap. 8vo, stiff covers, 2s.; cloth, 3s.


Hakluyt. Select Narratives from the 'Principal Navigations and Discoveries of the English Nation.' Edited by E. J. PAYNE, M.A. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, with Illustrations. First and Second Series, 5s. each.

SHAKESPEARE. Select Plays. Extra foap. 8vo, stiff covers.

Edited by W. G. CLARK, M.A., and W. ALDIS WRIGHT, D.C.L.

Hamlet. 2s.

Macbeth. 1s. 6d.

Edited by W. ALDIS WRIGHT, D.C.L.

As You Like It. 1s. 6d.

Coriolanus. 2s. 6d.

Henry the Eighth. 2s.

Henry the Fifth. 2s.

Julius Caesar. 2s.

King John. 1s. 6d.

The First Part of Henry the Fourth. 2s.

King Lear. 1s. 6d.

Midsummer Night's Dream. 1s. 6d.

Much Ado about Nothing. 2s. 6d.

Richard the Third. 2s. 6d.

Tempest. 1s. 6d.

Twelfth Night. 1s. 6d.


The Essays. Edited, with Introduction and Illustrative Notes, by S. H. REYNOLDS, M.A. 8vo, half-bound, 12s. 6d.

A Series of English Classics.

MILTON. The Poetical Works of John Milton. Edited, after the Original Texts, by the Rev. H. C. Beeching, M.A. With two colotypes of handwriting, and nine facsimile title-pages. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

* * * Also in Crown 8vo, with Portrait and Facsimile Title-pages.

(a) Ordinary paper, cloth, 3s. 6d.; (b) India Paper, cloth extra, 8s.

and in leather bindings.


In paper covers:

Lycidas, 3d. Comus, 6d.

Edited with Notes, by O. Elton, B.A.

Lycidas, 6d. L'Allegro, 4d. II Penseroso, 4d. Comus, 1s.

Paradise Lost. Book I. Edited by H. C. Beeching, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 1s. 6d.; in Parchment, 3s. 6d.

Paradise Lost. Book II. Edited by E. K. Chambers, B.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

* * * Books I and II combined, 2s. 6d.

Samson Agonistes. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by J. Churton Collins, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 1s.

Milton's Prosody. By Robert Bridges. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 1s. 6d.


— The Holy War, and The Heavenly Footman. Edited by Mabel Peacock. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Fuller. Wise Words and Quaint Counsels of Thomas Fuller. Selected by Augustus Jessopp, D.D. Crown 8vo, 6s.


— Characters and Episodes of the Great Rebellion. Selections from Clarendon. Edited by G. Boyle, M.A., Dean of Salisbury. Crown 8vo, gilt top, 7s. 6d.

Dryden. Essays of John Dryden. Selected and Edited by W. P. Kerr, M.A. In Two Volumes, Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
I. Literature and Philology.

Dryden. Select Poems. (Stanzas on the Death of Oliver Cromwell; Astraæa Redux; Annus Mirabilis; Absalom and Achitophel; Religio Laici; The Hind and the Panther.) Edited by W. D. Christie, M.A. Fifth Edition. Revised by C. H. Firth, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.


Addison. Selections from Papers in The Spectator. With Notes. By T. Arnold, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Steele. Selections from The Tatler, Spectator and Guardian. Edited by Austin Dobson. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.


Each volume may be had separately, price 7s. 6d.

Pope. Select Works. With Introduction and Notes. By Mark Pattison, B.D.

Essay on Man. Sixth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.


Parnell. The Hermit. Paper covers, 2d.

Thomson. The Seasons, and The Castle of Indolence. Edited by J. Logie Robertson, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

The Castle of Indolence. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.


The same, together with Supplementary Notes for Schools, by Foster Watson, M.A. Stiff covers, 1s. 6d.

Elegy, and Ode on Eton College. Paper covers, 2d.

Goldsmith.
Selected Poems. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by
AUSTIN DUSON. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.
The Traveller. Edited by G. BIRKBECK HILL, D.C.L.
Stiff covers, 1s.
The Deserted Village. Paper covers, 2d.

JOHNSON.
Letters of Samuel Johnson, LL.D. Collected and Edited
by G. BIRKBECK HILL, D.C.L. 2 vols. Medium 8vo, half-roan, 3s.
Wit and Wisdom of Samuel Johnson. Edited by
G. BIRKBECK HILL, D.C.L. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
Rasselas. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by
G. BIRKBECK HILL, D.C.L. Extra fcap. 8vo, cloth flush, 2s.; in
Parchment, 4s. 6d.
Rasselas; and Lives of Dryden and Pope. Edited by
ALFRED MILNES, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.
Lives of Dryden and Pope only, stiff covers, 2s. 6d.
Life of Milton. Edited by C. H. FIRTH, M.A. Extra
fcap. 8vo, cloth, 3s. 6d.; stiff covers, 1s. 6d.
Vanity of Human Wishes. With Notes, by E. J.
PAYNE, M.A. Paper covers, 4d.

Boswell's Life of Johnson. With the Journal of
a Tour to the Hebrides. Edited by G. BIRKBECK HILL, D.C.L.
6 vols. Medium 8vo, half-bound, 31. 3s.

Cowper. Edited, with Life, Introductions, and Notes, by
the late H. T. GRIFFITH, B.A.
I. The Didactic Poems of 1782, with Selections from the Minor Pieces,
A.D. 1779-1783. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.
II. The Task, with Tirocinium, and Selections from the Minor Poems,

Burke. Select Works. Edited, with Introduction and
Notes, by E. J. PAYNE, M.A.
I. Thoughts on the Present Discontents; the two Speeches on America.
Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.
fcap. 8vo, 5s.
III. Four Letters on the Proposals for Peace with the Regicide
Burns. Selected Poems. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and a Glossary, by J. Logie Robertson, M.A. Crown 8vo, 6s.

Keats. The Odes of Keats. Edited, with Notes, Analyses, and a Memoir, by Arthur C. Downer, M.A. With Four Illustrations. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d. net.


Scott. Lady of the Lake. Edited, with Preface and Notes, by W. Minto, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

—— Lay of the Last Minstrel. By the same Editor. With Map. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.; in Parchment, 3s. 6d.

—— Lay of the Last Minstrel. Introduction and Canto I, with Preface and Notes, by the same Editor. 6d.

—— Lord of the Isles. Edited by Thomas Bayne. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.; cloth, 2s. 6d.

—— Marmion. By the same. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

—— Ivanhoe. Edited by C. E. Theodosius, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 2s.

—— The Talisman. Edited by H. B. George, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 2s.


Wordsworth. The White Doe of Rylstone, &c. Edited by William Knight, LL.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Couch. The Oxford Book of English Verse. 1250—1900. Chosen and Edited by A. T. Quiller-Couch. Crown 8vo, cloth, gilt top, 7s. 6d.; Fcap. 8vo, on Oxford India Paper, cloth extra, gilt top, 10s. 6d.

Palgrave. The Treasury of Sacred Song. With Notes Explanatory and Biographical. By F. T. Palgrave, M.A. Seventeenth Thousand. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.; India Paper, 7s. 6d.

—— Ode for the Twenty-first of June, 1887. By the same Author. Crown 4to, vellum covers, 2s. 6d.

Courthope. The Longest Reign: an Ode on the Completion of the Sixtieth Year of the Reign of Her Majesty Queen Victoria. By W. J. Courthope, C.B., M.A. Crown 4to, vellum covers, 2s. 6d.
SECTION III.

EUROPEAN LANGUAGES, MEDIAEVAL AND MODERN.

(1) FRENCH, ITALIAN, ETC.

Studies in European Literature. Being the Taylorian Lectures, 1889-1899. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.


--- Historical Grammar of the French Language. Translated by G. W. Kitchin, D.D. Seventh Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Brittain. Historical Primer of French Phonetics and Inflection. By Margaret S. Brittain, M.A. With Introductory Note by Paget Toynbee, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Brachet and Toynbee. Historical Grammar of the French Language. From the French of Auguste Brachet. Re-written and Enlarged by Paget Toynbee, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.


--- Short History of French Literature. Fifth Edition, Revised (with the Section on the Nineteenth Century greatly enlarged). Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.


Wall. A Concise French Grammar, including Phonology, Accidence and Syntax, with Historical Notes for use in Upper and Middle Forms. By Arthur H. Wall, M.A. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Cest Daucasin et de Nicolete. Reproduced in Photofacsimile and Type-transliteration from the unique MS. in the Bibliotheque Nationale at Paris, and edited by F. W. Bourdillon, M.A. Small quarto, half-vellum, 24s. net.

Song of Dermot and the Earl. An Old French Poem. Edited, with Translation, Notes, &c., by G. H. Orpen. Extra fcap. 8vo, 8s. 6d.


London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
18  I. Literature and Philology.

Molière. Les Œuvres Complètes de Molière. Crown 8vo, 5s.
* * * Also, an India Paper edition, cloth extra, 9s. 6d.; and Miniature edition, 4 vols., 32mo, in case, 14s.

Beaumarchais’ Le Barbier de Séville. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Austin Dobson. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Corneille’s Horace. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by George Saintsbury, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Molière’s Les Précieuses Ridicules. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Andrew Lang, M.A. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

Musset’s On ne badine pas avec l’Amour, and Fantasio. Edited, with Prolegomena, Notes, &c., by W. H. Pollock. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

Racine’s Esther. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by George Saintsbury, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

Voltaire’s Mérope. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by George Saintsbury, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

* * * The above six Plays may be had in ornamental case, and bound in imitation Parchment, price 12s. 6d.

Molière. Le Misanthrope. Edited by H. W. G. Markheim, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Masson’s French Classics.
Edited by Gustave Masson, B.A.

Corneille’s Cinna. With Notes, Glossary, &c. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.; stiff covers, 1s. 6d.

Corneille’s Cinna. Molière’s Les Femmes Savantes. With Fontenelle’s Life of Corneille, and Notes. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Louis XIV and his Contemporaries; as described in Extracts from the best Memoirs of the Seventeenth Century. With English Notes, Genealogical Tables, &c. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Maistre, Xavier de, &c. Voyage autour de ma Chambre, by Xavier de Maistre; Ouiika, by Madame de Duras; Le Vieux Tailleur, by M.M. Erckmann-Chatrian; La Veillée de Vincennes, by Alfred de Vigny; Les Jumeaux de l’Hôtel Corneille, by Edmond About; Méventures d’un Écolier, by Rodolphe Töpffer. Third Edition, Revised. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Voyage autour de ma Chambre. Limp, 1s. 6d.

Molière’s Les Fourberies de Scapin. With Voltaire’s Life of Molière. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 1s. 6d.

— Les Femmes Savantes. With Notes, Glossary, &c. Extra fcap. 8vo, cloth, 2s.; stiff covers, 1s. 6d.

Regnard’s Le Joueur, and Brueys and Falaprat’s Le Grondeur. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Sévigné, Madame de, and her chief Contemporaries. Selections from their Correspondence. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

Blouët. L’Éloquence de la Chaire Française. Edited by Paul Blouët, B.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.


Perrault’s Popular Tales. Edited from the Original Editions, with Introduction, &c., by A. Lang, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s. 6d.

Quinet’s Lettres à sa Mère. Selected and Edited by George Saintsbury, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

Sainte-Beuve. Selections from the Causeries du Lundi. Edited by George Saintsbury, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

A Primer of Italian Literature. By F. J. Snell, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.


— Tutte Le Opere di Dante Alighieri, nuovamente rivedute nel testo dal Dr. E. Moore: Con Indice dei Nomi Propri e delle Cose Notabili, compilato da Paget Toynbee, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

* Also, an India Paper edition, cloth extra, 9s. 6d.; and Miniature edition, 3 vols., in case, 10s. 6d.

— Studies in Dante. By E. Moore, D.D. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d. net each.

Series I. Scripture and Classical Authors in Dante.
— II. Miscellaneous Essays.

— La Divina Commedia di Dante Alighieri, nuovamente riveduta nel testo del Dr. E. Moore: Con Indice dei Nomi Propri, compilato da Paget Toynbee, M.A. Crown 8vo, 6s.
I. Literature and Philology.

Dante (continued). Selections from the Inferno. With Introduction and Notes. By H. B. Cotterill, B.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Tasso. La Gerusalemme Liberata. Cantos i, ii. With Introduction and Notes. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Cervantes. The Adventure of the Wooden Horse, and Sancho Panza's Governorship. Edited, with Introduction, Life and Notes, by Clovis Bévenot, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

(2) GERMAN AND GOTHIC.

Max Müller. The German Classics, from the Fourth to the Nineteenth Century. With Biographical Notices, Translations into Modern German, and Notes. By the Right Hon. F. Max Müller, M.A. A New Edition, Revised, Enlarged, and Adapted to Wilhelm Scherer's "History of German Literature," by F. Lichtenstein. 2 vols. Crown 8vo, 21s. *x* Or, separately, 10s. 6d. each volume.

Scherer. A History of German Literature by Wilhelm Scherer. Translated from the Third German Edition by Mrs. F. C. Conybeare. Edited by the Right Hon. F. Max Müller. 2 vols. 8vo, 21s. *x* Or, separately, 10s. 6d. each volume.

A History of German Literature, from the Accession of Frederick the Great to the Death of Goethe. By the same. Crown 8vo, 5s.

Wright. An Old High German Primer. With Grammar, Notes, and Glossary. By Joseph Wright, M.A., Ph.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

A Middle High German Primer. With Grammar, Notes, and Glossary. By the same Author. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.


LANGE'S GERMAN COURSE.

By HERMANN LANGE, Lecturer on French and German at the Manchester Technical School, and Lecturer on German at the Manchester Athenaeum.

I. Germans at Home; a Practical Introduction to German Conversation, with an Appendix containing the Essentials of German Grammar. Third Edition. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

II. Grammar of the German Language. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

III. German Manual; a German Grammar, Reading Book, and a Handbook of German Conversation. Second Edition. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

IV. German Composition; A Theoretical and Practical Guide to the Art of Translating English Prose into German. Third Edition. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

* * * A Key to the above, price 5s. net.

German Spelling; A Synopsis of the Changes which it has undergone through the Government Regulations of 1880. 6d.

BUCHHEIM'S GERMAN CLASSICS.

(Extra foap. 8vo.)

Edited, with Biographical, Historical, and Critical Introductions, Arguments (to the Dramas), and Complete Commentaries, by C. A. BUCHHEIM, Phil. Doc., Professor in King's College, London.

Becker (the Historian). Friedrich der Grosse. Edited, with Notes, an Historical Introduction, and a Map. Third Edition. 3s. 6d.

Goethe:

Dichtung und Wahrheit. The first four books. 4s. 6d.


Hermann und Dorothea. Immediately.


Halm: Griseldis. A Drama. 3s.

Heine:

Harzreise. With Map. Third Edition. 2s. 6d.

Prosa: being Selections from his Prose Writings. Second Edition. 4s. 6d.

London: HENRY FROWDE, Amen Corner, E.C.
1. Literature and Philology.

BUCHHEIM'S GERMAN CLASSICS (continued).

Lessing:
Nathan der Weise. Second Edition. 4s. 6d.

Schiller:
Historische Skizzen. With Map. Seventh Edition, Revised. 2s. 6d.
Jungfrau von Orleans. A Drama. Second Edition. 4s. 6d.
Maria Stuart. A Drama. 3s. 6d.

Modern German Reader. A Graduated Collection of Extracts from Modern German Authors. Edited by C. A. BUCHHEIM, Phil. Doc.
Part I. Prose Extracts. With English Notes, a Grammatical Appendix, and a complete Vocabulary. Seventh Edition. 2s. 6d.
Part II. Extracts in Prose and Poetry. With English Notes and an Index. Second Edition. 2s. 6d.

German Poetry for Beginners. Edited, with English Notes and a complete Vocabulary, by EMMA S. BUCHHEIM. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

Elementary German Prose Composition. With Notes, Vocabulary, &c. By the same Editor. Third Edition. Cloth, 2s.; stiff covers, 1s. 6d.

Short German Plays, for Reading and Acting. With Notes and Vocabulary. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, cloth, 3s.

Chamisso. Peter Schlemihl's Wundersame Geschichte. Edited, with Notes and a complete Vocabulary, by the same Editor. Fourth Thousand. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

German Passages for Unprepared Translation. For the use of Candidates for Army, Civil Service, and other Examinations. Selected and arranged by EDUARD EHREN. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 3s.

Hoffmann (Franz). Heute mir Morgen dir. Edited, with Notes, by J. H. MAUDE, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.


Riehl's Seines Vaters Sohn and Gespensterkampf. Edited, with Notes, by H. T. Gerrans, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

Schiller's Wilhelm Tell. Translated into English Verse by E. Massie, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.

(3) SCANDINAVIAN.

Cleasby and Vigfússon. An Icelandic-English Dictionary, based on the MS. Collections of Richard Cleasby. Enlarged and completed by G. Vigfússon, M.A. 4to, 3l. 7s.


Sweet. Icelandic Primer, with Grammar, Notes, and Glossary. By Henry Sweet, M.A. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Vigfússon. Sturlunga Saga, including the Islendinga Saga of Lawman Sturla Thorsson and other works. Edited by Guðbrand Vigfússon, M.A. In 2 vols. 8vo, 2l. 2s.

Vigfússon and Powell. Icelandic Prose Reader, with Notes, Grammar, and Glossary. By G. Vigfússon, M.A., and F. York Powell, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 10s. 6d.


London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
SECTION IV.

CLASSICAL LANGUAGES.

(1) LATIN.

STANDARD WORKS AND EDITIONS.

Ellis (Robinson). The Fables of Phaedrus. 1st. net.

-- Vellei Paterculi ad M. Vinicium Libri Duo. Ex Amerbachii praeclipe Apographo edidit et emendavit R. Ellis, Litterarum Latinarum Professor publicus apud Oxonienses. Crown 8vo, paper boards, 6s.

King and Cookson. The Principles of Sound and Inflection, as illustrated in the Greek and Latin Languages. By J. E. King, M.A., and Christopher Cookson, M.A. 8vo, 18s.

Lewis and Short. A Latin Dictionary, founded on Andrews' edition of Freund's Latin Dictionary, revised, enlarged, and in great part re-written by Charlton T. Lewis, Ph.D., and Charles Short, LL.D. 4to, 17. 5s.

Lindsay. The Latin Language: An Historical Account of Latin Sounds, Stems, and Flexions. By W. M. Lindsay, M.A. Demy 8vo, 21s.


-- Lectures and Essays. Second Series. Edited by F. Haverfield, M.A. With Portrait and Memoir. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

** First Series. Out of Print.

-- The Roman Satura. 8vo, sewed, 1s.

-- Ancient Lives of Vergil. 8vo, sewed, 2s.


Pinder. Selections from the less known Latin Poets. By North Pinder, M.A. 8vo, 15s.

Rushforth. Latin Historical Inscriptions, Illustrating the History of the Early Empire. By G. McN. Rushforth, M.A. 8vo, 10s. net.


— Roman Poets of the Augustan Age:


— Horace and the Elegiac Poets. Second Edition, with a Memoir of the Author by Andrew Lang, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

** A limited number of copies of the First Edition, containing a Portrait of the Author, can still be obtained in Demy 8vo, 14s.


Avianus. The Fables. Edited, with Prolegomena, Critical Apparatus, Commentary, &c., by R. Ellis, M.A., LL.D. 8vo, 8s. 6d.


Catulli Veronensis Liber. Iterum recognovit, apparatum criticum prolegomena appendices addidit, R. Ellis, A.M. 8vo, 16s.

Catullus, a Commentary on. By Robinson Ellis, M.A. Second Edition. 8vo, 18s.


Also separately—

Book I, Third Edition. 7s. 6d.


— Pro Milone. Edited, with Introduction and Commentary, by A. C. Clark, M.A. 8vo, 8s. 6d.


— Vol. II. The Satires, Epistles, and De Arte Poetica. By the same Editor. 8vo, 12s.


London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.


Nonius Marcellus: De Compendiosa Doctrina I–III. Edited, with Introduction and Critical Apparatus, by the late J. H. Onions, M.A. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Ovid. P. Ovidii Nasonis Ibis. Ex Novis Codicibus edidit, Scholia Vetera Commentarium cum Prolegomenis Appendice Indice addidit, R. Ellis, A.M. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

— P. Ovidi Nasonis Tristium Libri V. Recensuit S. G. Owen, A.M. 8vo, 16s.

— P. Ovidi Nasonis Heroïdes. With the Greek Translation of Planudes. Edited by the late Arthur Palmer, Litt.D. 8vo, cloth, with a Facsimile, 21s.


Plautus. Rudens. Edited, with Critical and Explanatory Notes, by E. A. Sonnenschein, M.A. 8vo, 8s. 6d.

— The Codex Turnebi of Plautus. By W. M. Lindsay, M.A. 8vo, 21s. net.

Quintilian. Institutionis Oratoriae Liber X. Edited by W. Peterson, M.A. 8vo, 12s. 6d.


— Books XI–XVI. By the same Editor. 8vo, 20s.

— De Germania. With Introduction, Notes, and Map. By the same Editor. 8vo, 6s. 6d.

— Vita Agricolae. With Introduction, Notes, and Map. By the same Editor. 8vo, 6s. 6d.

— Dialogus De Oratoribus. A Revised Text, with Introductory Essays and Critical and Explanatory Notes. By W. Peterson, M.A., LL.D. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

**Latin: Educational Works.**

**Latin Educational Works.**

**Oxford Classical Texts, Crown 8vo.**


— De Bello Civili. Paper covers, 2s. 6d.; limp cloth, 3s.:
on India Paper (with De Bello Gallico), 7s.

*Ciceronis Orations.* By A. C. Clark. Paper covers, 2s. 6d.;
limp cloth, 3s.

— Epistulae ad Familiares. By L. C. Purser. Paper
covers, 5s.; limp cloth, 6s.

*Horati Opera.* By E. C. Wickham. Paper covers, 2s. 6d.;
limp cloth, 3s. 6d.; on India Paper, 4s. 6d.

*Lucreti Caro de Rerum Natura.* By C. Bailey. Paper
covers, 2s. 6d.; limp cloth, 3s.; on India Paper, 4s.

*Cornellii Taciti Opera Minora.* By H. Furneaux. Paper
covers, 1s. 6d.; limp cloth, 2s.

*Vergili Opera.* By F. A. Hirtzel. Paper covers, 3s.;
limp cloth, 3s. 6d.; on India Paper, 4s. 6d.

*India Paper copies are bound in cloth, gilt edges; and may also
be purchased in smooth Persian calf.*

**Grammars, Exercise Books, etc.**

*Supplied to Teachers only, on application to the Secretary, Clarendon Press.*

**Allen. Rudimenta Latina. Comprising Accidence, and
Exercises of a very Elementary Character, for the use of Beginners.
By John Barrow Allen, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

— An Elementary Latin Grammar. New and Enlarged
Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

*Key to First and Second Latin Exercise Books, in
1 vol. 5s. net.

— Lives from Cornelius Nepos. Miltiades, Themistocles,
Pausanias. With Notes, Maps, Vocabularies, and English Exercises.
Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

— Tales. Adapted from the Text of Livy. With Notes,
Maps, Vocabularies, and English Exercises. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff
covers, 1s. 6d. each.

2. Of the Roman Republic, Part I.
3. Of the Roman Republic, Part II.

**Anthologia Oxoniensis, Nova.** Translations into Greek
and Latin Verse. Edited by Robinson Ellis, M.A., and A. D. Godley,
M.A. Crown 8vo, buckram extra, 6s. net.; India Paper, 7s. 6d. net.

London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
I. Literature and Philology.

An Introduction to Latin Syntax. By W. S. Gibson, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.


A Latin Prose Primer. By J. Y. Sargent, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.


* — — — Key to the above, 5s. net.


Vol. I. Syntax, Exercises with Notes, &c. 4s. 6d.

Or in two Parts, 2s. 6d. each, viz.


* — — — Key to the above, 5s. net.

Vol. II. Passages of Graduated Difficulty for Translation into Latin, together with an Introduction on Continuous Prose. 4s. 6d.


Demonstrations in Latin Elegiac Verse. By W. H. D. Rouse, M.A. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Hints and Helps for Latin Elegiacs. By H. Lee-Warner, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

* — — — Key to the above, 4s. 6d. net.

Musa Claudia. Translations into Latin Elegiac Verse. By S. G. Owen, M.A., and J. S. Phillimore, M.A. Crown 8vo, paper boards, 3s. 6d.

Reddenda Minora; or, Easy Passages, Latin and Greek, for Unseen Translation. For the use of Lower Forms. Composed and selected by C. S. Jerram, M.A. Sixth Edition. Revised and Enlarged. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

Anglice Reddenda; or, Extracts, Latin and Greek, for Unseen Translation. By C. S. Jerram, M.A. Fourth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

— Second Series. By the same Editor. New Edition. 3s.

— Third Series. By the same Editor. 3s.


* — A Key to passages quoted in the above, price 6d. net.

An Elementary Latin Dictionary. By Charlton T. Lewis, Ph.D. Square 8vo, 7s. 6d.

A School Latin Dictionary. By the same. 4to, 18s.

An Introduction to the Comparative Grammar of Greek and Latin. By J. E. King, M.A., and C. Cookson, M.A. Cr. 8vo, 5s. 6d.

A Short Historical Latin Grammar. By W. M. Lindsay, M.A. Crown 8vo, 5s. 6d.

Latin Classics for Schools.

Caesar. The Commentaries (for Schools). With Notes and Maps. By Charles E. Moberly, M.A.


— Books I and II, 2s.; III-V, 2s. 6d.; VI-VIII, 3s. 6d.

— Books I-III, stiff covers, 2s.

The Civil War. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Catulli Veronensis Carmina Selecta, secundum recognitionem Robinson Ellis, A.M. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Cicero. Selection of Interesting and Descriptive Passages. With Notes. By Henry Walford, M.A. In three Parts. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d. Each Part separately, 1s. 6d.

Part I. Anecdotes from Grecian and Roman History.
Part II. Omens and Dreams: Beauties of Nature.
Part III. Rome's Rule of her Provinces.

— De Amicitia. With Introduction and Notes. By St. George Stock, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

— De Senectute. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by L. Huxley, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.


— pro Marcello, pro Ligario, pro Rege Deiotaro. With Introduction and Notes. By W. Y. Fausset, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

— pro Milone. With Notes, &c. By A. B. Povnton, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

— pro Roscio. With Notes. By St. George Stock, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.


— In Q. Caecilium Divinatio, and In C. Verrem Actio Prima. With Introduction and Notes, by J. R. King, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, limp, 1s. 6d.

London: HENRY FROWDE, AMEN CORNER, E.C.

--- Speeches against Catilina. With Introduction and Notes, by E. A. Upcott, M.A. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.


--- Odes, Book I. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

--- Selected Odes. With Notes for the use of a Fifth Form. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.


--- Book V. By the same Editors. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

--- Book VII. By the same Editors. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.


--- Book XXI. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

--- Book XXII. With Introduction, Notes, and Maps. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.


Selected Lives: Miltiades, Themistocles, Pausanias. With Notes, Maps, Vocabularies, and English Exercises by J. B. Allen, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

Ovid. Selections for the use of Schools. With Introductions and Notes, and an Appendix on the Roman Calendar. By W. Ramsay, M.A. Edited by G. G. Ramsay, M.A. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s. 6d.


Plautus. Captivi. Edited by Wallace M. Lindsay, M.A. Fourth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.


Quintilian. Institutionis Oratoriae Liber X. By W. Peterson, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.


Tacitus. The Annals. Text only. Crown 8vo, 6s.

— The Annals. Books I—IV. Edited, with Introduction and Notes (for the use of Schools and Junior Students), by H. Furneaux, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.

— The Annals. Book I. With Introduction and Notes, by the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, limp, 2s.


London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
I. Literature and Philology.


**Virgil.** With an Introduction and Notes. By T. L. Papillon, M.A., and A. E. Haigh, M.A. 2 vols. Crown 8vo, cloth, 6s. each; or, stiff covers, 2s. 6d. each.

— Aeneid. In Four Parts. Books I–III; IV–VI; VII–IX; X–XII. By the same Editors. Crown 8vo, stiff covers, 2s. each Part.

— Bucolies and Georgics. By the same Editors. Crown 8vo, stiff covers, 2s. 6d.


— Bucolies. Edited by C. S. Jerram, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

— Georgies, Books I, II. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

— Georgies, Books III, IV. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

— Aeneid I. With Introduction and Notes. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, limp, 1s. 6d.

— Aeneid IX. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by A. E. Haigh, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, limp, 1s. 6d. In two Parts, 2s.

(2) GREEK.

**STANDARD WORKS AND EDITIONS.**

**Allen.** Notes on Abbreviations in Greek Manuscripts. By T. W. Allen, M.A. Royal 8vo, 5s.

**Chandler.** A Practical Introduction to Greek Accentuation. By H. W. Chandler, M.A. *Second Edition.* 10s. 6d.

**Farnell.** The Cults of the Greek States. By L. R. Farnell, M.A. 8vo. Vols. I and II, with 61 Plates and over 100 Illustrations, cloth, 1l. 12s. net.

Vol. III (completing the work), in preparation.

Greek: Standard Works.

Grenfell. An Alexandrian Erotic Fragment and other Greek Papyri, chiefly Ptolemaic. Edited by B. P. Grenfell, M.A. Small 4to, 8s. 6d. net.


Grenfell and Mahaffy. Revenue Laws of Ptolemy Philadelphus. 2 vols. Text and Plates. 1l. 11s. 6d. net.


—— The Tragic Drama of the Greeks. With Illustrations. By A. E. Haigh, M.A. 8vo, 12s. 6d.


Hicks. A Manual of Greek Historical Inscriptions. By E. L. Hicks, M.A. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Hill. Sources for Greek History between the Persian and Peloponnesian Wars. Collected and arranged by G. F. Hill, M.A. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Kenyon. The Palaeography of Greek Papyri. By F. G. Kenyon, M.A. With Twenty Facsimiles and a Table of Alphabets. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

King and Cookson. The Principles of Sound and Inflection, as illustrated in the Greek and Latin Languages. By J. E. King, M.A., and Christopher Cookson, M.A. 8vo, 18s.


Monro. Modes of Ancient Greek Music. By D. B. Monro, M.A. 8vo, 8s. 6d. net.


Paton and Hicks. The Inscriptions of Cos. By W. R. Paton and E. L. Hicks. Royal 8vo, linen, with Map, 28s.

Smyth. The Sounds and Inflections of the Greek Dialects (Ionic). By Herbert Weir Smyth, Ph.D. 8vo, 24s.


London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.

D
I. Literature and Philology.


Aeschines et Isocrates, Scholia Graeca in. Edidit G. Dindorfius. 8vo, 4s.

Aeschylus: Tragoediae et Fragmenta, ex recensione Guili. Dindorfii. Second Edition. 8vo, 5s. 6d.

--- Annotationes Guili. Dindorfii. Partes II. 8vo, 10s.


Apsinis et Longini Rhetorica. E Codicibus mss. recensuit Jor. Bakius. 8vo, 3s.

Aristophanes. A Complete Concordance to the Comedies and Fragments. By Henry Dunbar, M.D. 4to, 1l. 1s.

--- J. Caravelliae Index in Aristophanem. 8vo, 3s.

--- Comoediae et Fragmenta, ex recensione Guili. Dindorfii. Tomi II. 8vo, 1l.

--- Annotationes Guili. Dindorfii. Partes II. 8vo, 11s.

--- Scholia Graeca ex Codicibus aucta et emendata a Guili. Dindorfii. Partes III. 8vo, 1l.

ARISTOTLE.

--- Ex recensione Immanuelis Bekkeri. Accedunt Indices Sylburgiani. Tomi XI. 8vo, 2l. 1os.

The volumes (except vols. I and IX) may be had separately, price 5s. 6d. each.

--- Ethica Nicomachaena, recognovit brevique Adnotatione critica instruxit I. Bywater. Post 8vo, cloth, 6s.

--- The same, on 4to paper, for Marginal Notes, 10s. 6d. * Also in Crown 8vo, paper cover, 3s. 6d.

--- Contributions to the Textual Criticism of Aristotle's Nicomachean Ethics. By Ingram Bywater. Stiff cover, 2s. 6d.


--- The English Manuscripts of the Nicomachean Ethics, described in relation to Bekker's Manuscripts and other Sources. By J. A. Stewart, M.A. (Anecdota Oxon.) Small 4to, 3s. 6d.

--- De Arte Poetica Liber. Recognovit brevique Adnotatione Critica Instruxit I. Bywater, Letterarum Graecarum Professor Regius. Post 8vo, stiff cover, 1s. 6d.

ARISTOTLE (continued).

— Selecta ex Organo Aristoteleopol Capitula. In usum Scholarum Academicarum. Crown 8vo, stiff covers, 3s. 6d.


— The Politics, translated into English, with Introduction, Marginal Analysis, Notes, and Indices, by B. Jowett, M.A. Medium 8vo. 2 vols. 21s.


— On the History of the process by which the Aristotelian Writings arrived at their present form. By R. Shute, M.A. 8vo, 7s. 6d.


Demosthenes. Ex recensione Guil. Dindorfii. Tomi IX. 8vo, 21. 6s. Separately—

Textus, 1l. 1s. Annotationes, 15s. Scholia, 10s.


Euripides. Tragoediae et Fragmenta, ex recensione Guil. Dindorfii. Tomi II. 8vo, 10s.

— Annotationes Guil. Dindorfii. Partes II. 8vo, 10s.

— Scholia Graeca, ex Codicibus aucta et emendata a Guil. Dindorfio. Tomi IV. 8vo, 1l. 16s.

— Alcestis, ex recensione G. Dindorfii. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Harpocratianis Lexicon. Ex recensione G. Dindorfii. Tomi II. 8vo, 10s. 6d.


Heracliti Ephesii Reliquiae. Recensuit I. Bywater, M.A. Appendicis loco additae sunt Diogenis Laertii Vita Heracliti, Particulæ Hippocratei De Diæta Lib. I, Epistolæ Heraclitææ. 8vo, 6s.


London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
I. Literature and Philology.

HOMER.

— A Complete Concordance to the Odyssey and Hymns of Homer; to which is added a Concordance to the Parallel Passages in the Iliad, Odyssey, and Hymns. By Henry Dunbar, M.D. 4to, 11. 1s.

— Seberi Index in Homerum. 8vo, 6s. 6d.


— Ilias, cum brevi Annotatione C. G. Heynii. Accedunt Scholia minora. Tomi II. 8vo, 15s.

— Ilias, ex rec. Guil. Dindorfii. 8vo, 5s. 6d.


— Scholia Graeca in Iliadem Townleyana. Recensuit Ernestus Maass. 2 vols. 8vo, 1l. 16s.

— Odyssea, ex rec. G. Dindorfii. 8vo, 5s. 6d.

— Scholia Graeca in Odysseam. Edidit Guil. Dindorfius. Tomi II. 8vo, 15s. 6d.


— — Vol. II. Books XIII–XXIV. By D. B. Monro, M.A. [In the Press.]


Oratores Attici, ex recensione Bekkeri: Vol. III. Isaeus, Æschines, Lycurges, &c. 8vo, 7s.

* * * Vols. I and II are out of print.

— Index Andocideus, Lycurgeus, Dinarcheus, confectus a Ludovico Learning Forman, Ph.D. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Paroemiographi Graeci, quorum pars nunc primum ex Codd. mss. vulgatur. Edidit T. Gaisford, S.T.P. 8vo, 5s. 6d.

PLATO.

— Apology, with a revised Text and English Notes, and a Digest of Platonic Idioms, by James Riddell, M.A. 8vo, 8s. 6d.

— Philebus, with a revised Text and English Notes, by Edward Poste, M.A. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

— Republic; The Greek Text. Edited, with Notes and Essays, by the late B. Jowett, M.A., and Lewis Campbell, M.A., LL.D. In Three Volumes. Medium 8vo, cloth, 2l. 2s.

— Sophistes and Politicus, with a revised Text and English Notes, by L. Campbell, M.A. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

— Theaetetus, with a revised Text and English Notes, by L. Campbell, M.A. Second Edition. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

— The Dialogues, translated into English, with Analyses and Introductions, by B. Jowett, M.A. Third Edition. 5 vols. medium 8vo, 4l. 4s. In half-morocco, 5l.

— The Republic, translated into English, with Analysis and Introduction, by B. Jowett, M.A. Third Edition. Medium 8vo, 12s. 6d.; half-roan, 14s.

— A Subject-Index to the Dialogues of Plato. By Evelyn Abbott, M.A. 8vo, cloth, 2s. 6d.

Plotinus. Edidit F. Creuzer. Tomi III. 4to, 1l. 8s.

Plutarchi Moralium, id est, Opera, exceptis Vitis, reliqua. Edidit Daniel Wytenbach. Accedit Index Graecitatis. Tomi VIII. Partes XV. 8vo, cloth, 3l. 10s.


Sophocles.


— Tragoediae et Fragmenta, ex recensione et cum commentariis Guili Dindorfii. Third Edition. 2 vols. Fcap. 8vo, 1l. 1s. Each Play separately, limp, 2s. 6d.

— Tragoediae et Fragmenta cum Annotationibus Guili Dindorfii. Tomi II. 8vo, 10s. The Text, Vol. I, 5s. 6d. The Notes, Vol. II, 4s. 6d.

Stobaei Florilegium. Ad MSS. fidem emendavit et suspexit T. Gaisford, T.P. Tomi IV. 8vo, 1l.


London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
I. Literature and Philology.


Thucydides. Book I. Edited with Introduction, Notes, and Maps, by W. H. Forbes, M.A. Post 8vo, 8s. 6d.


Vol. II. Books IV–VIII, and Historical Index.

Xenophon. Ex rec. et cum annotatt. L. Dindorfii.

Historia Graeca. Second Edition. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Expeditio Cyri. Second Edition. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Institutio Cyri. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Memorabilia Socrates. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Opuscula Politica Equestria et Venatica cum Arriani Libello de Venatione. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

— A Commentary, with Introduction and Appendices, on the Hellanica of Xenophon. By G. E. Underhill, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

GREEK EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

OXFORD CLASSICAL TEXTS, CROWN 8VO.

Thucydides Historiae. By H. Stuart Jones.

Tom. I (Libri I–IV). Paper covers, 3s.; limp cloth, 3s. 6d.

Tom. II (Libri V–VIII). Paper covers, 3s.; limp cloth, 3s. 6d.

Platonic Opera. By J. Burnet.

Tom. I (Tetralogiae I–II). Paper covers, 5s.; limp cloth, 6s.; on India Paper, 7s.

Tom. II (Tetralogiae III, IV). Paper covers, 5s. limp cloth, 6s.; on India Paper, 7s.

Aeschylus Tragoediae, cum Fragmentis. By A. Sidgwick.

Paper covers, 3s.; limp cloth, 3s. 6d.; on India Paper, 4s. 6d.

Apollonius Rhodius Argonautica. By R. C. Seaton. Paper covers, 2s. 6d.; limp cloth, 3s.

Aristophanes Comedies. By F. W. Hall and W. M. Geldart.

Tom. I. Paper covers, 3s.; limp cloth, 3s. 6d.; on India Paper, 4s. 6d.

Tom. II. Paper covers, 3s.; limp cloth, 3s. 6d.; on India Paper, 4s. 6d.

Complete, on India Paper, 8s. 6d.

Xenophon's Opera. By E. C. Marchant.

Tom. I (Historia Graeca). Paper covers, 2s. 6d.; limp cloth, 3s.

Tom. II (Libri Socratie). Paper covers, 3s.; limp cloth, 3s. 6d.

** India Paper copies bound in cloth, gilt edges, or may also be purchased in smooth Persian calf.

GRAMMARS, EXERCISE BOOKS, ETC.

* Supplied to Teachers only, on application to the Secretary, Clarendon Press.

Chandler. The Elements of Greek Accentuation: abridged from his larger work by H. W. Chandler, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

King and Cookson. An Introduction to the Comparative Grammar of Greek and Latin. By J. E. King, M.A., and C. Cookson, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s. 6d.

Liddell and Scott. An Intermediate Greek-English Lexicon, founded upon the Quarto Edition of Liddell and Scott's Greek Lexicon. Small 4to, 12s. 6d.

Liddell and Scott. A Greek-English Lexicon, abridged from Liddell and Scott's Quarto edition. Square 12mo, 7s. 6d.

Miller. A Greek Testament Primer. An Easy Grammar and Reading Book for the use of Students beginning Greek. By the Rev. E. Miller, M.A. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, paper covers, 2s.; cloth, 3s. 6d.


Wordsworth. A Greek Primer, for the use of beginners in that Language. By the Right Rev. Charles Wordsworth, D.C.L. Eighty-third Thousand. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.


A Primer of Greek Prose Composition. By J. Y. Sargent, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

— Key to the above, 5s. net.

Passages for Translation into Greek Prose. By J. Young Sargent, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

Exemplaria Graeca. Being Greek Renderings of Selected 'Passages for Translation into Greek Prose.' By J. Y. Sargent, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

Helps, Hints, and Exercises for Greek Verse Composition. Collected and arranged by C. E. Laurence, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

— Key to the above, 5s. net.

London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
Models and Materials for Greek Iambic Verse. By J. Y. Sargent, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

*—— — Key to the above, 5s. net.

Greek Reddenda. By C. S. Jerrell, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Reddenda Minora; or, Easy Passages, Latin and Greek, for Unseen Translation. By the same Author. Sixth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

Anglice Reddenda; or, Extracts, Latin and Greek, for Unseen Translation. By the same Author. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.


Anglice Reddenda. Third Series. For the use of Middle and Higher Forms. By the same Author. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

Models and Exercises in Unseen Translation. By H. F. Fox, M.A., and T. M. Bromley, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s. 6d.

*—— — Key to passages quoted in the above, price 6d. net.


Golden Treasury of Greek Prose, being a Collection of the finest passages in the principal Greek Prose Writers, with Introductory Notices and Notes. By Sir R. S. Wright, M.A., and J. E. L. Shadwell, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Anthologia Oxoniensis, Nova. Translations into Greek and Latin Verse. Edited by Robinson Ellis, M.A., and A. D. Godley, M.A. Crown 8vo, buckram Extra, 6s. net; on India Paper, 7s. 6d.

Select Fragments of the Greek Comic Poets. Edited by A. W. Pickard-Cambridge, M.A. Crown 8vo, 5s.

GREEK READERS.

Easy Greek Reader. By Evelyn Abbott, M.A. In one or two Parts. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.


Second Greek Reader. By A. M. Bell, M.A. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

Specimens of Greek Dialects; being a Fourth Greek Reader. With Introductions, &c. By W. W. Merry, D.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Selections from Homer and the Greek Dramatists; being a Fifth Greek Reader. With Explanatory Notes and Introductions to the Study of Greek Epic and Dramatic Poetry. By Evelyn Abbott, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

GREEK CLASSICS FOR SCHOOLS.


Agamemnon. Fifth Edition, Revised. 3s.
Choephoroi. New Edition, Revised. 3s.
Eumenides. New Edition. 3s.
Prometheus Bound. With Introduction and Notes, by A. O. Plockard, M.A. Third Edition. 3s.


The Birds. Third Edition, 3s. 6d.
The Peace. 3s. 6d.
The Wasps. Second Edition, 3s. 6d.

Cebes. Tabula. With Introduction and Notes (School Edition). By C. S. Jemram, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 12. 6d.; cloth, 2s. 6d.


— Vol. II. De Pace, Philippic II, De Chersoneso, Philippic III. 4s. 6d.

— Philippics only, reprinted from the above. 2s. 6d.

— Speech on the Crown. 3s. 6d.

— Speech against Meidias. With Introduction and Notes, by J. R. King, M.A. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.
I. Literature and Philology.

   Alcestis. By C. S. Jerram, M.A. Fifth Edition. 2s. 6d.
   Bacchae. By A. H. Cruickshank, M.A. 3s. 6d.
   Cyclops. By W. E. Long, M.A. 2s. 6d.
   Hecuba. By C. B. Heberden, M.A. 2s. 6d.
   Helena. By C. S. Jerram, M.A. 3s.
   Heracleidae. By C. S. Jerram, M.A. 3s.
   Ion. By C. S. Jerram, M.A. 3s.

Herodotus. Book IX. Edited, with Notes, by Evelyn Abbott, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

Herodotus. Selections. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and a Map, by W. W. Merry, D.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Homer.


Iliad, Book I. By the same Editor. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

Iliad, Book III. Edited for Beginners, by M. T. Tatham, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

Iliad, Book XXI. With Introduction and Notes. By Herbert Hailstone, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

Odyssey, Books I–XII. By W. W. Merry, D.D. Sixtieth Thousand. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.
   Books I and II, separately, each 1s. 6d.
   Books VI and VII. 1s. 6d.
   Books VII–XII. 3s.

Greek: Educational Works

Homer (continued).

   Books XIII–XVIII. 3s.


Lysias. Epitaphios. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by F. J. Small, B.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

   The Apology. Third Edition. 2s. 6d.
   Crito, 2s.
   Meno. Second Edition. 2s. 6d.


—— A Selection of Passages from Plato for English Readers; from the Translation by the late B. Jowett, M.A. Edited, with Introductions, by M. J. Knight. 2 vols. Crown 8vo, gilt top, 12s.


Sophocles. Edited, with Introductions and English Notes, by Lewis Campbell, M.A., and Evelyn Abbott, M.A. New and Revised Edition. 2 vols. Extra fcap. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
   Sold separately: Vol. I, Text, 4s. 6d.; Vol. II, Notes, 6s.
   * * Or in single Plays, 2s. each.

—— Oedipus Rex: Dindorf's Text, with Notes by Basil Jones, D.D., late Bishop of St. David's. Extra fcap. 8vo, limp, 1s. 6d.


Thucydides. Book I. Edited, with Notes and Maps, by W. H. Forbes, M.A. Post 8vo, 8s. 6d.

—— Book III. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by H. F. Fox, M.A. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
I. Literature and Philology.


* * * A Key to Sections 1–3, for Teachers only, 2s. 6d. net.


— Anabasis, Book II. With Notes and Map. By C. S. Jerram, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

— Anabasis, Book III. With Introduction, Analysis, Notes, &c. By J. Marshall, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

— Anabasis, Book IV. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

— Anabasis, Books III, IV. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

— Vocabulary to the Anabasis. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.


— Cyropaedia, Books IV and V. With Introduction and Notes. By C. Bigg, D.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.


— Memorabilia. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, &c., by J. Marshall, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

SECTION V.

ORIENTAL LANGUAGES.

THE SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST.

Translated by various Oriental Scholars, and edited by
the Right Hon. F. Max Müller.

First Series, Vols. I—XXIV. 8vo, cloth.

Vol. I. The Upanishads. Translated by F. Max Müller.
Part I. Second Edition. 10s. 6d.

Vol. II. The Sacred Laws of the Aryas, as taught in the
Schools of Apastamba, Gautama, Vāsishṭā, and Baudhāyana. Trans-
lated by Georg Bühler. Part I. Second Edition. 10s. 6d.

Vol. III. The Sacred Books of China. The Texts of Con-

Vol. IV. The Zend-Avesta. Part I. The Vendidad. Trans-

Vol. V. The Pahlavi Texts. Translated by E. W. West.
Part I. 12s. 6d.

Vols. VI and IX. The Qur'ān. Translated by E. H.

Vol. VII. The Institutes of Vishnu. Translated by Julius
Jolly. 10s. 6d.

Vol. VIII. The Bhagavadgītā, with The Sanatsugatiya, and
The Anugītā. Translated by Kāshināth Trimābak Telang. Second
Edition. 10s. 6d.

Vol. X. The Dhammapada, translated from Pāli by F. Max
Müller; and The Sutta-Nipāta, translated from Pāli by V. Faurel; being
Canonical Books of the Buddhists. Second Edition. 10s. 6d.

* * See also Anecdota Oxon., Series II, III, pp. 52–54.

London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
I. Literature and Philology.

The Sacred Books of the East (continued).

Vol. XI. Buddhist Suttas. Translated from Pāli by T. W. Rhys Davids. 10s. 6d.

Vol. XII. The Satapatha-Brāhmaṇa, according to the Text of the Mādhyandina School. Translated by Julius Eggeling. Part I. Books I and II. 12s. 6d.


Vol. XIV. The Sacred Laws of the Āryas, as taught in the Schools of Āpastamba, Gautama, Vāsishṭha, and Baudhāyana. Translated by Georg Bühler. Part II. 10s. 6d.

Vol. XV. The Upanishads. Translated by F. Max Müller. Part II. Second Edition. 10s. 6d.


Vol. XVII. Vinaya Texts. Translated from the Pāli by T. W. Rhys Davids and Hermann Oldenberg. Part II. 10s. 6d.

Vol. XVIII. Pahlavi Texts. Translated by E. W. West. Part II. 12s. 6d.

Vol. XIX. The Fo-sho-hing-tsang-king. A Life of Buddha by Avalokiteśvara Bodhisattva, translated from Sanskrit into Chinese by Dharmarakṣa, A.D. 420, and from Chinese into English by Samuel Beal. 10s. 6d.

Vol. XX. Vinaya Texts. Translated from the Pāli by T. W. Rhys Davids and Hermann Oldenberg. Part III. 10s. 6d.

Vol. XXI. The Saddharma-pundarika; or, the Lotus of the True Law. Translated by H. Kern. 12s. 6d.

Vol. XXII. Gaina-Sūtras. Translated from Prākrit by Hermann Jacobi. Part I. 10s. 6d.

Vol. XXIII. The Zend-Avesta. Part II. Translated by James Darmesteter. 10s. 6d.

Vol. XXIV. Pahlavi Texts. Translated by E. W. West. Part III. 10s. 6d.

The Sacred Books of the East (continued).

Second Series, Vols. XXV—XLIX. 8vo, cloth.

Vol. XXV. Manu. Translated by GEORG BÜHLER. 21s.

Vol. XXVI. The Satapatha-Brâhma. Translated by JULIUS EGELING. Part II. Books III and IV. 12s. 6d.


Vols. XXIX and XXX. The Grihya-Sûtras, Rules of Vedic Domestic Ceremonies. Translated by HERMANN OLDBERG. Parts I and II. 12s. 6d. each.

Vol. XXXI. The Zend-Avesta. Part III. Translated by L. H. MILLS. 12s. 6d.

Vol. XXXII. Vedic Hymns. Part I. Translated by F. MAX MÜLLER. 18s. 6d.

Vol. XXXIII. The Minor Law-books. Translated by JULIUS JOLLY. Part I. Nârada, Brâhaspati. 10s. 6d.

Vol. XXXIV. The Vedânta-Sûtras, with Saîkara’s Commentary. Translated by G. THIBAUT. Part I. 12s. 6d.

Vol. XXXV. The Questions of King Milinda. Part I. Translated from the Pâli by T. W. RHYNSDALE. 10s. 6d.

Vol. XXXVI. The Questions of King Milinda. Part II. 12s. 6d.

Vol. XXXVII. Pahlavi Texts. Translated by E. W. WEST. Part IV. The Contents of the Naske, as stated in the Eighth and Ninth Books of the Dinkard. 15s.

Vol. XXXVIII. The Vedânta-Sûtras. Translated by G. THIBAUT. Part II. With Index to Parts I and II. 12s. 6d.

Vols. XXXIX and XL. The Sacred Books of China. The Texts of Taoism. Translated by JAMES LEGGE. 21s.

London: HENRY FROWDE, AMAR CORNER, R.C.
I. Literature and Philology.

The Sacred Books of the East (continued).

Vol. XLI. The Satapatha-Brâhmaṇa. Translated by JULIUS EGGELING. Part III. Books V, VI, and VII. 12s. 6d.

Vol. XLII. Hymns of the Atharva-veda. Translated by M. BLOOMFIELD. Books V, VI, and VII. 11s.

Vol. XLIII. The Satapatha-Brâhmaṇa. Translated by JULIUS EGGELING. Part IV. Books VIII, IX, and X. 12s. 6d.

Vol. XLIV. The Satapatha-Brâhmaṇa. Part V. Books XI, XII, XIII, and XIV. 18s. 6d.

Vol. XLV. The Gaina-Sūtras. Translated from Prâkrit by HERMANN JACOB. Part II. 12s. 6d.

Vol. XLVI. Vedic Hymns. Part II. Translated by HERMANN OLDENBERG. 14s.

Vol. XLVII. Pahlavi Texts. Translated by E. W. WEST. Part V. Marvels of Zoroastrianism. 8s. 6d.

Vol. XLVIII. The Vedânta-Sūtras with Râmânuja’s Sûrabhâṣya. Translated by G. THIBAUT. [In the Press.]


Part I. Third Edition. Revised and Enlarged. 7s. 6d.
Part II. Third Edition. Revised and Enlarged. 10s. 6d.

BENGALI. Grammar of the Bengali Language; Literary and Colloquial. By JOHN BEAMES. Crown 8vo, cloth, 7s. 6d.; cut flush, 6s.

BOHEMIAN. A Grammar of the Bohemian (or Čech) Language. By W. R. MORPILL, M.A. Crown 8vo, cloth, 6s.

BURMESE. A Burmese Reader. By R. F. ST. ANDREW ST. JOHN, Hon. M.A. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

CHALDEE. Book of Tobit. A Chaldee Text, from a unique MS. in the Bodleian Library. Edited by AD. NEUBAUER, M.A. Crown 8vo, 6s.

Oriental Languages.

  Vol. III. The Shoo-King; or, The Book of Historical Documents. In two Parts. 1l. 10s. each.
  Vol. IV. The She-King; or, The Book of Poetry. In two Parts. 1l. 10s. each.
  Vol. V. The Ch'un Ts'ew, with the Tso Chuen. In two Parts. 1l. 10s. each.

— The Nestorian Monument of Hsi-an Fa in Shen-hsi, China, relating to the Diffusion of Christianity in China in the Seventh and Eighth Centuries. By James Legge, D.D. 2s. 6d.

— Record of Buddhistic Kingdoms; being an Account by the Chinese Monk Fa-hien of his travels in India and Ceylon (A.D. 399-414). Translated and annotated, with a Corean recension of the Chinese Text, by James Legge, D.D. Crown 4to, boards, 10s. 6d.


— Catalogue of the Chinese Translation of the Buddhist Tripitaka, the Sacred Canon of the Buddhists in China and Japan. Compiled by Bunyu Nanjio. 4to, 1l. 12s. 6d.

— Handbook of the Chinese Language. Parts I and II. Grammar and Chrestomathy. By James Summers. 8vo, 1l. 8s.


— Libri duodecim Prophetarum Minorum in Ling. Aegypt. vulgo Coptica. Edidit H. Tattam, A.M. 8vo, 8s. 6d.

— Novum Testamentum Coptice, cura D. Wilkins. 12s. 6d.


HEBREW. Psalms in Hebrew (without points). Cr. 8vo, 2s.
HEBREW (continued).


Hebrew Grammar, as Edited and Enlarged by E. Kautzsch. Translated from the Twenty-fifth German Edition by the late Rev. G. W. Collins, M.A. The Translation revised and adjusted to the Twenty-sixth Edition by A. E. Cowley, M.A. 8vo, 21s.

Neubauer. Book of Hebrew Roots, by Abu'l-Walid Marwân ibn Janâh, otherwise called Rabbi Yônâh. Now first edited, with an Appendix, by Ad. Neubauer. 4to, 2l. 7s. 6d.


Hebrew Prose Accentuation. 8vo, 10s. 6d.


Part I, 8s. 6d. Part II, 7s. 6d.

MARATHI. Marathi Proverbs, collected and translated by the Rev. A. Manwaring, of the Church Missionary Society. 8vo, 8s. 6d.

SANSKRIT. Sanskrit-English Dictionary, Etymologically and Philologically arranged. By Sir M. Monier-Williams, D.C.L., &c., &c. New Edition, greatly Enlarged and Improved. 4to, cloth, 3l. 13s. 6d.; half-morocco, 4l. 4s.


*The Fasciculi may also be had separately.*

Fasc. I-VI, 1l. 12s. each; VII, 1l. 15s. 6d.; VIII, 1l. 16s.; IX, 1l. 5s.; Fasc. X, Pars I, 1l. 16s. Part II, 1l. 15s.

— Compendious Syriac Dictionary. Founded on the above, and edited by Mrs. Marsolouth. Pars I-III, 8s. 6d. net each.


— The Book of Kalllah and Dimnah. Translated from Arabic into Syriac. Edited by W. Wright, LL.D. 8vo, 1l. 1s.


— Translated by the late R. Payne Smith, D.D. 2 vols. 8vo, 14s.

— Ephraemi Syri, Rabulae Episcopi Edesseni, Balaei, &c., Opera Selecta. E Codd. Syriacæ MSS. in Museo Britannico et Bibliotheca Bodleiana asservatæs primus edidit J. J. Overbeck. 8vo, 1l. 1s.

— John, Bishop of Ephesus. The Third Part of his Ecclesiastical History. [In Syriac.] Now first edited by William Cubert, M.A. 4to, 1l. 12s.

— Translated by the late R. Payne Smith, D.D. 8vo, 10s.

**TAMIL.** First Lessons in Tamil. By G. U. Pope, D.D.

Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.


— The Naladiyâr, or Four Hundred Quatrains in Tamil.

Edited by G. U. Pope, D.D. 8vo, 18s. Large Paper, half Roxburgh. 21. Also in paper covers—Part I, Quatrains 1-130, 3s. 6d. Part II, Quatrains 131-320, 4s. 6d. Lexicon only, 6s.

— The Tiruvâçagam, or 'Sacred Utterances' of the Tamil Poet, Saint, and Sage Mânîkka-vâçagar. The Tamil Text of the Fifty-one Poems, with English Translation, Introductions, Notes, and Tamil Lexicon. By the same. Royal 8vo, 21s. net.

**ZEND.** The Ancient MS. of the Yasna, with its Pahlavi Translation (A.D. 1523), generally quoted as Jâ3, and now in the possession of the Bodleian Library. Reproduced in Facsimile, and Edited with an Introductory Note by L. H. Mills, D.D. Half-bound, Imperial 4to, 10l. 10s. net.

London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
SECTION VI.

ANECDOTA OXONIENSIA.

(Crown 4to, stiff covers.)

I. CLASSICAL SERIES.

I. The English Manuscripts of the Nicomachean Ethics. By J. A. STEWART, M.A. 3s. 6d.

II. Nonius Marcellus, de Compendiosa Doctrina, Harleian MS. 2719. Collated by J. H. ONIONS, M.A. 3s. 6d.


IV. Bentley's Plautine Emendations. From his copy of Gronovius. By E. A. SONNENSCHEIN, M.A. 2s. 6d.

V. Harleian MS. 2610; Ovid's Metamorphoses I, II, III. 1-612; XXIV Latin Epigrams from Bodleian or other MSS.; Latin Glosses on Apollinaris Sidonius from MS. Digby 172. Collated and Edited by ROBINSON ELLIS, M.A., LL.D. 4s.


VII. Collations from the Harleian MS. of Cicero 2682. By ALBERT C. CLARK, M.A. 7s. 6d.

VIII. The Dialogues of Athanasius and Zacchaeus and of Timothy and Aquila. Edited with Prolegomena and Facsimiles by F. C. CONYBEARE, M.A. 7s. 6d.

II. SEMITIC SERIES.

I. Commentary on Ezra and Nehemiah. By Rabbi Saadiah. Edited by H. J. MATHEWS, M.A. 3s. 6d.

II. The Book of the Bee. Edited by ERNEST A. WALLIS BUDGE, M.A. 21s.


Anecdota Oxoniensia.

A N E C D O T A O X O N I E N S I A (continued).

IV, VI. Mediaeval Jewish Chronicles and Chronological Notes. Edited by AD. NEUBAUER, M.A.
Part I, 14s. Part II, 18s. 6d.

V. The Palestinian Version of the Holy Scriptures. Five more Fragments recently acquired by the Bodleian Library. Edited by G. H. GWILLIAM, B.D. 6s.

VII. Churches and Monasteries of Egypt; attributed to Abû Sâlih, the Armenian. Edited and translated by B. T. A. EVETTS, M.A., with Notes by A. J. BUTLER, M.A., F.S.A. 12s. 6d.
* * Translation from the Original Arabic. With Map, buckram, 21s.

VIII. The Ethiopic Version of the Hebrew Book of Jubilees. Edited by R. H. CHARLES, M.A. 12s. 6d.

IX. Biblical and Patristic Relics of the Palestinian Syriac Literature. Edited by G. H. GWILLIAM, B.D., F. C. BURKITT, M.A., and J. F. STENNING, M.A. 12s. 6d.

X. The Letters of Abu 'l-'Alâ of Ma'arrat Al-Nu'mân. Edited from the Leyden Manuscript, with the life of the Author by Al-Dhahabi; and with Translation, Notes, Indices, and Biography by D. S. MARCOLIOUTH, M.A. 15s.

III. ARYAN SERIES.

I. Buddhist Texts from Japan. 1. Vagraghkâdikâ. Edited by F. MAX MÜLLER, M.A. 3s. 6d.

II. Buddhist Texts from Japan. 2. Sukhâvatî-Vyûha. Edited by F. MAX MÜLLER, M.A., and BUNJIU NANOJO. 7s. 6d.

III. Buddhist Texts from Japan. 3. The Ancient Palm-leaves containing the Prâgâ-Pâramitâ-Hridaya-Sûtra and the Ushwisha-Vigaya-Dhârana, edited by F. MAX MÜLLER, M.A., and BUNJIU NANOJO, M.A. With an Appendix by G. BÜHLER. 10s.

IV. Kâtyâyana's Sarvânuksramâ of the Rigveda. With Extracts from Shadgurunishyâ's Commentary entitled Vedârthadipikâ. Edited by A. A. MACDONELL, M.A., Ph.D. 16s.

V. The Dharma-Samgrahâ. Edited by KENJIU KASAWARA, F. MAX MÜLLER, and H. WENZEL. 7s. 6d.

VII. The Buddha-Karita of AYaghosha. Edited, from three MSS., by E. B. COWELL, M.A. 12s. 6d.

VIII. The Mantrapâtha: or, The Prayer Book of the Apastambins. Edited by M. WINTERNITZ, Ph.D. Part I. 10s. 6d.

London: HENRY FROWDE, Amen Corner, E.C.
IV. MEDIAEVAL AND MODERN SERIES.

I. Sinonoma Bartholomei. Edited by J. L. G. MOWAT, M.A. 3s. 6d.

II. Alphita. Edited by J. L. G. MOWAT, M.A. 12s. 6d.

III. The Saltair Na Rann. Edited from a MS. in the Bodleian Library, by WHITLEY STOKES, D.C.L. 7s. 6d.

IV. The Cath Finntrága, or Battle of Ventry. Edited by KUNO MEYER, M.A., Ph.D. 6s.

V. Lives of Saints, from the Book of Lismore. Edited, with Translation, by WHITLEY STOKES, D.C.L. 17s. 6d.


VII. The Crawford Collection of Early Charters and Documents, now in the Bodleian Library. Edited by A. S. NAPIER and W. H. STEVENSON. Paper covers, 10s. 6d.; cloth, 12s.

VIII. Hibernica Minora. Being a fragment of an Old-Irish Treatise on the Psalter. With Translation, Notes and Glossary. Edited by KUNO MEYER. 7s. 6d.

X. The earliest Translation of the Old Testament into the Basque Language (a Fragment). Edited, with Facsimile, by LLEWELYN THOMAS, M.A. 18s. 6d.

XI. Old English Glosses, Chiefly Unpublished. Edited by ARTHUR S. NAPIER, M.A., Ph.D. Paper covers, 15s.; cloth, 17s. 6d.

II. THEOLOGY.

A. THE HOLY SCRIPTURES, APOCRYPHA, &c.


Libri duodecim Prophetarum Minorum in Ling. Aegypt. vulgo Coptica. Edidit H. Tattam, A.M. 8vo, 8s. 6d.

Novum Testamentum Coptice, cura D. Wilkins. 1716. 4to, 12s. 6d.


ENGLISH. The Holy Bible in the Earliest English Versions, made from the Latin Vulgate by John Wycliffe and his followers: edited by Forshall and Madden. 4 vols. Royal 4to, 3l. 3s.

The Holy Bible, Revised Version (in various bindings).

* * * The Revised Version is the joint property of the Universities of Oxford and Cambridge.

Pope Edition (for the Church Desk):
American Russia, 50s.; with Apocrypha, 60s.
Turkey Morocco, 84s.; with Apocrypha, 96s.
Pica Royal 8vo, with wide margins: 6 vols. (including Apocrypha), from 73s. 5 vols. (Old and New Testaments), from 62s. 6d. 4 vols. (Old Testament only), from 50s. Apocrypha only, from 10s. 6d.
Pica Demy 8vo: 5 vols. (Old and New Testaments), from 40s. 4 vols. (Old Testament only), from 32s. Apocrypha only, from 7s. 6d.
Pica 8vo. India Paper: in one vol., from 52s. 6d. (Including Apocrypha), Turkey Morocco, 4l.
Small Pica 8vo, 1 vol., from 18s.
Minnion 8vo, 4s.; with Apocrypha, 6s. (Apocrypha only, 3s.)
Ruby 16mo, 2s. 6d.; with Apocrypha, 4s. (Apocrypha only, 2s.)
Pearl 16mo, cloth boards, 10d.

With Revised Marginal References.

Minnion 8vo, 5s.; with Apocrypha, 7s. 6d.
Parallel Bible: Minnion Small 4to, from 18s.
New Testament only. Nonpareil 32mo, 3d.; Brevier 16mo, 6d.; Long Primer 8vo, 9d.

London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
II. Theology.

ENGLISH. The Holy Bible (continued).

— The Two-Version Edition: being the Authorised Version with the Differences of the Revised Version printed in the margins. In various bindings from 7s. 6d. to 42s.

— The Oxford Bible for Teachers, containing the Holy Scriptures, together with a new, enlarged, and illustrated edition of the Oxford Helps to the Study of the Bible, comprising Introductions to the several Books, the History and Antiquities of the Jews, the results of Modern Discoveries, and the Natural History of Palestine, with copious Tables, Concordance and Indices, and a series of Maps. Prices in various sizes and bindings from 3s. to 5s.

— Bible Illustrations, taken from the above. 2s. 6d.

— Helps to the Study of the Bible, taken from the Oxford Bible for Teachers. New, Enlarged, and Illustrated Edition. Pearl 16mo, stiff covers, 1s. net. Nonpareil 8vo, cloth boards, 2s. 6d. Large Type edition, long primer 8vo, cloth boards, 5s.


— Notes on the Gospel of St. Luke, for Junior Classes. By Miss E. J. Moore Smith. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 1s. 6d.

— The Psalter, or Psalms of David, and certain Canticles, with a Translation and Exposition in English, by Richard Rolle of Hampole. Edited by H. R. Bramley, M.A. With an Introduction and Glossary. Demy 8vo, 17s. 6d.


Vol. I, 10s. 6d. Vol. II, 12s. 6d. Vol. III, 16s. Vol. IV, 12s. 6d.


— Deuterographs. Duplicate passages in the Old Testament. Arranged by R. B. Girdlestone, M.A. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

— The Parallel Psalter: being the Prayer-Book Version of the Psalms and a New Version arranged on opposite pages. With an Introduction and Glossaries by S. R. Driver, D.D. Fcap. 8vo, 6s.

ENGLISH (continued).


— **Lectures on Ecclesiastes.** By the same Author. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo. 5s. 6d.

— **The Book of Wisdom:** the Greek Text, the Latin Vulgate, and the Authorised English Version; with an Introduction, Critical Apparatus, and a Commentary. By W. J. Deane, M.A. 4to, 12s. 6d.

— **The Five Books of Maccabees,** in English, with Notes and Illustrations by Henry Cotton, D.C.L. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

— **The Book of Enoch.** Translated from Dillmann's Ethiopic Text (emended and revised), and edited by R. H. Charles, M.A. 8vo, 16s.

— **The Book of the Secrets of Enoch.** Translated from the Slavonic by W. R. Morfill, M.A., and Edited, with Introduction, Notes, &c., by R. H. Charles, M.A. 8vo, 7s. 6d.


— **The Oxyrhynchus Logia and the Apocryphal Gospels.** By the Rev. Charles Taylor, D.D. 8vo, paper covers, 2s. 6d. net.

— **List of Editions of the Bible in English.** By Henry Cotton, D.C.L. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 8s. 6d.

— **Rhemes and Doway.** An attempt to show what has been done by Roman Catholics for the diffusion of the Holy Scriptures in English. By Henry Cotton, D.C.L. 8vo, 9s.

GOTHIC. **Evangeliorum Versio Gothica, cum Interpr. et Annott. E. Benzelii.** Edidit E. Lyke, A.M. 4to, 12s. 6d.


— **Vetus Testamentum Graece cum Variis Lectionibus.** Editionem a R. Holmes, S.T.P. inchoatam continuavit J. Parsons, S.T.B. Tomi V. Folio, 7l.

— **A Concordance to the Septuagint and the other Greek Versions of the Old Testament (including the Apocryphal Books).** By the late Edwin Hatch, M.A., and H. A. Redpath, M.A. In Six Parts. Imperial 4to, 21s. each.

— Supplement to the above, Fasc. I. Containing a Concordance to the Proper Names occurring in the Septuagint. By H. A. Redpath, M.A. Imperial 4to, 16s.

London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
II. Theology.

GREEK (continued).

— Origenis Hexaplorum quae supersunt; sive, Veterum Interpretum Graecorum in to tum Vetus Testamentum Fragmenta. Edidit Fredericus Field, A.M. 2 vols. 4to, 5l. 5s.

— Essays in Biblical Greek. By Edwin Hatch, M.A., D.D. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

— An Essay on the Place of Ecclesiasticus in Semitic Literature. By D. S. Margoliouth, M.A. Small 4to, 2s. 6d.


— Novum Testamentum Graece. Accedunt parallela S. Scripturae loca, &c. Edidit Carolus Lloyd, S.T.P.R. 18mo, 3s. On writing-paper, with wide margin, 7s. 6d.

Critical Appendices to the above, by W. Sanday, D.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, cloth, 3s. 6d.

— Novum Testamentum Graece. Accedunt parallela S. Scripturae loca, &c. Ed. C. Lloyd, with Sanday's Appendices. Cloth, 6s.; paste grain, 7s. 6d.; morocco, 10s. 6d.

— Novum Testamentum Graece juxta Exemplar Millianum. 18mo, 2s. 6d. On writing-paper, with wide margin, 7s. 6d.

— Evangelia Sacra Graece. Fcap. 8vo, limp, 1s. 6d.

— The Greek Testament, with the Readings adopted by the Revisers of the Authorised Version—

  (1) Pica type. Second Edition. Demy 8vo, 10s. 6d.
  (2) Long Primer type. New Edition. With Marginal References. Fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d. Also on India Paper.
  (3) The same, on writing-paper, with wide margin, 15s.


— The Parallel New Testament, Greek and English; being the Authorised Version, 1611; the Revised Version, 1881; and the Greek Text followed in the Revised Version. 8vo, 12s. 6d.

— Diatessaron; sive Historia Jesu Christi ex ipsis Evangelistarum verbis apte dispositis confecta. Ed. J. White. 3s. 6d.


GREEK (continued).

— A Greek Testament Primer. An Easy Grammar and Reading Book for the use of Students beginning Greek. By E. Miller, M.A. Second Edition. Extra scap. 8vo, paper, 2s.; cloth, 3s. 6d.

— Canon Muratorianus. Edited, with Notes and Facsimile, by S. P. Tregelles, LL.D. 4to, 10s. 6d.

— Horae Synopticae. Contributions to the study of the Synoptic Problem. By the Rev. Sir John C. Hawkins, Bart., M.A. 8vo, 7s. 6d.


— The Psalms in Hebrew without points. Stiff covers, 2s.


— Ecclesiasticus (xxxix. 15—xliv. 11). The Original Hebrew, with Early Versions and English Translation, &c. Edited by A. E. Cowley, M.A., and Ad. Neubauer, M.A. With two Facsimiles. 4to, 10s. 6d. net.

— Translated from the Original Hebrew, with a Facsimile. By the same Editors. Crown 8vo, stiff covers, 2s. 6d.

— Facsimiles of the Fragments hitherto recovered of the Book of Ecclesiasticus in Hebrew. 60 leaves. Colotype. In a Cloth Box. 12. 1s. net. (Published jointly by the Oxford and Cambridge University Presses.)


— Hebrew Prose Accentuation. By the same. 8vo, 10s. 6d.


London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
LATIN. Libri Psalmorum Versio antiqua Latina, cum Paraphrasi Anglia-Saxonica. Edidit B. Thorpe, F.A.S. 8vo, 10s. 6d.


Also separately.

Fasc. I. 12s. 6d.; II. 7s. 6d.; III. 12s. 6d.; IV. 10s. 6d.; V. 10s. 6d.

** A Binding Case for the five Fasciculi is issued at 5s.

OLD-LATIN BIBLICAL TEXTS: Small 4to, stiff covers.


— No. III. The Four Gospels, from the Munich MS. (q), now numbered Lat. 6242 in the Royal Library at Munich, &c. Edited by H. J. White, M.A. 12s. 6d.

— No. IV. Portions of the Acts, of the Epistle of St. James, and of the First Epistle of St. Peter, from the Bobbio Palimpsest (s), now numbered Cod. 16 in the Imperial Library at Vienna. Edited by H. J. White, M.A. 5s.

OLD-FRENCH. Libri Psalmorum Versio antiqua Gallica e Cod. ms. in Bibl. Bodleiana adservato, una cum Versione Metrica aliisque Monumentis pervertustis. Nunc primum descriptis et edidit Franciscus Michel, Phil. Doc. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

SYRIAC. Collatio Cod. Lewisiani Evangeliorum Syriacorum cum Cod. Curetoniano, auctore A. Bonus, A.M. Demy 4to, 8s. 6d. net.

B. FATHERS OF THE CHURCH, &c.


— Historical Writings, according to the Benedictine Text. With an Introduction by W. Bright, D.D. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.


Barnabas, The Editio Princeps of the Epistle of, by Archbishop Usher, as printed at Oxford, A.D. 1642, and preserved in an imperfect form in the Bodleian Library. With a Dissertation by J. H. Backhouse, M.A. Small 4to, 3s. 6d.


Catena Graecorum Patrum in Novum Testamentum. Edidit J. A. Cramer, S.T.P. Tomi VIII. 8vo, 2l. 4s.

Clementis Alexandrini Opera, ex recensione Guil. Dindorfii. Tomi IV. 8vo, 3l.

Cyrilli Archiepiscopi Alexandrini in XII Prophetas. Edidit P. E. Pusey, A.M. Tomi II. 8vo, 2l. 2s.


Ephraemi Syri, Rabulae Episcopi Edesseni, Balaci, aliorumque Opera Selecta. E Codd. Syriacis mss. in Museo Britannico et Bibliotheca Bodleiana asservatis primus edidit J. J. Overbeck. 8vo, 1l. 1s.

Eusebii Pamphilii Evangelicae Praeparationis Libri XV. Ad Codd. mss. recensuit T. Gaisford, S.T.P. Tomi IV. 8vo, 1l. 10s.


Eusebius' Ecclesiastical History, according to the text of Burton, with an Introduction by W. Bright, D.D. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, 8s. 6d.

—— Annotationes Variorum. Tomi II. 8vo, 17s.

Evagrii Historia Ecclesiastica, ex recensione H. Valesii. 8vo, 4s.

Irenaeus: The Third Book of St. Irenaeus, Bishop of Lyons, against Heresies. With short Notes and a Glossary by H. Deane, B.D. Crown 8vo, 5s. 6d.

London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
II. Theology.

Origenis Philosophumena; sive omnium Haeresium Refutatio. E Codice Parisino nunc primum edidit Emmanuel Miller. 8vo, 10s.


Philo. About the Contemplative Life; or, the Fourth Book of the Treatise concerning Virtues. Critically edited, with a defence of its genuineness, by Fred. C. Conybeare, M.A. With a Facsimile. 8vo, 14s.


Tertulliani Apologeticus adversus Gentes pro Christianis. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by T. Herbert Bindley, B.D. Crown 8vo, 6s.


Theodoreti Ecclesiasticon Historiae Libri V. Recensuit T. Gaisford, S.T.P. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

— Graecarum Affectionum Curatio. Ad Codices MSS. recensuit T. Gaisford, S.T.P. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

C. ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY, &c.

Adamnani Vita S. Columbae. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Glossary, by J. T. Fowler, M.A., D.C.L. Crown 8vo, half-bound, 8s. 6d. net.

— The same, together with Translation. 9s. 6d. net.


Bigg. The Christian Platonists of Alexandria; being the Bampton Lectures for 1886. By Charles Bigg, D.D. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Ecclesiastical History, &c. 63

Bingham's Antiquities of the Christian Church, and other
Works. 10 vols. Svo, 3l. 3s.

Bright. Chapters of Early English Church History. By
8vo, 12s.

A New Edition. Carefully revised, and the Records collated with the
originals, by N. Pocock, M.A. 7 vols. 8vo, 1l. 10s.

Cardwell's Documentary Annals of the Reformed Church of
England; being a Collection of Injunctions, Declarations, Orders, Articles
of Inquiry, &c., from 1546 to 1716. 2 vols. 8vo, 18s.

Coneybeare. The Key of Truth. A Manual of the Paulician
Church of Armenia. The Armenian Text, edited and translated with
Illustrative Documents and Introduction by F. C. Coneybeare, M.A.
8vo, 15s. net.

Councils and Ecclesiastical Documents relating to Great
Britain and Ireland. Edited, after Spelman and Wilkins, by A. W.
8vo, 1l. 1s. each.
Vol. II, Part I. Medium 8vo, 10s. 6d.
Vol. II, Part II. Church of Ireland; Memorials of St. Patrick.
Stiff covers, 3s. 6d.

Formularies of Faith set forth by the King's authority during
the Reign of Henry VIII. 8vo, 7s.

Fuller's Church History of Britain. Edited by J. S. Brewer,
M.A. 6 vols. 8vo, 1l. 19s.

Gee. The Elizabethan Clergy and the Settlement of Religion,
1558-1564. By Henry Gee, D.D., F.S.A., Co-editor of 'Documents
Illustrative of English Church History.' With Illustrative Documents
and Lists. 8vo, 10s. 6d. net.

Gibson's Synodus Anglicana. Edited by E. Cardwell, D.D.
8vo, 6s.

Hamilton's (Archbishop John) Catechism, 1552. Edited, with
Introduction and Glossary, by Thomas Graves Law. With a Preface
by the Right Hon. W. E. Gladstone. Demy 8vo, 12s. 6d.

Inett's Origines Anglicanae (in continuation of Stillingfleet).
Edited by J. Griffiths, M.A. 3 vols. 8vo, 15s.

John, Bishop of Ephesus. The Third Part of his Ecclesiastical
History. [In Syriac.] Now first edited by William Cureton,
M.A. 4to, 1l. 12s.

—— The same, translated by R. Payne Smith, D.D. 8vo, 10s.

London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
II. Theology.

Le Neve's Fasti Ecclesiae Anglicanae. Corrected and continued from 1715 to 1853 by T. Duffus Hardy. 3 vols. 8vo, 11. 1s.

Noelii (A.) Catechismus sive prima institutio disciplinae Piae Christianae Latine explicata. Editio nova cura GUIL. JACOBSON, A.M. 8vo, 5s. 6d.

Prideaux's Connection of Sacred and Profane History. 2 vols. 8vo, 10s.

Primers put forth in the Reign of Henry VIII. 8vo, 5s.


Reformatio Legum Ecclesiasticarum. The Reformation of Ecclesiastical Laws, as attempted in the reigns of Henry VIII, Edward VI, and Elizabeth. Edited by E. Cardwell, D.D. 8vo, 6s. 6d.


Shuckford's Sacred and Profane History connected (in continuation of Prideaux). 2 vols. 8vo, 10s.

Stillingfleet's Origines Britannicae, with Lloyd's Historical Account of Church Government. Edited by T. P. Pantin, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 10s.

Stubbs. Registrum Sacrum Anglicanum. An attempt to exhibit the course of Episcopal Succession in England. By W. Stubbs, D.D. Second Edition. 4to, 10s. 6d.

Strype's Memorials of Cranmer. 2 vols. 8vo, 11s.

Life of Aylmer. 8vo, 5s. 6d.

Life of Whitgift. 3 vols. 8vo, 16s. 6d.

General Index. 2 vols. 8vo, 11s.

Sylloge Confessionum sub tempus Reformandae Ecclesiae editarum. Subjunctur Catechismus Heidelbergensis et Canones Synodi Dordrecthanae. 8vo, 8s.


D. LITURGIOLOGY.


Cardwell's Two Books of Common Prayer, set forth by authority in the Reign of King Edward VI, compared with each other. Third Edition. 8vo, 7s.

History of Conferences on the Book of Common Prayer from 1551 to 1690. Third Edition. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Gelasian Sacramentary. Liber Sacramentorum Romanae Ecclesiae. Edited, with Introduction, Critical Notes, and Appendix, by H. A. Wilson, M.A. Medium 8vo, 18s.

Leofric Missal, The; together with some Account of the Red Book of Derby, the Missal of Robert of Jumièges, &c. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by F. E. Warren, B.D., F.S.A. 4to, half-morocco, 17. 15s.


Monumenta Ritualia Ecclesiae Anglicanae. The occasional Offices of the Church of England according to the old Use of Salisbury, the Prymer in English, and other prayers and forms, with dissertations and notes. Second Edition. 3 vols. 8vo, 21. 10s.

Warren. The Liturgy and Ritual of the Celtic Church. By F. E. Warren, B.D. 8vo, 14s.

E. ENGLISH THEOLOGY.


Burnet's Exposition of the xxxix Articles. 8vo, 7s.


* * * Also, in Crown 8vo, 2 vols., 10s. 6d. (Vol. I, 5s. 6d.; Vol. II, 5s.)

London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
II. Theology.

Butler. The Works of Bishop Butler. 2 vols. 8vo, 11s.

— Sermons. 5s. 6d. Analogy of Religion. 5s. 6d.

Chillingworth's Works. 3 vols. 8vo, 1l. 1s. 6d.

Clergyman's Instructor. Sixth Edition. 8vo, 6s. 6d.

Cranmer's Works. Collected and arranged by H. Jenkyns. 4 vols. 8vo, 1l. 10s.

Enchiridion Theologicum Anti-Romanum.
Vol. I. Jeremy Taylor's Discursive from Popery, and Treatise on the Real Presence. 8vo, 8s.
Vol. II. Barrow on the Supremacy of the Pope, with his Discourse on the Unity of the Church. 8vo, 7s. 6d.
Vol. III. Tracts selected from Wake, Patrick, Stillingfleet, Clagett and others. 8vo, 11s.

Greswell's Harmonia Evangelica. Fifth Edition. 8vo, 9s. 6d.

Hall's Works. Edited by P. Wynter, D.D. 10 vols. 8vo, 3l. 3s.

Heurtley. Harmonia Symbolica: Creeds of the Western Church. By C. Heurtley, D.D. 8vo, 6s. 6d.

Homilies appointed to be read in Churches. Edited by J. Griffiths, M.A. 8vo, 7s. 6d.


— The Text as arranged by J. Keble, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 11s.

— An Introduction to the Fifth Book of Hooker's Treatise of the Laws of Ecclesiastical Polity. By F. Paget, D.D. Medium 8vo, 7s. 6d.

* * * For the convenience of purchasers, Vol. II of the Three-Volume Edition of Hooker's Works (Ecclesiastical Polity, Book V), edited by Mr. Keble, and Drs. Church and Paget, is sold separately, price Twelve Shillings.

Hooper's Works. 2 vols. 8vo, 8s.

Jackson's (Dr. Thomas) Works. 12 vols. 8vo, 3l. 6s.

Jewel's Works. Edited by R.W. Jelf, D.D. 8 vols. 8vo, 1l. 10s.

Lock and Sanday. Two Lectures on the 'Sayings of Jesus,' recently discovered at Oxyrhynchus. Delivered at Oxford on October 23, 1897, by W. Lock, D.D., and W. Sanday, D.D., LL.D. 8vo, stiff covers, 1s. 6d. net.


Patrick's Theological Works. 9 vols. 8vo, 1l. 1s.

Pearson's Exposition of the Creed. Revised and corrected by E. Burton, D.D. Sixth Edition. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

—— Minor Theological Works. Edited with a Memoir, by Edward Churton, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 10s.

Sanderson's Works. Edited by W. Jacobson, D.D. 6 vols. 8vo, 1l. 10s.

Stillingsfleet's Origines Sacrae. 2 vols. 8vo, 9s.

—— Rational Account of the Grounds of Protestant Religion. 2 vols. 8vo, 10s.

Taylor. The Oxyrhynchus Logia and the Apocryphal Gospels. By the Rev. Charles Taylor, D.D. 8vo, paper covers, 2s. 6d. net.

Wall's History of Infant Baptism. Edited by Henry Cotton, D.C.L. 2 vols. 8vo, 1l. 1s.


Wheatly's Illustration of the Book of Common Prayer. 8vo, 5s.


—— Select English Works. By T. Arnold, M.A. 3 vols. 8vo, 1l. 1s.

—— Triologus. With the Supplement now first edited. By Gotthard Lechler. 8vo, 7s.
III. HISTORY, BIOGRAPHY, 
POLITICAL ECONOMY, &c.

Arbuthnot. The Life and Works of John Arbuthnot. By GEORGE A. AITKEN. 8vo, cloth extra, with Portrait, 16s.


Beauchamp. Hindu Manners, Customs, and Ceremonies. By the Abbé J. A. DUBOIS. Translated from the Author's later French MS. and Edited with Notes, Corrections, and Biography, by HENRY K. BEAUCHAMP. With a Prefatory Note by the Right Hon. F. MAX MÜLLER, and a Portrait. Second Edition. 8vo, 15s. net.

Bentham. A Fragment on Government. By JEREMY BENTHAM. Edited by F. C. MONTAGUE, M.A. 8vo, 7s. 6d.


Burnet's History of James II. 8vo, 9s. 6d.


Vol. II. Completing the Reign of Charles the Second, with Index to Vols. I and II.

--- Life of Sir M. Hale, and Fell's Life of Dr. Hammond. Small 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Calendar of the Clarendon State Papers, preserved in the Bodleian Library. In three volumes. 1569-76.
Vol. I. From 1523 to January 1649. 8vo, 18s.
Vol. II. From 1649 to 1654. 8vo, 16s.
Vol. III. From 1655 to 1657. 8vo, 14s.

Calendar of Charters and Rolls preserved in the Bodleian Library. 8vo, 1l. 11s. 6d.
III. History, Biography, &c.


Casaubon (Isaac), Life of, by Mark Pattison, B.D. Second Edition. 8vo, 16s.

Casauboni Ephemerides, cum praefatione et notis J. Russell, S.T.P. Tomi II. 8vo, 15s.


— History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars in England. To which are subjoined the Notes of Bishop Warburton. 1849. 7 vols. Medium 8vo, 2l. 10s.

— History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars in England. Also his Life, written by himself, in which is included a Continuation of his History of the Grand Rebellion. Royal 8vo, 12s.

Clarendon's Life, including a Continuation of his History. 2 vols. 1857. Medium 8vo, 1l. 2s.

Clinton's Fasti Hellenici. The Civil and Literary Chronology of Greece, from the LVth to the CXXIIId Olympiad. Third Edition. 4to, 1l. 14s. 6d.

— Fasti Hellenici. The Civil and Literary Chronology of Greece, from the CXXIVth Olympiad to the Death of Augustus. Second Edition. 4to, 1l. 12s.

— Epitome of the Fasti Hellenici. 8vo, 6s. 6d.

— Fasti Romani. The Civil and Literary Chronology of Rome and Constantinople, from the Death of Augustus to the Death of Heraclius. 2 vols. 4to, 2l. 2s.

— Epitome of the Fasti Romani. 8vo, 7s.


Cramer's Geographical and Historical Description of Asia Minor. 2 vols. 8vo, 11s.

— Description of Ancient Greece. 3 vols. 8vo, 16s. 6d.

Earle. Handbook to the Land-Charters, and other Saxon
Documents. By John Earle, M.A. Crown 8vo, 16s.
—— The Alfred Jewel. An Historical Essay. With Illustra-
tions and Map. Small 4to, buckram, 12s. 6d. net.

Finlay. A History of Greece from its Conquest by the
Romans to the present time, B.C. 146 to A.D. 1864. By George Finlay,
LL.D. A New Edition, revised throughout, and in part re-written, with
considerable additions, by the Author, and edited by H. F. Tozer, M.A.
7 vols. 8vo, 3l. 10s.

Fortescue. The Governance of England: otherwise called
The Difference between an Absolute and a Limited Monarchy. By Sir
John Fortescue, Kt. A Revised Text. Edited, with Introduction,
Notes, &c., by Charles Plummer, M.A. 8vo, half-bound, 12s. 6d.

Freeman. The History of Sicily from the Earliest Times.
By E. A. Freeman, M.A., D.C.L.
Vols. I and II. [Vol. I. The Native Nations: The Phoenician and
Greek Settlements. Vol. II. From the beginning of Greek Settle-
ment to the beginning of Athenian Intervention.] 8vo, 2l. 2s.
Vol. III. The Athenian and Carthaginian Invasions. 1l. 4s.
Vol. IV. From the Tyranny of Dionysios to the Death of Agathokles.
Edited from Posthumous MSS., by Arthur J. Evans, M.A. 1l. 12s.
—— History of the Norman Conquest of England; its
Causes and Results.
Vols. III and IV, 2l. each. Vol. VI (Index), 10s. 6d.
** Vols. I, II, and V are out of print.
—— The Reign of William Rufus and the Accession of Henry
the First. 2 vols. 8vo, 1l. 16s.
—— A Short History of the Norman Conquest of England.
Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

French Revolutionary Speeches. See Stephens, H. Morse.

Gardiner. The Constitutional Documents of the Puritan
Revolution. 1625-1660. Selected and Edited by Samuel Rawson
Gardiner, D.C.L. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Gascoigne's Theological Dictionary ('Liber Veritatum'): 
Selected Passages, illustrating the Condition of Church and State, 1403-
1458. With an Introduction by James E. Thorold Rogers, M.A.
Small 4to, 10s. 6d.

George. Genealogical Tables illustrative of Modern History.
By H. B. George, M.A. Third Edition. Oblong 4to, boards, 7s. 6d.
—— The Relations of Geography and History. With Maps.
Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

III. History, Biography, &c.

Greenidge. The Legal Procedure of Cicero's Time. By A. H. J. GREENIDGE, M.A. 8vo, 1l. 1s.

Greswell's Fasti Temporis Catholici. 4 vols. 8vo, 2l. 10s.
— Tables to Fasti, 4to, and Introduction to Tables. 8vo, 15s.
— Origines Kalendariae Italicæ. 4 vols. 8vo, 2l. 2s.
— Origines Kalendariae Hellenicæ. 6 vols. 8vo, 4l. 4s.

— Geography of the Dominion of Canada and Newfoundland. With Ten Maps. 1891. Crown 8vo, 6s.
— Geography of Africa South of the Zambesi. With Maps. 1892. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Griffith. Stories of the High Priests of Memphis, the Sethon of Herodotus, and the Demotic Tales of Khammas. By F. Ll. GRIFFITH, M.A. With Portfolio containing Seven Atlas Facsimiles (with Keys) of the Demotic Text of the Second Tale. Royal 8vo, 47s. 6d. net.


Hastings. Hastings and The Rohilla War. By Sir John STRACHENY, G.C.S.I. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Hewins. The Whitefoord Papers. Being the Correspondence and other Manuscripts of Colonel CHARLES WHITEFOORD and CALEB WHITEFOORD, from 1739 to 1810. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by W. A. S. HEWINS, M.A. 8vo, 12s. 6d.

Hill. Sources for Greek History between the Persian and Peloponnesian Wars. Collected and arranged by G. F. HILL, M.A. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Hodgkin. Italy and her Invaders (A.D. 376–814). With Plates and Maps. 8 vols. 8vo. By THOMAS Hodgkin, D.C.L.
  Vols. V–VI. The Lombard Invasion, and the Lombard Kingdom. 36s.
  Vols. VII–VIII. Frankish Invasions, and the Frankish Empire. 24s.
— The Dynasty of Theodosius; or, Seventy Years' Struggle with the Barbarians. Crown 8vo, 6s.

Hume. Letters of David Hume to William Strahan. Edited with Notes, Index, &c., by G. Birkbeck Hill, D.C.L. 8vo, 12s. 6d.

London: HENRY FROWDE, Amen Corner, E.C.

JACKSON. Dalmatia, the Quarnero, and Istria; with Cettigne in Montenegro and the Island of Grado. By T. G. Jackson, M.A., R.A. 3 vols. With many Plates and Illustrations. 8vo, 2l. 2s.


KNIGHT’S Life of Dean Colet. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

LE STRANGE. Baghdad during the Abbasid Caliphate. From Contemporary Arabic and Persian Sources. By G. Le Strange. With eight Plans. 8vo, 16s. net.

LEWES, The Song of. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by C. L. Kingsford, M.A. Extra-fine. 8vo, 5s.


LLOYD’S Prizes of Corn in Oxford, 1583-1830. 8vo, 1s.

LUCAS. Historical Geography of the British Colonies. By C. P. Lucas, B.A. Crown 8vo.

—— Introduction. With Eight Maps. 1887. 4s. 6d.


—— Vol. II. The West Indian Colonies. With Twelve Maps. 1890. 7s. 6d.

—— Vol. III. West Africa. Revised to the end of 1899 by H. E. Egerton. With Five Maps, 7s. 6d.

—— Vol. IV. South and East Africa. Historical and Geographical. With Eleven Maps. 1898. 9s. 6d. Also Part I. Historical, 6s. 6d. Part II. Geographical, 3s. 6d.


—— The History of South Africa to the Jameson Raid. With numerous Maps, 5s.

LUDLOW. The Memoirs of Edmund Ludlow, 1625-1672. Edited, with Appendices of Letters and Illustrative Documents, by C. H. Firth, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 1l. 16s.
III. History, Biography, &c. 73

Luttrell's (Narcissus) Diary. A Brief Historical Relation of State Affairs, 1678–1714. 6 vols. 8vo, 11. 4s.


— The Prince. Translated by Ninian Hill Thomson, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d. net.


Madan. Manuscript Materials relating to the History of Oxford; contained in the Printed Catalogues of the Bodleian and College Libraries. By F. Madan, M.A. 8vo, 7s. 6d.


Magna Carta, a careful Reprint. Edited by W. Stubbs, D.D. 4to, stitched, 1s.


More. The Utopia of Sir Thomas More. Edited by J. H. Lupton, B.D. 8vo, half-bound, 10s. 6d. net.

Napier (A. S.) and Stevenson (W. H.). The Crawford Collection of Early Charters and Documents, now in the Bodleian Library. Small 4to, cloth, 12s.

Pattison. Essays by the late Mark Pattison, sometime Rector of Lincoln College. Collected and arranged by Henry Netteship, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 24s.

— Life of Isaac Casaubon (1559–1614). By the same Author. Second Edition. 8vo, 16s.


London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
III. History, Biography, &c.

Poole. Historical Atlas of Modern Europe, from the decline of the Roman Empire. Comprising also Maps of parts of Asia and of the New World connected with European history. Edited by R. L. Poole, M.A., Ph.D. Imperial 4to. Parts I-XXVII. To be completed in thirty Parts, each 3s. 6d. net.

Portfolio to contain Fifteen Parts, 3s. 6d. net.


— Select Statutes and other Documents bearing on the Constitutional History of England, from A.D. 1307 to 1558. By the same Editor. [In Preparation.]


Index to the above, separately, paper cover, 1s. 6d.


Vol. I. Part I. The Lycos Valley and South-Western Phrygia. 18s. net.
Vol. I. Part II. West and West Central Phrygia. 21s. net.


Revised Index separately, paper cover, 1s.

Rashdall. The Universities of Europe in the Middle Ages. By Hastings Rashdall, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, with Maps and Illustrations. 2l. 5s. net.


Rhûs. Studies in the Arthurian Legend. By John Rhûs, M.A., Principal of Jesus College, Oxford. 8vo, 12s. 6d.

— Celtic Folklore: Welsh and Manx. By the same. 2 vols. 8vo, 21s.

Ricardo. Letters of David Ricardo to T. R. Malthus (1810-1823). Edited by James Bonar, M.A. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Ricardo. Letters of David Ricardo to Hutches Trower and others (1811–1823). Edited by James Bonar, M.A. and J. H. Hollander, Ph.D. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Vols. I and II (1259–1400). 8vo, 2l. 2s.
Vols. III and IV (1401–1582). 8vo, 2l. 10s.
Vols. V and VI (1583–1702). 8vo, 2l. 10s.
Vols. VII and VIII. [In the Press.]

First Nine Years of the Bank of England. 8vo, 8s. 6d.

Protests of the Lords, including those which have been expunged, from 1624 to 1874; with Historical Introductions. In three volumes. 8vo, 2l. 2s.

Rulers of India: The History of the Indian Empire in a carefully planned succession of Political Biographies. Edited by Sir W. W. Hunter, K.C.S.I. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d. each.
Bar. By Stanley Lane-Poole, M.A.
Akbar. By Colonel Malleson, C.S.I.
Albuquerque. By H. Morse Stephens.
Aurangzib. By Stanley Lane-Poole, M.A.
Pandava Bāo Sinhā. By H. G. Keene, M.A., C.I.E.
Lord Clive. By Colonel Malleson, C.S.I.
Dupleix. By Colonel Malleson, C.S.I.
Haidar Ali and Tipú Sultán. By L. B. Bowring, C.S.I.
The Marquess Wellesley, K.G. By W. H. Hutton, M.A.
Marquess of Hastings. By Major Ross-of-Bladensburg, C.B.
Mountstuart Elphinstone. By J. S. Cotton, M.A.
Sir Thomas Munro. By John Bradshaw, M.A., LL.D.
Earl Amherst. By Anne Thackeray Ritchie and Richardson Evans.
The Earl of Auckland. By Captain L. J. Trotter.
Viscount Hardinge. By his son, Viscount Hardinge.
III. History, Biography, &c.

RULERS OF INDIA (continued).

Ranjit Singh. By Sir LEPEL GRIFFIN, K.C.S.I.
The Marquess of Dalhousie. By Sir W. W. HUNTER.
Clyde and Strathnairn. By Major-General Sir OWEN TUDOR BURNE, K.C.S.I.
Earl Canning. By Sir H. S. CUNNINGHAM, K.C.I.E.
Lord Lawrence. By Sir C. AITCHISON, K.C.S.I., LLD.
The Earl of Mayo. By Sir W. W. HUNTER, K.C.S.I.

SUPPLEMENTARY VOLUMES.

A Brief History of the Indian Peoples. By Sir W. W. HUNTER, K.C.S.I. Eighty-Fourth Thousand. 3s. 6d.

James Thomason. By Sir RICHARD TEMPLE, Bart. 3s. 6d.

Sir Henry Lawrence, the Pacificator. By Lieut.-General J. J. McLEOD INNES, R.E., V.C. 3s. 6d.

Asoka. By VINCENT SMITH. In the Press.


Selden. The Table Talk of JOHN SELDEN. Edited, with an Introduction and Notes, by S. H. REYNOLDS, M.A. 8vo, half-roan, 8s. 6d.

Smith (Adam). Lectures on Justice, Police, Revenue, and Arms. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by EDWIN CANNAN. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d. net.


* * * Also in 3 vols. crown 8vo, price 12s. each.


III. History, Biography, &c.  

Swift (F. D.). The Life and Times of James the First of Aragon. By F. Darwin Swift, B.A. 8vo, 12s. 6d.

Tozer. The Islands of the Aegean. By H. Fanshawe Tozer, M.A., F.R.G.S. Crown 8vo, 8s. 6d.

Vinogradoff. Villainage in England. Essays in English Mediaeval History. By Paul Vinogradoff, Professor in the University of Moscow. 8vo, half-bound, 16s.


Wellesley. A Selection from the Despatches, Treaties, and other Papers of the Marquess Wellesley, K.G., during his Government of India. Edited by S. J. Owen, M.A. 8vo, 1l. 4s.

Wellington. A Selection from the Despatches, Treaties, and other Papers relating to India of Field-Marshal the Duke of Wellington, K.G. Edited by S. J. Owen, M.A. 8vo, 1l. 4s.

Whitelock's Memorials of English Affairs from 1625 to 1660. 4 vols. 8vo, 1l. 10s.


Lewis. Remarks on the Use and Abuse of some Political Terms. By Sir G. Cornwall Lewis, Bart. New Edition, with Notes and Introduction, by Thomas Raleigh, D.C.L. Crown 8vo, paper boards, 3l. 6d., cloth, 4l. 6d.


London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
IV. LAW.


— Land-Revenue and Tenure in British India. By the same Author. With Map. Crown 8vo, 5s.


Greenidge. Insania; its place in Roman Public and Private Law. By A. H. J. Greenidge, M.A. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

— The Legal Procedure of Cicero's Time. 8vo, 17s. 6d.

Grueber. Lex Aquilia. The Roman Law of Damage to Property: being a Commentary on the Title of the Digest 'Ad Legem Aquilam' (ix. 2). With an Introduction to the Study of the Corpus Juris Civilis. By Erwin Grueber, Dr. Jur., M.A. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Hall. International Law. By W. E. Hall, M.A. Fourth Edition. 8vo, 22s. 6d.

— A Treatise on the Foreign Powers and Jurisdiction of the British Crown. By the same Author. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Holland. The Elements of Jurisprudence. By T. E. Holland, D.C.L. Ninth Edition. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

— The European Concert in the Eastern Question, a Collection of Treaties and other Public Acts. Edited, with Introductions and Notes. By the same Author. 8vo, 12s. 6d.

— Studies in International Law. By the same Author. 8vo, 10s. 6d.


Also sold in parts, in paper covers, as follows:

Part I. Introductory Titles. 2s. 6d.
Part II. Family Law. 1s.
Part III. Property Law. 2s. 6d.
Part IV. Law of Obligations (No. 1). 3s. 6d.
Part IV. Law of Obligations (No. 2). 4s. 6d.


Legislative Methods and Forms. 8vo, half-roan, 16s.


Also sold separately—


Contract of Sale in the Civil Law. 8vo, 10s. 6d.


Raleigh. An Outline of the Law of Property. By Thomas Raleigh, M.A. 8vo, cloth, 7s. 6d.


First Supplement to the above, 1887, 1888. 2s. 6d.

Second Supplement, to May 31, 1891. 4s. 6d.

First and Second Supplements in one volume, price 6s. 6d.

Twiss. The Law of Nations considered as Independent Political Communities. By Sir Travers Twiss, D.C.L.

V. PHILOSOPHY, LOGIC, &c.


— Novum Organum. Edited, with English Notes, by G. W. Kitchin, D.D. 8vo, 9s. 6d.


— Selections. With Introduction and Notes. For the use of Students in Colleges and Universities. By the same Editor. Fifth Amended Edition. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Bosanquet. Logic; or, The Morphology of Knowledge. By B. Bosanquet, M.A. 8vo, 21s.


Butler. The Works of Bishop Butler. Edited by the Right Hon. W. E. Gladstone. 2 vols. Medium 8vo, 14s. each. Or Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d. (Also, separately—Vol. I, 5s. 6d. Vol. II, 5s.)

— Works, with Index to the Analogy. 2 vols. 8vo, 11s.

Fowler. The Elements of Deductive Logic, designed mainly for the use of Junior Students in the Universities. By T. Fowler, D.D. Tenth Edition, with a Collection of Examples. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

— The Elements of Inductive Logic, designed mainly for the use of Students in the Universities. Sixth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 6s.

— Logic; Deductive and Inductive, combined in a single volume. Extra fcap. 8vo, 7s. 6d.


Also, separately—

Part II. The Principles of Morals. By T. Fowler, D.D. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Green. Prolegomena to Ethics. By T. H. Green, M.A.
Edited by A. C. Bradley, M.A. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Second Edition, Revised and Augmented. 3 vols. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d. each.

Hegel's Philosophy of Mind. Translated from the Encyclopaedia of the Philosophical Sciences. With Five Introductory Essays. By William Wallace, M.A., LL.D. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.


— Enquiry concerning the Human Understanding, and an Enquiry concerning the Principles of Morals. Edited by L. A. Selby-Bigge, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Leibniz. The Monadology and other Philosophical Writings.
Translated, with Introduction and Notes, by Robert Latta, M.A., D.Phil. Crown 8vo, 8s. 6d.

Collated and Annotated with Prolegomena, Biographical, Critical, and Historical, by A. Campbell Fraser, Hon. D.C.L. and LL.D.
2 vols. 8vo, 11s. 12d.

Locke's Conduct of the Understanding. Edited by T. Fowler, D.D. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.


London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
VI. PHYSICAL SCIENCE AND MATHEMATICS, &c.


Adler. Alternating Generations; a Biological Study of Oak Galls and Gall Flies. By Hermann Adler, M.D. Translated and Edited by C. R. Straton, F.R.C.S. Ed., F.E.S. With coloured Illustrations of forty-two Species. Crown 8vo, cloth extra, 10s. 6d. net.

Aldis. A Text-Book of Algebra: with Answers to the Examples. By W. S. Aldis, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Aplin. The Birds of Oxfordshire. By O. V. Aplin. With a Map and one coloured Plate. 8vo, 10s. 6d.


BIOLOGICAL SERIES. (Translations of Foreign Memoirs.)

I. Memoirs on the Physiology of Nerve, of Muscle, and of the Electrical Organ. Edited by Sir J. Burdon-Sanderson, M.D., F.R.S.L. & E. Medium 8vo, 21s.

II. The Anatomy of the Frog. By Dr. Alexander Ecker, Professor in the University of Freiburg. Translated, with numerous Annotations and Additions, by George Haslam, M.D. Medium 8vo, 21s.


Vol. II. Edited by E. B. Poulton and A. E. Shipley. 5s.

VI. Physical Science and Mathematics, &c. 83

BOTANICAL SERIES.


Outlines of Classification and Special Morphology of Plants. By Dr. K. Goebel. Translated by H. E. F. GARNSEY, M.A., and Revised by ISAAC BAYLEY BALFOUR, M.A., M.D., F.R.S. Royal 8vo, half-morocco, 21s.

Organography of Plants, especially of the Archegoniatae and Spermatophyta. By Dr. K. Goebel. Authorized English Edition by ISAAC BAYLEY BALFOUR, M.A., M.D., F.R.S.

Part I. General Organography. Royal 8vo, half-morocco, 12s. 6d.

Comparative Morphology and Biology of Fungi, Mycetoza and Bacteria. By A. DE BARY. Translated by H. E. F. GARNSEY, M.A. Revised by ISAAC BAYLEY BALFOUR, M.A., M.D., F.R.S. Royal 8vo, half-morocco, 22s. 6d.


Index Kewensis; an enumeration of the Genera and Species of Flowering Plants from the time of LINNAEUS to the year 1885 inclusive. Edited by Sir J. D. Hooker and B. D. J ACKSON. 2 vols. 4to, half-morocco, 10l. 10s. net.


Already published—

Vol. I, Parts I-IV, consisting of pp. 415, and pp. cix, Record of Current Literature and Necrology, with eighteen Plates, in part coloured, and six Woodcuts. 17. 16s.

London: HENRY FROWDE, AMEN CORNER, E.C.

G 2
VI. Physical Science and Mathematics, &c.

Annals of Botany (continued).

Vol. II, Parts V–VIII, consisting of pp. 436, and pp. cxxxviii, Record of Current Literature and Necrology, with twenty-four Plates, in part coloured, and twenty-three Woodcuts. 2l. 2s.

Vol. III, Parts IX–XII, consisting of pp. 495, and pp. cxviii, Record of Current Literature and Necrology, with twenty-six Plates, in part coloured, and eight Woodcuts. 2l. 12s. 6d.

Vol. IV, Parts XIII–XVI, consisting of pp. 385, and pp. cxviii, Record of Current Literature, with twenty-two Plates, in part coloured, and thirteen Woodcuts. 2l. 5s.

Vol. V, Parts XVII–XX, consisting of pp. 536, with twenty-seven Plates, in part coloured, and four Woodcuts. 2l. 10s.

Vol. VI, Parts XXI–XXIV, consisting of pp. 383, with twenty-four Plates, in part coloured, and sixteen Woodcuts. 2l. 4s.

Vol. VII, Parts XXV–XXVIII, consisting of pp. 532, with twenty-seven Plates, in part coloured, and five Woodcuts. 2l. 10s.

Vol. VIII, Parts XXIX–XXXII, consisting of pp. 470, with twenty-four Plates, in part coloured, and five Woodcuts. 2l. 10s.

Vol. IX, Parts XXXIII–XXXVI, consisting of pp. 668, with twenty-five Plates, in part coloured, and thirteen Woodcuts. 2l. 15s.

Vol. X, Parts XXXVII–XL, consisting of pp. 661, with twenty-eight Plates, in part coloured, and three Woodcuts. 2l. 16s.

Vol. XI, Parts XLI–XLIV, consisting of pp. 593, with twenty-five Plates, in part coloured, and twelve Woodcuts. 2l. 16s.

Vol. XII, Parts XLV–XLVIII, consisting of pp. 594, with thirty Plates, in part coloured, a Portrait, and one Woodcut. 2l. 16s.

Vol. XIII, Parts XLIX–LII, consisting of pp. 626, with twenty-nine Plates, in part coloured, a Portrait, and nine Woodcuts. 2l. 16s.

Vol. XIV, Parts LIII–LVII, consisting of pp. 735, with thirty-four Plates, in part coloured, two Portraits, and fourteen Woodcuts. 2l. 16s.

Vol. XV, Part LVII, with eleven Plates and one Woodcut. 14s.

Reprints from the 'Annals of Botany.'

Holmes and Batters. Revised List of British Marine Algae (with Appendix). 2s. 6d. net.

Baker (J. G.). A Summary of New Ferns (1874–90). 5s. net. This forms a supplement to the Synopsis Filicum.

Synopsis of the Genera and Species of Museae. 1s. 6d. net.

New Ferns of 1892–3. 1s. net.

Bradley's Miscellaneous Works and Correspondence. With an Account of Harriot's Astronomical Papers. 4to, 17s.

VI. Physical Science and Mathematics, &c. 85


Cremona. Elements of Projective Geometry. By Luigi Cremona. Translated by C. Leudesdorf, M.A. Second Edition. 8vo, 12s. 6d.

—— Graphical Statics. Two Treatises on the Graphical Calculus and Reciprocal Figures in Graphical Statics. By the same Author. Translated by T. Hudson Beare. Demy 8vo, 8s. 6d.

Dixey. Epidemic Influenza, a Study in Comparative Statistics. By F. A. Dixey, M.A., D.M. Medium 8vo, 7s. 6d.


Druce. The Flora of Berkshire, being a Topographical and Historical Account of the Flowering Plants and Ferns found in the County; with short Biographical Notices of the Botanists who have contributed to Berkshire Botany during the last three centuries. By George Claridge Druce, Hon. M.A. Oxon. Crown 8vo, 16s net.

—— An Account of the Herbarium of the University of Oxford. Crown 8vo, 6d.


—— Sold separately as follows:

Book I. 1s.
Books I, II. 1s. 6d.
Books I—IV. 3s.
Books V, VI. 3s. 6d.

—— Geometry in Space. Containing parts of Euclid’s Eleventh and Twelfth Books. By R. C. J. Nixon, M.A. Cr. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
Fischer. The Structure and Functions of Bacteria. By Alfred Fischer. Translated into English by A. Coffen Jones. Royal 8vo, with Twenty-nine Woodcuts, 8s. 6d.


Fock (Andreas). An Introduction to Chemical Crystallography. By Andreas Fock, Ph.D. Translated and Edited by W. J. Pope; with a Preface by N. Story-Maskelyne, M.A. Crown 8vo, 5s.


— Healthy Hospitals. Observations on some points connected with Hospital Construction. By the same Author. With Illustrations. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Green. First Lessons in Modern Geology. By A. H. Green, M.A., F.R.S. Edited by J. F. Blake, M.A. With Forty-two Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.


Ruled Exercise books adapted to the above may be had, price 1s. 6d.; also, adapted to the Preliminary Course only, price 4d.


Madan. Tables of Qualitative Analysis. By H. G. Madan, M.A. Large 4to, paper covers, 4s. 6d.


— The Scholar’s Arithmetic. 2s. 6d. Answers, 1s. 6d.

— The Scholar’s Algebra. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.

VI. Physical Science and Mathematics, &c. 87


Kelvin. The Molecular Tactics of a Crystal. By Lord Kelvin, P.R.S. With Twenty Illustrations. 8vo, 3s. 6d.


— An Elementary Treatise on Electricity. Edited by William Garnett, M.A. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Miall and Hammond. The Structure and Life-History of the Harlequin Fly (Chironomus). By L. C. Miall, F.R.S., and A. R. Hammond, F.L.S. With One Hundred and Thirty Illustrations. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Minchin. A Treatise on Statics with Applications to Physics. By G. M. Minchin, M.A.

Vol. I. Equilibrium of Coplanar Forces. Fifth Edition. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Vol. II. Non-Coplanar Forces. Fourth Edition. 8vo, 16s.

— Hydrostatics and Elementary Hydrokinetics. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

— Geometry for Beginners. An easy Introduction to Geometry for young learners. Extra scap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.


Nixon. Elementary Plane Trigonometry. By R. C. J. Nixon, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d. (See Euclid Revised.)


— Vesuvius. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Powell. The Surgical Aspect of Traumatic Insanity. By H. A. Powell, M.A., M.D. 8vo, stiff cover, 2s. 6d.

London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
Vol. I. Chemical and Physical. Royal 8vo, 1l. 5s.
Vol. II. Stratigraphical and Physical. With a new Geological Map of Europe. Royal 8vo, 1l. 16s.
Geological Map (separately) in Case or on Roller, 5s.

Vol. III. Statics, including Attractions; Dynamics of a Material Particle. Second Edition. 8vo, 16s.


Pritchard. Astronomical Observations made at the University Observatory, Oxford, under the direction of C. Pritchard, D.D. No. I. Royal 8vo, paper covers, 3s. 6d.
— No. II. Uranometria Nova Oxoniensis. A Photometric determination of the magnitudes of all Stars visible to the naked eye, from the Pole to ten degrees south of the Equator. Royal 8vo, 8s. 6d.
— No. III. Researches in Stellar Parallax by the aid of Photography. Royal 8vo, 7s. 6d.
— No. IV. Researches in Stellar Parallax by the aid of Photography. Part II. Royal 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Rigaud’s Correspondence of Scientific Men of the 17th Century, with Table of Contents by A. de Morgan, and Index by J. Rigaud, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 18s. 6d.


VI. Physical Science and Mathematics, &c. 89

Russell. An Elementary Treatise on Pure Geometry. With numerous Examples. By J. Wellesley Russell, M.A. Cr. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Selby. Elementary Mechanics of Solids and Fluids. By A. L. Selby, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.


Part I. Sphinxes and Bombyces. 8vo, with eight Plates, 21s.


Thomson. Notes on Recent Researches in Electricity and Magnetism, intended as a sequel to Professor Clerk Maxwell's 'Treatise on Electricity and Magnetism.' By J. J. Thomson, M.A., F.R.S. 8vo, 18s. 6d.

Van 't Hoff. Chemistry in Space. Translated and Edited by J. E. Marsh, M.A. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

VI. Physical Science and Mathematics, &c.


——— Harbours and Docks; their Physical Features, History, Construction, Equipment, and Maintenance. 2 vols. 8vo, 25s.

Walker. The Theory of a Physical Balance. By James Walker, M.A. 8vo, stiff cover, 3s. 6d.


——— The Mathematical Theory of Electricity and Magnetism. In two volumes. 8vo, 10s. 6d. each.
Vol. I. Electrostatics.
Vol. II. Magnetism and Electrodynamics.


Part I. General Physics.
Part II. Heat.
Part III. Light and Sound.
Part IV. Magnetism and Electricity.

EDUCATION.

Balfour. The Educational Systems of Great Britain and Ireland. By Graham Balfour, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Cookson. Essays on Secondary Education. By Various Contributors. Edited by Christopher Cookson, M.A. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Locke’s Conduct of the Understanding. Edited by T. Fowler, D.D. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.
VII. ART AND ARCHAEOLOGY.

Bedford. The Blazon of Episcopacy. Being the Arms borne by, or attributed to, the Archbishops and Bishops of England and Wales. With an Ordinary of the Coats described and other Episcopal Arms. By the Rev. W. K. R. Bedford, M.A. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged, with One Thousand Illustrations. 4to, buckram, gilt top, 31s. 6d. net.


Cust. The Master E. S. and the ‘Ars Moriendi,’ a Chapter in the History of Engraving during the XVth Century; with facsimile reproductions of Engravings in the University Galleries at Oxford and in the British Museum. By Lionel Cust, F.S.A. Royal 4to, with forty-six Plates, paper boards, 17s. 6d. net.


Farnell. The Cults of the Greek States. (See p. 32.)

Fortnum. Maiolica; A Historical Treatise on the Glazed and Enamelled Earthenwares of Italy, &c., with Plates, Marks, &c. By C. Dbury E. Fortnum, D.C.L. Small 4to, 2l. 2s. net.

—— A Descriptive Catalogue of the Maiolica and Kindred Wares in the Ashmolean Museum, Oxford. With Introductory Notice and Illustrations. Small 4to, 10s. 6d. net.


Head. Historia Numerorum. (See p. 33.)

Jackson. Dalmatia, the Quarnero and Istria; with Cettigne in Montenegro and the Island of Grado. By T. G. Jackson, M.A., R.A. 3 vols. 8vo. With many Illustrations. Cloth, bevelled boards, 42s.

—— Wadham College, Oxford; Its Foundation, Architecture and History. With an Account of the Family of Wadham, and their seats in Somerset and Devon. 4to, with many Illustrations, half-persian, 42s. net.

—— The Church of St. Mary the Virgin, Oxford. With Twenty-four full-page Illustrations and numerous Cuts in the Text. Demy 4to, half-bound: buckram, gilt top, 36s. net; or in vellum, gilt top and morocco labels, &c., 42s. net.

MUSIC. Balfour. The Natural History of the Musical Bow. Part I. Primitive Types. By Henry Balfour, M.A. Royal 8vo, paper covers, 4s. 6d.

London: Henry Frowde, Amen Corner, E.C.
MUSIC (continued).

**Farmer.** Hymns and Chorales for Schools and Colleges. Edited by John Farmer, Organist of Balliol College, Oxford. 5s.


**Ouseley.** Treatise on Harmony. By Sir F. A. Gore Ouseley, Bart. Third Edition. 4to, 10s.

— Treatise on Counterpoint, Canon, and Fugue, based upon that of Cherubini. Second Edition. 4to, 16s.

— Treatise on Musical Form and General Composition. Second Edition. 4to, 10s.


**Raffaelli.** Drawings by, in the University Galleries, Oxford. Drawn on Stone by Joseph Fisher. In an ornamental box, 21s.


**Upcott.** Introduction to Greek Sculpture. By L. E. Upcott, M.A. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

**Vaux.** Catalogue of the Castellani Collection in the University Galleries, Oxford. By W. S. W. Vaux, M.A. Crown 8vo, 1s.

**VIII. PALAEOGRAPHY.**

**Allen.** Notes on Abbreviations in Greek Manuscripts. By T. W. Allen, M.A. Royal 8vo, 5s.

**Fragmenta Herculanensia.** A Descriptive Catalogue of the Oxford copies of the Herculanian Rolls, together with the texts of several papyri. Edited by Walter Scott, M.A. Royal 8vo, 21s.

— Thirty-six Engravings of Texts and Alphabets from the Herculanian Fragments. With an Introductory Note by Bodley's Librarian. Folio, small paper, 10s. 6d.; large paper, 21s.


**Herculanensium Voluminum Partes II.** 1824. 8vo, 10s.

**Kenyon.** The Palaeography of Greek Papyri. By Frederick G. Kenton, M.A. With twenty Facsimiles and a Table of Alphabets. 8vo, 10s. 6d.